

英语地道口语通系列

与美国人交往的 **地道口语**

AMERICAN INTERPERSONAL
ENGLISH

赵丹 编著



大连理工大学出版社

英语地道口语通系列



美国人交往的地道口语

American Interpersonal English

赵丹 编著

大连理工大学出版社

© 赵丹 2004

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

与美国人交往的地道口语 / 赵丹编著. — 大连: 大连理工大学出版社, 2004.7

(英语地道口语通系列)

ISBN 7-5611-2626-3

I. 与… II. 赵… III. 美国—口语 IV. H319.9

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2003)第 125018 号

大连理工大学出版社出版

地址: 大连市凌水河 邮政编码: 116024

电话: 0411-84708842 传真: 0411-84701466 邮购: 0411-84707961

E-mail: dutp@dutp.cn URL: <http://www.dutp.cn>

大连理工印刷有限公司印刷 大连理工大学出版社发行

幅面尺寸: 147mm×210mm 印张: 13.25 字数: 459 千字

印数: 1~8 000

2004 年 7 月第 1 版

2004 年 7 月第 1 次印刷

责任编辑: 张婵云

责任校对: 于大岳

封面设计: 孙宝福

定价: 19.80 元

前

言

Last year, my first English book "American Spoken English" was published. The book received warm welcome from the readers, simply because it was easy to learn, reflected the popular American English, and stood out based on my seventeen years of personal experience in the U.S.A. The publisher was encouraged by the good outcome, and contacted me for another English book. This time, they wanted to focus on interpersonal communications with Americans. When planning for this book, I suggested a number of topics to them for interpersonal communications. The publisher told me: "We could tell by the topics that they were written by someone stayed for long time in the U.S."

我在去年出版了我的第一本英语书“美国口语速成”。这本书受到了读者的热情欢迎。究其原因,不外乎是简单易学,反映了美国流行的地道英语,同时它是在我留美十七年的经验基础上写成的。受到读者热情反响的鼓舞,出版社希望我再写一本英语书。这次他们想要侧重于和美国人的人际交流方面。在开始计划本书时,我向他们建议了人际交流方面的一些话题,出版社告诉我:“这些话题一看就知道是在美国生活多年的人写的。”

Because of work assignment, I came back to China from the U.S., and I am working for a China-American joint venture. This provided

me a good opportunity to assess the needs of learning spoken English. Since China joined the WTO, trade between China and the rest of the world has been increasing at a high speed every year. Foreign investment and joint ventures are both multiplying rapidly. A popular saying is: China is connecting to the world. Communications between Chinese and foreigners are more important than ever. The needs come from all aspects of life: trade, joint ventures, training, commercial negotiations, service sectors, and many more. For example, our joint venture plans to send a large number of engineers to be trained in the U.S.A., but I worried very much of their English skills. How could they be trained if they cannot communicate with their U.S. trainers?

由于工作的需要,我从美国回到了中国,为一个中美合资企业工作。这给了我一个研究国内学习英语口语需求的好机会。自从中国加入世贸组织以后,中国和世界其他国家的贸易逐年高速增长,外国投资和合资企业都在快速递增。有一句流行的话:“中国在和世界接轨。”中国人和外国人的交流比以往任何时候都重要。这种需求来自生活的各个方面:贸易、合资企业、培训、商务谈判、服务行业、还有许多其他方面。例如,我们的合资公司要送一批工程师去美国培训,可是我非常担心他们的英语水平。如果他们不能和美国的培训人员交流沟通,他们怎么能得到有效的培训呢?

Another surprise to me after I came back to China was that a lot of translators could not communicate effectively when translating. Those are English graduates from top universities, but they simply cannot translate well. It created a lot of misunderstandings and slowed down the pace of Chinese and foreign cooperation. Why could not they translate effectively? They do not have a feel of English.

They do not understand the meaning behind the words. They do not understand slang. They do not know the new expressions, words, and professional terms. All they learnt in universities were out of date textbook English that had been there for a number of years.

我回中国以后另一件让我吃惊的事情是，很多翻译和中外人员沟通起来感觉困难。这些翻译都是名牌大学的英语专业毕业生，可是他们初到企业时深感困难，也造成中外双方的误解，给双方的合作拖了后腿。他们为什么对做好翻译工作感到困难？因为他们对英语没有感觉，他们不懂英语词句隐含的意思，他们不懂俚语，他们不知道那些新的表达法、新词和专业术语。他们在大学里学的只是书本上那些过时的、多年不变的英语。

The problems are so real. In my first English book, I introduced simple, natural English to readers. However, we need another book that deals with higher-level communication topics. This book is right in picking these communication topics. It covers not only everyday life topics, but also the trade, the joint venture, and the commercial side of English communications. After reading this book, you should be able to communicate with foreigners in all aspects of life, work, and studies. Like my last book, the conversations in this book are all based on real stories, which makes you feel like you are in the U.S.A. when reading these dialogues.

问题是这么真实而严重。在我的第一本英语书里，我给读者介绍了简单的、地道的英语。但是我们还需要另一本有较高水平的人际交流方面的书。这本书选择了实用的交流方面的话题，涵盖了日常生活用语和贸易、合资企业等方面的商务用语。读完这本书，您就能够在生活、工作和学习的各个方面同外国人交流。和我的第一本英语书一

样,这里的例子都是基于美国生活中的真实故事。这些对话读起来,会使你有身临其境的感觉。

I heard of this a lot from foreigners. The nineteenth century was British century; the twentieth century was American century; and the twenty first century is Chinese century. To make this a reality, no doubt English is an important tool. I truly hope that our engineers and translators can have this book as early as possible. They could then adapt to their training in the U.S. better. They could then communicate much more effectively. More importantly, I truly hope this book can reach our readers in time for their once-in-life-time mission to make the difference for China in the world.

我常常听到外国人这样说,第十九世纪是英国的世纪,二十世纪是美国的世纪,二十一世纪是中国的世纪。要让这个说法成为现实,英语无疑是一个重要的工具。我真心希望我们的工程师和翻译能早点用上这本书,让他们在美国的培训更顺利, 让他们的翻译工作做得更好。更重要的是,我真心希望我们的读者能早日看到这本书,让这本书能为他们一生难得的机会和重任,为中国在世界上做出贡献助一臂之力!

赵 丹

2004 年 3 月

Contents

目 录



Chapter One Greetings

第一章 问候语

Topic 1	Meeting for the First Time	
第一题	初次见面	2
Topic 2	Everyday Greetings	
第二题	日常见面语	14
Topic 3	Business Greetings	
第三题	公务见面语	19



Chapter Two Make Friends

第二章 交友

Topic 1	Classmates	
第一题	同 学	24
Topic 2	Professors	
第二题	教 授	30
Topic 3	Roommates	
第三题	室 友	36
Topic 4	People from Other Countries	
第四题	外国朋友	42
Topic 5	Net Friends	
第五题	网 友	48

Chapter Three Eat and Drink

第三章 吃 喝



Topic 1	Snack Bar	
第一题	小吃店	51
Topic 2	Cafeteria	
第二题	食堂	54
Topic 3	Fast Food Restaurants	
第三题	速食店	60
Topic 4	Family Restaurants	
第四题	家庭餐馆	63
Topic 5	Formal Restaurants	
第五题	高档餐厅	68

Chapter Four Parties

第四章 派对



Topic 1	Birthday Party	
第一题	生日派对	74
Topic 2	Student Party	
第二题	学生派对	78
Topic 3	Colleague Luncheon	
第三题	同事中午聚餐	86
Topic 4	Pot Luck	
第四题	自带聚餐	90
Topic 5	Thanksgiving Party at a Household	
第五题	感恩节在美国人家聚餐	93
Topic 6	Christmas Party of a Company	
第六题	公司圣诞节宴会	97
Topic 7	Farewell Party	
第七题	送别聚餐	101

Topic 8	Picnic with Friends	
第八题	和朋友野餐	105
Topic 9	Company Picnic	
第九题	公司郊游	111

Chapter Five Bars

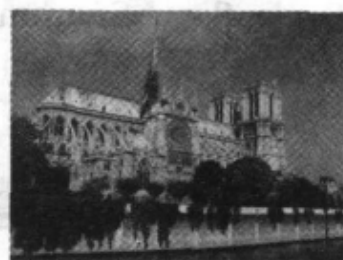
第五章 酒吧



Topic 1	Dancing Bar	
第一题	舞厅	115
Topic 2	Sports Bar	
第二题	运动吧	119
Topic 3	Strip Bar	
第三题	脱衣舞厅	125
Topic 4	Live Entertainment Bar	
第四题	现场演艺吧	128

Chapter Six Churches and Religions

第六章 教堂和宗教



Topic 1	Meeting Religious People	
第一题	与教民打交道	133
Topic 2	Attending Sunday Schools	
第二题	参加主日查经	140
Topic 3	Going on a Trip with a Church Group	
第三题	参加教堂郊游	144
Topic 4	To Be or Not To Be	
第四题	信教还是不信	148

Chapter Seven Sports

第七章 运 动



Topic 1	Baseball	
第一题	棒 球	159
Topic 2	Football	
第二题	橄榄球	163
Topic 3	BasketBall	
第三题	篮 球	167
Topic 4	Tennis	
第四题	网 球	170
Topic 5	Golf	
第五题	高尔夫球	175
Topic 6	Bowling	
第六题	保龄球	179
Topic 7	Ping-Pong	
第七题	乒乓球	182
Topic 8	Swimming	
第八题	游 泳	184

Chapter Eight Boy Friend and Girl Friend

第八章 男女朋友



Topic 1	Going Out	
第一题	约 会	188
Topic 2	Going to Dinner	
第二题	请吃饭	191
Topic 3	Going to Movies	
第三题	看电影	194

Topic 4	Taking a Trip	
第四题	出游	199
Topic 5	Love at First Sight	
第五题	一见钟情	202
Topic 6	Men and Women	
第六题	男人女人	206

Chapter Nine Go to Movies and Shows

第九章 看电影看剧



Topic 1	Free Movies	
第一题	免费电影	213
Topic 2	Old Movies	
第二题	老电影	216
Topic 3	New Shows	
第三题	新电影	220
Topic 4	Rent a Tape	
第四题	租录相带	223
Topic 5	Symphony Concert	
第五题	交响乐	226
Topic 6	Las Vegas Shows	
第六题	拉斯维加斯表演	229

Chapter Ten Go to Weddings and Funerals

第十章 红白喜事



Topic 1	Invited to a Wedding	
第一题	受邀参加婚礼	234
Topic 2	Buying Gifts	
第二题	买礼物	237

Topic 3	Attending a Wedding	
第三题	参加婚礼	240
Topic 4	Attending a Funeral	
第四题	参加葬礼	244

Chapter Eleven Tours and Vacations

第十一章 旅游和度假



Topic 1	Taking Vacations	
第一题	度假	248
Topic 2	Boston, New York, Atlantic City and Washington D.C.	
第二题	波士顿, 纽约, 大西洋赌城, 华盛顿·哥伦比亚特区	253
Topic 3	Niagara Falls, Toronto, Ottawa and Montreal	
第三题	尼亚加拉大瀑布, 多伦多, 渥太华, 蒙特利尔	266
Topic 4	San Francisco and Reno	
第四题	旧金山和雷诺	278
Topic 5	San Diego, Los Angeles and Las Vegas	
第五题	圣地亚哥, 洛杉矶, 拉斯维加斯	283
Topic 6	Orlando and Disney World	
第六题	奥兰多和迪斯尼世界	292
Topic 7	Hawaii	
第七题	夏威夷	297

Chapter Twelve Disagreements and Problems

第十二章 闹意见和问题



Topic 1	Disagreement with Professors	
第一题	与教授意见相左	302

Topic 2	Disagreement with Classmates	
第二题	和同学意见不同	307
Topic 3	Problems with Roommates	
第三题	和室友闹矛盾	312
Topic 4	Disagreement with Boss	
第四题	和老板观点不同	315
Topic 5	Problems with Colleague	
第五题	和同事闹别扭	317
Topic 6	Present Yourself in the Court	
第六题	出庭	320
Topic 7	Road Rage	
第七题	路怒	324

Chapter Thirteen Working in the U.S.A.

第十三章 在美国工作



Topic 1	Structures of American Companies	
第一题	美国公司结构	328
Topic 2	Human Resources Department	
第二题	人力资源部	331
Topic 3	Preparing for a Job Interview	
第三题	为面试做准备	334
Topic 4	Job Interview	
第四题	面试	339
Topic 5	Meeting in Company	
第五题	在公司里开会	344

Chapter Fourteen Working in China

第十四章 在中国工作



Topic 1	Being Sent to China as an Expatriate	
第一题	派到中国工作	349
Topic 2	Negotiations between Chinese and Americans	
第二题	中美谈判	354
Topic 3	Joint Ventures and Market Development	
第三题	合资企业和市场开发	359
Topic 4	Making Friends with Chinese	
第四题	和中国人交朋友	363
Topic 5	Working in an American-Chinese Joint Venture	
第五题	在中美合资企业工作	368

Chapter Fifteen Presentations, Seminars and Conferences

第十五章 讲演, 专题报告, 专业会议



Topic 1	Submitting a Paper to an International Conference	
第一题	向国际会议递交论文	373
Topic 2	Prepare for a Presentation	
第二题	准备讲演	376
Topic 3	Prepare a Paper to Be Published	
第三题	撰写论文	380
Topic 4	Attending an International Conference	
第四题	参加国际会议	383
Topic 5	Presentation	
第五题	讲 演	387

Appendix: Vocabulary and Expressions

附录: 词汇和短语	391
-----------------	-----

Chapter One Greetings

第一章 问候语



In the past, the English textbook always taught us to say "How do you do?" if you met somebody for the first time. This has been out of date for a long time. In the U.S., nobody speaks like that any more. The greetings are also different when you meet somebody for the first time and when you meet somebody you see every day. For formal situations, you want to pay respect, but you also want to respect yourself at the same time. In this chapter, we learn how to greet people in different situations.

过去, 英语课本里教的是, 第一次见面, 要说 "How do you do?" 这是早已过时的问候语。在美国已经没人这么说了。你初次和人见面同你与某人天天见面, 问候当然也会不同。对于正式场合, 要有礼貌, 但也要保持尊严。这一章里, 我们来学习各种不同情形下的问候用语。

Topic 1 Meeting for the First Time

第一题 初次见面

Greetings for the first time are very important because it provides you the opportunity to express yourself and impress the people you meet. It does not mean that this is your only opportunity, but it does show your manners. At the end of the day, it is your capability, personality, and the work you perform that put yourself apart from the others. However, paying attention to greetings is always good.

第一次见面时的问候语特别重要,它是你留给别人的第一印象。虽然以后你还有表现的机会,但是问候表现了你的修养。当然,最终还是你的能力,人格,和所做的工作使你脱颖而出。但重视与人见面时的问候总是好事。

Scene 1

场景 1

Brian was born in a middle class family in the U.S.. His parents are all engineers immigrated from China to the U.S. years ago as foreign students. Brian grew up under the influence of Chinese culture, with special feelings about China. Today he was walking on the campus of Harvard University and saw a Chinese girl nearby. He approached her and tried to strike a conversation.

布莱恩出生在美国一个中产阶级家庭里,父母都是工程师,早年作为留学生从中国移民到美国。布莱恩在中国文化的影响下长大,对中国有着特殊的感情。今天他正走在哈佛大学的校园里,看见有一个中国姑娘在附近,他走上前去试着和她交谈。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Brian: Hello, I'm Brian. You are?

Amy: Hi, Brian. I'm Amy.

Brian: Nice to meet you. Where are you from?



布莱恩: 你好,我是布莱恩。你是?

艾米: 你好。我是艾米。

布莱恩: 很高兴认识你。你是哪里人?

Chapter One

Amy: I'm from China.

Brian: Really? How nice. How long have you been in the U.S.?

Amy: Two years.

Brian: That's a long time. Have you been back to visit?

Amy: No.

Brian: You must miss your home.

Amy: Sure. I miss my family and friends.

Brian: How do you like America?

Amy: Pretty nice. I met some friendly people.

Brian: I'm one of them, right? Just kidding.

Amy: You do look nice.

Brian: Thank you so much. Very nice to meet you. Hope to see you again.

Amy: Me too. See you later!

Brian: Bye-bye!

• 艾米: 我是中国人。

• 布莱恩: 是吗? 真好。来美国多久了?

• 艾米: 两年了。

• 布莱恩: 很长时间了。回过国吗?

• 艾米: 没有。

• 布莱恩: 你一定想家吧?

• 艾米: 当然。想家人和朋友。

• 布莱恩: 喜欢美国吗?

• 艾米: 挺好的。我认识了一些很友好的人。

• 布莱恩: 我就是其中一个吧? 和你开玩笑。

• 艾米: 你挺面善的啊。

• 布莱恩: 太谢谢了。很高兴认识你。愿我们能再见。

• 艾米: 我也很高兴认识你。再见!

• 布莱恩: 再见!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

When meeting somebody the first time, it is polite to introduce yourself first. This was what Brian did. He then asked Amy her name and how long she had been in the U.S.. You can ask somebody's name, home country, hometown, etc., but you should not ask questions about age, living habit, address, and phone numbers, when talking to somebody of opposite sex. Those questions are too personal and would be viewed impolite. There are some questions you should never ask, no matter how long you have known him, such as a person's salary, property, financial situations and social security number.

和某人初次见面, 应该有礼貌地先自我介绍。布莱恩正是这样做的。他然后问了艾米的名字和来美多长时间了。你可以问人家的名字、国家、家乡, 但和异性交谈时, 不要问年龄、生活习惯、住址、电话号码。这些问题太牵扯个人隐私, 是不礼貌的。有些问题是永远也不该问的, 不管你们认识多久了, 比如工资、财产、经济情况和社会保险号。

If you want to know where a person was born, you can ask: "Where are you originally from?" This way, you can avoid confusion, because people may have lived in different areas or countries, so "Where are you from?" can be confusing.

如果你要知道某人在哪里出生的, 你可以问: “您最早是哪里人?” 这样会比较清楚。因为人们可能在不同的地区或国家居住过, 问“您从哪里来”可能比较模糊。

Related Words and Phrases

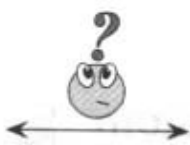
相关词语

- ① kidding: 开玩笑。 举例: Are you kidding? 你在开玩笑吧? You must be kidding. 你一定是在开玩笑。
- ② nice: 好, 善良。 举例: Henry is nice. 亨利人很好。 His house is very nice. 他家的房子很漂亮。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Hello, I'm ...
- ◆ I'm from ...
- ◆ How do you like ...

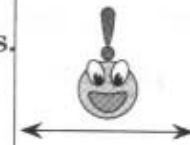


- ◆ 你好, 我是
- ◆ 我是 人。 我从 来。
- ◆ 你喜欢 吗?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Hello, I'm Mark.
- ◆ Hello, I'm Betty.
- ◆ Hello, I'm Brian.
- ◆ Hello, I'm Chris Stevens.
- ◆ Hello, I'm Mike.
- ◆ Hello, I'm Jeff.

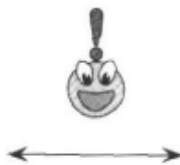


- ◆ 你好, 我是马克。
- ◆ 你好, 我是贝蒂。
- ◆ 你好, 我是布莱恩。
- ◆ 你好, 我是克瑞斯·史帝文森。
- ◆ 你好, 我是迈克。
- ◆ 你好, 我是杰夫。

Chapter One

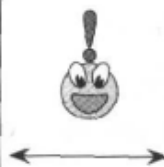
Greetings

- ◆ I'm from New Zealand.
- ◆ I'm from Germany.
- ◆ I'm from France.
- ◆ I'm from Korea.
- ◆ I'm from Singapore.
- ◆ I'm from India.
- ◆ I'm from New York.



- ◆ 我是新西兰人。
- ◆ 我是德国人。
- ◆ 我是法国人。
- ◆ 我是韩国人。
- ◆ 我是新加坡人。
- ◆ 我是印度人。
- ◆ 我是纽约人。

- ◆ How do you like studying here?
- ◆ How do you like the homework?
- ◆ How do you like Chris?
- ◆ How do you like Beijing?
- ◆ How do you like China?



- ◆ 你喜欢在这里学习吗?
- ◆ 你喜欢这次的作业吗?
- ◆ 你喜欢克瑞斯吗?
- ◆ 你喜欢北京吗?
- ◆ 你喜欢中国吗?

Scene 2

场景 2

Brian said goodbye to Amy and kept going. This time, he met an American boy. The two started chatting.

布来恩告别了艾米,继续往前走。这次,他遇见了个美国小伙子,他们俩聊了起来。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: Hello! How are you doing?

George: Pretty good. How about you?

Brian: Not bad. Not bad at all!

George: What a nice day! Hate to stay on the campus.

Brian: Right. I'm going to hit the road in a little bit.

George: Where are you going?

Brian: Marble Head.



布来恩: 你好! 一切都好吗?

乔治: 挺好的。你好吗?

布来恩: 不错。蛮好的。

乔治: 多好的天气! 真不想呆在校园里。

布来恩: 是啊。我一会儿就去郊游。

乔治: 去哪儿啊?

布来恩: 理石头。

American Interpersonal

English

- George: Great! I heard it was very nice. ● 乔治: 太好了! 听说那儿很漂亮。
- Brian: It is. I'd better get going. ● 布莱恩: 是漂亮。我得走了。对了, 你叫什么名字啊?
- By the way, what's your name? ●
- George: George. George Miller. ● 乔治: 乔治。乔治·米勒。
- Brian: Nice name. I'm Brian Zhao. ● 布莱恩: 名儿挺好听的。我叫布莱恩。
- George: Thank you! Where are you from? ● 乔治: 谢谢! 你是哪里人?
- Brian: I was born in Pennsylvania. ● 布莱恩: 我出生在宾州。
- George: WHERE are you from? ● 乔治: 我问你是哪里人?
- Brian: I don't understand. ● 布莱恩: 我听不懂你的意思。
- George: I mean your country of origin. ● 乔治: 我是问你祖辈是哪个国家的。
- Brian: Oh, my parents were from China. ● 布莱恩: 噢, 我父母从中国来的。
- George: Okay. Nice to meet you! ● 乔治: 啊。认识你很高兴!
- Brian: You too! See you! ● 布莱恩: 也很高兴认识你! 再见!
- George: Bye! ● 乔治: 再见!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the above dialogue, George was a white boy born in the U.S.. Compared to other western countries, people from U.S.A. are easier to access. Racist is a serious crime in the U.S.. However, it is a fact that Chinese look different from white people. In the dialogue, George kept asking WHERE Brian was from, because he meant Brian's ancestors were not from America. This kind of questions could be impolite.

在上面的对话里, 乔治是个土生土长的美国白人小伙子。和其他西方国家相比, 美国人比较随便, 容易接近一些。种族主义在美国是严重的犯罪。但是中国人和白人长得确实不一样。在对话里, 乔治追问布莱恩是哪儿的人。他意思是布莱恩的前辈不是美国人。这种问题有可能是个不礼貌的。

Chapter One

Sometimes in the U.S., when you first meet somebody, he may ask you: "Are you Japanese?" Some Americans think that the Japanese has higher technology and living standards in Asia, so people from other Asia countries won't be mad if they are being asked such a question. It is absolutely wrong to think like that. Asia people feel offended when being asked if they are Japanese. This question looks down on other Asia countries.

在美国,有时第一次见到的人,可能会问你“你是日本人吗?”有些美国人认为日本在亚洲有较高的科技地位和生活水平,要是这样问,其他亚洲国家的人不会生气。实际上这样想是绝对错误的。亚洲人被这样问的时候会感到受侮辱,因为这个问题本身就轻视了其它的亚洲国家。

In the U.S.A., nationality is a sensitive question because this is an immigrant country. It can hurt feelings. It is okay to ask somebody: "Where are you from?" or "What is your country of origin?" The latter would be for somebody who was born in the U.S.A. But avoid asking, "What's your nationality?" It sounds inquisitive and impolite, unless you are an FBI.

因为美国是个移民国家,在这里,国籍(种族)是个敏感的问题。这样的问题容易伤人。可以问别人:“你从哪儿来?”或者“你祖辈是哪个国家的?”后者用于在美国出生的人。但是避免问:“你的国籍是什么?”这听起来有点像盘问,也不礼貌,除非你是联邦调查局的。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① pretty good: 挺好。举例: I'm doing pretty good. 我挺好的。
- ② not bad: 好, 不错。举例: The air quality is not bad. 空气质量不错。
- ③ Marble Head: 理石头, 波士顿附近的一个小旅游城市
- ④ hit the road: 上路, 去旅行。“Hit ...”这个句型要用于特定的、小的目标。不能用这个句型说: I'm going to hit China. 我要去中国。中国太大了。
- ⑤ How about Chinese? 在这句话里, “Chinese”的意义依情形而定。要是在商量去哪里吃饭, 它代表中餐。如果在说语言, 它代表中文。倘若是在谈论各国人, 它表示中国人。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ How ... doing?
- ◆ How about ...
- ◆ Hit ...

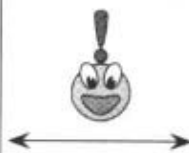


- ◆ 好吗?
- ◆ 怎么样?
- ◆ 去

Substitute Exercise

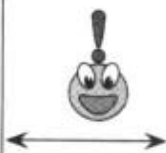
替换练习

- ◆ Hi, Mark. How are you doing?
- ◆ How is she doing?
- ◆ How is Betty doing?
- ◆ How are they doing?



- ◆ 嗨, 马克, 你好吗?
- ◆ 她好吗?
- ◆ 贝蒂好吗?
- ◆ 他们一切都好吗?

- ◆ How about going to a movie?
- ◆ How about her?
- ◆ How about a drink?
- ◆ How about pizza?
- ◆ How about Chinese?



- ◆ 去看电影怎么样?
- ◆ 她怎么样?
- ◆ 喝杯酒吧?
- ◆ 吃比萨饼好吗?
- ◆ 吃中餐怎么样? 学中文怎么样? 中国人怎么样?

- ◆ I'll hit the restroom.
- ◆ I'm going to hit the beach.



- ◆ 我要去洗手间。
- ◆ 我要去海滩。

Scene 3

场景 3

Bruce is a funny old man who is always kidding around. Today he came to a restaurant. Let's see how he met people for the first time.

布鲁斯是个风趣的老头。他总是开玩笑。今天他来到了一家餐馆。我们来看看

他是怎样和第一次见面的人谈话的。

Dialogue 3

对话 3

- Receptionist: Hello! How are you?  迎宾小姐: 您好! 今天好吗?
- Bruce: Good. 布鲁斯: 很好。
- Receptionist: How many? 迎宾小姐: 几位?
- Bruce: Just myself. 布鲁斯: 就我自己。
- Receptionist: This way please. 迎宾小姐: 请这边来。
- Receptionist: How about this table? 迎宾小姐: 坐这里行吗?
- Bruce: Fine. Thank you. 布鲁斯: 行。谢谢。
- Receptionist: You're welcome. 迎宾小姐: 不客气。您的服务员马上就过来。
Your server will be right with you.
- Bruce: Okay. 布鲁斯: 好的。
... ...
- Waitress: Hi, how are you doing today? 女服务员: 您好, 今天好吗?
- Bruce: Can't be better. 布鲁斯: 再好不过了。
- Jennifer: My name is Jennifer, and I'm your server today. 杰妮佛: 我叫杰妮佛, 今天为您服务。
- Bruce: There is nothing better than meeting a beautiful girl like you. 布鲁斯: 没有什么比遇见你这么漂亮的姑娘更让人高兴了。
- Jennifer: Thanks. Are you ready to order? 杰妮佛: 谢谢。您可以点菜了吗?
- Bruce: Yes. Get me a Cheese Burger with fries. 布鲁斯: 好的。给我来个奶酪汉堡, 外加炸薯条。
- Jennifer: Anything to drink? 杰妮佛: 喝点儿什么?
- Bruce: Ice tea. 布鲁斯: 冰茶。
- Jennifer: That's all? 杰妮佛: 就这些了吗?
- Bruce: No. You give me your phone number and I 布鲁斯: 不。你给我你的电话号码, 我给你我的社会安

give you my Social
Security Number.

全号码。
杰尼佛：真逗。

Jennifer: Very funny.

交

(An old couple, John and Mary, who knew Bruce, came in the restaurant and sat with Bruce as well. 一对老夫妻, 约翰和玛丽, 走了进来。他们认识布鲁斯, 就坐在一起了。)

John: Hey, buddy, how is it going?

约翰：嗨，哥们儿，怎么样？

Bruce: Pretty good. Hey, where's the
girl with you last time?

布鲁斯：挺好的。嗨，上次和你在一起的
那位姑娘呢？

John: Ha-ha, you are getting me into
trouble.

约翰：哈哈。你要坏我，是不是？

Mary: Is that true, Bruce?

玛丽：是真的吗，布鲁斯？

Bruce: You know I'm always trying to
have fun.

布鲁斯：你知道我好开玩笑。

(A little girl and a boy came in the restaurant and sat at the next table by Bruce with their mom. Bruce started talking to them. 一个女孩儿和一个男孩儿进了餐馆，和他们的妈妈一起坐在布鲁斯旁边的桌子。布鲁斯和他们交谈起来。)

Bruce: Hi, what's your name?

布鲁斯：你好，你叫什么名字
啊？

Boy: Jimmy.

男孩儿：吉米。

Bruce: How about you?

布鲁斯：你呢？

Girl: Tracey.

女孩儿：瑞茜

Bruce: Okay, I got it. (Bruce
pointed to the girl.)

布鲁斯：噢，我知道了。（指着
女孩儿）你是吉米。

You are Jimmy. (And

(指着男孩儿)你是瑞茜。

pointed to the boy.)

You are Tracey.

Boy and Girl: No, no!

男(女)孩儿：不是，不是！

Boy: I'm Jimmy and she is
Tracey.

男孩儿：我是吉米，她是瑞茜。

Girl: I'm Tracey and he is
Jimmy.

女孩儿：我是瑞茜，他是吉米。

Bruce: Ha-ha-ha.

布鲁斯：哈哈。



In the above dialogue, Bruce showed the funny side of Americans. Americans like humor. Some are hilarious. Nobody wants to be with dull people. If you ask Americans, "Whom would you like to go out with? Bill Clinton or George Bush?" Most people would answer: "Bill. He is more fun." I used to have a boss who was hilarious. Once he was trying to start a computer program, and the computer was very slow. He was sitting there for a few minutes. So he said, "When I first clicked the button, my hair was black. Now they are all grey." Working or living with somebody with a sense of humor, you feel active, young, and pleasant.

在上面的对话里,布鲁斯表现了美国人幽默的一面。美国人喜欢幽默,有些人很搞笑。没人愿意和乏味的人在一起。要是你问美国人:“你喜欢和谁出去玩,比尔·克林顿还是乔治·布什?”大多数人会回答:“比尔。他更有意思。”我以前有个老板,很会开玩笑。有一次,他要启动一个计算机软件,可是计算机动作很慢。他坐在那儿呆了好几分钟。于是他说:“我一开始按键时,头发还是黑的,现在都白了。”和有幽默感的人一起工作或学习,感觉有生气,年轻,心情舒畅。

However, be careful if you make jokes like Bruce to the waitress. Bruce was old so the waitress thought he was joking. If you are a young fellow, you may get into trouble. You can be accused of sexual harassment. Also, Bruce knew the old couple very well, or that joke could be a disaster as well. The joke with the kids was harmless.

可是,你要像布鲁斯那样对女服务员开玩笑,也要小心点儿。布鲁斯是老头,服务员不在乎他开开玩笑。你要是个小伙子,就可能惹上麻烦,人家也可能说你性骚扰。布鲁斯和那对老夫妻很熟,不然的话,那种玩笑也可能引起灾难。对话里和小孩儿开的那种玩笑没关系。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① buddy: 哥们儿

② kid around: 总是开玩笑

③ Can't be better: 再好不过了

④ I got it.: 我明白了

⑤ Fries: french fries 炸薯条

⑥ Social Security Number: 社会安全号, 也可以简称为 SS。相当于中国的身份证号。

因为美国没有户口, 所以社会安全号就更重要。个人的重要信息、报税、银行账号、水电账号、受雇等等, 都要用到社会安全号

⑦ mom: 妈妈, 小孩子叫妈妈的用语

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Get me ... please.
- ◆ Get ... into trouble.
- ◆ Anything to ...

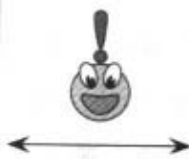


- ◆ 请给我 ……
- ◆ 让 …… 惹上麻烦。
- ◆ 有没有什么可以 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Get me a blanket please.
- ◆ Get me some water please.
- ◆ Get me a glass of water please.
- ◆ Get me a drink please.
- ◆ Get me a pillow please.



- ◆ 请给我一个毯子。
- ◆ 请给我点儿水。
- ◆ 请给我一杯水。
- ◆ 给我来杯饮料。
- ◆ 给我个枕头(靠垫)。

- ◆ You got him into trouble.
- ◆ She got into a big trouble.
- ◆ I got into trouble.
- ◆ Don't get me into trouble.
- ◆ Stay away from trouble.



- ◆ 你给他惹上麻烦了。
- ◆ 她麻烦大了。
- ◆ 我惹麻烦了。
- ◆ 可别给我找麻烦。
- ◆ 小心点, 别惹麻烦。

Chapter One

Greetings

- ◆ Would you like anything to eat?
- ◆ Should we get anything to drink?
- ◆ Should we get something to drink?
- ◆ Is there anything to see?
- ◆ Is there anywhere to go?



- ◆ 想吃点儿东西吗?
- ◆ 我们不喝点儿什么吗?
- ◆ 我们得喝点儿东西吧?
- ◆ 有什么可看的?
- ◆ 有可游玩的地方吗?

Topic 2 Everyday Greetings

第二题 日常见面语

In American English, there are various greetings in everyday life. They can be confusing when you first arrive in the U.S.. For this topic, let's introduce you to a variety of greetings, so you would feel more comfortable with them.

美国英语的日常见面语多种多样,第一次到美国时可以达到让人困惑的程度。在这个话题里,我们向您介绍各种见面语,使您能够运用自如。

Scene 1

场景 1

Brian and Andrea go to the same graduate school. They meet in the graduate student office every day. Brian was sitting at his desk this morning, and Andrea came into the office.

布莱恩和安雅娅在同一个研究生院学习,他们天天在研究生办公室见面。布莱恩这天早晨正坐在桌前,安雅娅来了。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Brian: Hi, Andrea.

Andrea: Hi there.

Brian: How are you doing?

Andrea: Great! How about you?

Brian: Pretty good. What happened to your hair?

Andrea: Oh, I just took a shower.

Brian: Your hair is all wet. You may catch cold this way.

Andrea: Thank you for caring about me. I like it.



布莱恩: 你好,安雅娅。

安雅娅: 你好。

布莱恩: 今天好吗?

安雅娅: 好极了! 你呢?

布莱恩: 挺好的。你头发怎么了?

安雅娅: 噢,我刚刚洗了淋浴。

布莱恩: 你的头发都湿了,会着凉的。

安雅娅: 谢谢你这么关心我。我很高兴。

Chapter One

Brian: No problem.

Andrea: I got a class to go. Catch
you later.

Brian: See ya.

布来恩：不客气。

安雅娅：我要上课去了。一会儿见。

布来恩：再见。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., people usually greet each other when meeting at school or office. These greetings are casual. When being asked, "How are you?" or "How are you doing?", the answer is usually "Good." Nobody is expecting different answers. People tend not to get into other people's lives. They don't really want to know. If your answer is "Not so good," it becomes a problem. Next dialogue shows that kind of situation.

在美国,人们在学校或公司里见面通常都打招呼。这些招呼都是比较随便的。当被问到“你好吗?”或者“今天怎么样?”,通常的回答都是“挺好的。”没人会期望有不同的回答。大家尽量不介入别人的生活。他们并不想知道别人的事。你要是回答:“我不太好。”那就有问题了。下一个对话就是那样的情形。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Hi, there. 你好
- ② take a shower: 洗淋浴
- ③ catch cold: 着凉, 感冒
- ④ catch you later: 再见, 一会儿见
- ⑤ graduate school: 研究生院, 英国英语里叫 postgraduate school
- ⑥ freshman: 高中或大学一年级学生
- ⑦ sophomore: 高中或大学二年级学生
- ⑧ junior: 高中或大学三年级学生
- ⑨ senior: 高中或大学四年级学生

Patterns

句型

- ◆ What happened to ...
- ◆ I got a ... to go.



- ◆ 怎么了?
- ◆ 我要去参加

- ◆ What happened to your book?
- ◆ What happened to your glasses?
- ◆ What happened to the key?
- ◆ What happened to the room?



- ◆ 你的书怎么了?
- ◆ 你的眼镜怎么了?
- ◆ 钥匙怎么没了?
- ◆ 这房间发生了什么事?

- ◆ I got a meeting to go.
- ◆ I got a birthday party to go.
- ◆ I got a picnic to go.
- ◆ I got a wedding to go.



- ◆ 我得去开会了。
- ◆ 我要去一个生日派对。
- ◆ 我要去一个野餐。
- ◆ 我要参加一个婚礼。

Scene 2

场景 2

Joe and Bob are officemates. They both came to the office in the morning. They greeted each other, and the following was their conversation.

乔和鲍勃在同一个办公室工作。他们早晨来到办公室,互相打了招呼。下面是他们的对话。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Joe: Hello, Bob, good morning.

Bob: Hi, Joe, morning.

Joe: How are you doing today?

Bob: Not so good.

Joe: What's wrong?

Bob: Argued with my wife.

Joe: Really? Women. You can never understand them.

Bob: Tell me about it. It's about the kids.

Joe: I know. Kids are always probl-



乔: 你好,鲍勃,早上好。

鲍勃: 你好,乔,早晨好。

乔: 今天好吗?

鲍勃: 不太好。

乔: 怎么了?

鲍勃: 和太太吵架了。

乔: 真的? 女人,永远难以理解。

鲍勃: 是啊。是关于孩子的事。

乔: 我知道,孩子总是有问题。

Chapter One

一切都会过去的。

ems. Well, you'll get
over it.

Bob: Yeah.

Joe: Have a nice day!

Bob: You too!



鲍勃: 是啊。

乔: 祝你今天愉快!

鲍勃: 你也一样!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

As you can see from the above dialogue, Bob was not feeling good because he had an argument with his wife that morning. But Joe did not really want to get into that discussion. Most Americans would not like to mind other people's business. There are also people who would like to discuss the details of any trouble or problems you may have. It all depends on the personality. If you do have a problem, you want to talk to the people you can trust. If you are being offered help, you can consider it. Most Americans would prefer to keep their problems to themselves, and solve their problems by themselves.

从上面的对话里你可以看到,鲍勃那天早晨不痛快,因为他和太太吵架了。可是乔并不想介入实质性的讨论。大多数美国人不愿意介入别人的事。也有人愿意详细和你讨论你的问题或麻烦,这都取决于人的个性。你要是真的有事,应该找你能相信的人谈。要是有人愿意帮忙,你可以考虑接受。大多数美国人会自己的事自己管,自己解决。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Morning.: 等于 Good morning.
- ② What's wrong?: 怎么了? 也可以说 What went wrong? 这种问话也有责备的意思,见下面的替换练习,应用时要小心。
- ③ get over: 过去,淡忘,不再想它
- ④ Tell me about it.: 我知道得很清楚,是啊。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ What's wrong with ...
(What's with ...)
- ◆ It's about ...



- ◇ 怎么了?
- ◇ 是关于 的事。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ What's wrong with you?
- ◆ What's wrong with him?
- ◆ What's wrong with the kids?
- ◆ What's wrong with the room?
- ◆ What's wrong with the computer?



- ◇ 你怎么了? 你怎么搞的?
- ◇ 他怎么了? 谁惹到他了?
- ◇ 孩子怎么了?
- ◇ 这房间发生了什么事?
- ◇ 那计算机怎么了?

- ◆ It's about the program.
- ◆ It's about my parents.
- ◆ It's about the money.
- ◆ It's about my girl friend.
- ◆ It's about the pension.



- ◇ 是关于项目的事。
- ◇ 是有关我父母的事。
- ◇ 是为了钱。
- ◇ 是和我女朋友有关。
- ◇ 是关于退休金的事。

Topic 3 Business Greetings

第三题 公务见面语

Meetings on business require special attention. You represent your company in such cases. Your personality may affect the relationship of your company with customers or suppliers. It in turn determines if your company will gain or lose business. In any case, being polite and honest is the best policy. Here we provide some examples of business greetings.

公务会面需要特别注意,您这时代表您的公司。您的性格可能会影响贵公司和客户或者供应商的关系。这归根结底会导致营业额的增加或减少。在任何情况下,礼貌和诚实是最好的相处之道。这里我们提供给您公务见面用语的典型对话。

Scene

场景

Tony Clark is the Engineering Manager of JAC Company. Maria Johnson is the Sales Manager of Delta Company. The two companies would like to cooperate in a program. Tony and Maria were going to have a meeting with related personnel from each company. Maria and her team came to JAC Company.

托尼·克拉克是 JAC 公司的工程经理。玛丽亚·约翰逊是 Delta 公司的销售经理。这两家公司想要合作一个项目。托尼和玛丽亚要协同各自公司的人一起开个会。玛丽亚领着他们的人来到了 JAC 公司。

Dialogue

对话

Receptionist: Hello, may I help you?

Maria: Yes. We're here to see
Tony Clark.

Receptionist: Please sign in, and I'll

接待员: 你好,需要帮忙吗?

玛丽亚: 是的。我们是来见托尼·克拉克的。

接待员: 请登记一下。我好给你

give you your badges. • 们身份卡。

Maria: Okay. • 玛丽亚: 好的。

Receptionist: I'll call Tony and have • 接待员: 我叫托尼来接你们。
him come up. •

Maria: Thanks. • 玛丽亚: 谢谢。

(Maria and her staff signed the registration book with name, person to visit, time in, visit purpose, etc., and the receptionist provided them with temporary badges. A young man walked up. He is Tony. 玛丽亚和她公司的同事登了记,写了名字、要拜访的人、进来的时间、访问目的等等,接待员给了他们临时身份卡。一个年轻人走了过来,他就是托尼。)

Tony: Maria? • 托 尼: 是玛丽娅吗?

Maria: Yes. Tony? • 玛丽亚: 是。你是托尼?

Tony: Yes. Have you all got • 托 尼: 是的。你们都拿
your badges? • 到身份卡了吧?

Maria: We did. This is Brian • 玛丽亚: 拿到了。这是布来
Zhao, and this is Julie • 恩·赵,这是茱丽·
Mukenski. • 木坎斯基。

Brian and Julie: Hello, Tony. • 布来恩和茱丽: 你好,托尼。

Tony: Hi. Let's go to the • 托 尼: 你们好。我们去会
conference room. Our • 议室吧,我们的人
team is there. • 等在那里。

Maria: Okay. • 玛丽亚: 好的。

(They entered a conference room, introduced to each other, and exchanged business cards. 他们进了会议室,互相自我介绍,交换了名片。)

Maria: Hi, I'm Maria Johnson, Sales • 玛丽亚: 你好,我是玛丽亚·约翰
Manager. (She handed her busi- • 逊,销售经理。(她将自己
ness cards to the people of • 的名片递给 JAC 公司的
JAC Company.) • 人。)

Tony: Hi, Tony Clark, Engineering • 托 尼: 你好,我是托尼·克拉克,
Manager. (Handed his business • 工程经理。(他将自己的
cards to the people from Delta • 名片递给 JAC 公司的
Company.) • 人。)

(After all the business card exchanges, Tony started the meeting. 交换完名片,托尼召集大家开会了。)

Chapter One

Tony: Let's get started.



托尼: 让我们开始开会吧。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

American companies usually have a reception area, also called the front desk or lobby. Visitors would need to sign in at the front desk. The receptionist may provide you a temporary badge while you stay inside the company. Some badges have different colors to show the security level. The badge shows that you are a visitor.

美国公司通常有一个接待处,也叫前台或门厅。访问者需要在前台登记。接待员一般会给你一个临时身份卡,供你在公司里佩带。有些身份卡有不同的颜色代表不同的保密级别,身份卡会标明你是访问者。

People exchange their business cards before meetings. In the U.S., you don't have to hold your business card with both hands to show respect. It is quite normal to hand over your business card with one hand, and take other people's cards with the other. It would be different if you were meeting people from Japan.

大家在开会前交换名片。在美国,不用双手递名片以示尊重。一手递自己的名片,一手接别人的名片很正常。但是和日本人会面时另当别论。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① badge: 公司的身份卡,一般佩带在胸前
- ② front desk: 前台,接待台
- ③ conference room: 会议室
- ④ team: 工作小组,团队
- ⑤ sign in: 进门登记
- ⑥ sign out: 出门登记
- ⑦ business card: 名片
- ⑧ ID: Identification 身份证

Patterns

句型

- ◆ We're here to (for) ...
- ◆ Have you got your ...?

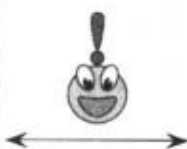


- ◆ 我们是来 的。
- ◆ 你带 了吗?

Substitute Exercise

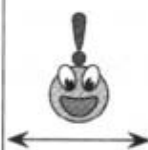
替换练习

- ◆ We're here for the training.
- ◆ I'm here for the seminar.
- ◆ I'm here for an interview.
- ◆ We're here to have a meeting.



- ◆ 我们是来受培训的。
- ◆ 我是来听讲座的。
- ◆ 我是来面试的。
- ◆ 我们是来开会的。

- ◆ Have you got your passport?
- ◆ Have you got your ID with you?
- ◆ Have you got your driver's license?
- ◆ Have you got your work permit?



- ◆ 你带护照了吗?
- ◆ 你带身份证了吗?
- ◆ 你带驾照了吗?
- ◆ 你带工作许可了吗?

Chapter Two Make Friends

第二章 交友



Nobody disagrees about the importance of friends. The old Chinese saying goes, relying on parents at home, and depending on friends away from home. When you are far away from home abroad, the importance of friendship can never be over-stressed. In the U.S., you have opportunities to meet people from all over the world: your classmates, your roommates, your officemates, both American and nonAmerican. As Internet becomes so popular, you may meet some net-friends as well at any location of the world.

没有人否认朋友的重要性。中国的老话说,在家靠父母,出门靠朋友。当你远离家乡,出了国,那就怎么强调友谊都不过分。在美国,你有机会认识世界各国的人。他们可能是你的同学,室友,同事,有美国人,也有外国人。现在互联网越来越流行了,你还可能交网友,无论你是在世界的哪一个角落。

Topic 1 Classmates

第一题 同学

Classmates are a very special group of friends. The friendship with classmates lasts for lifetime. You spend years with classmates, and you know them very well. They are also willing to help because they know you.

同学是非常特殊的朋友,和同学的友谊终生长在。和同学在一起相处很多年,互相比较了解。因为熟悉,他们也愿意帮助你。

Scene 1

场景 1

Lamar is an American graduate student. Brian met him the first day he arrived on the campus. They work for the same professor in the graduate school. Professors in a graduate school are more like bosses than as teachers, because they pay graduate students. Lamar is an easy-going guy. He showed Brian the campus, the library, the cafeteria, and the Mechanical Engineering Department. Brian and Lamar became good friends. The following is a dialogue between them.

乐玛是个美国研究生,布来恩来校第一天时就认识了他。他们在研究生院里为同一个教授工作。研究生院的教授与其说是老师不如说是老板,因为研究生的工资是教授发的。乐玛很容易与人交往。他带布来恩参观了校园、图书馆、食堂和机械系。布来恩和乐玛很快成了好朋友。下面是他们俩的对话。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Lamar: Hello, Brian.

Brian: Hi, Lamar.

Lamar: Have you found an apartment?

Brian: I got a temporary place, but I
can only stay there for a week.



乐玛: 你好,布来恩。

布来恩: 你好,乐玛。

乐玛: 你找到公寓了吗?

布来恩: 我有个临时的地方住,
但只能住一周。

Chapter Two

- Lamar: Where are you staying?
- Brian: An apartment, on Piedmont Street.
- Lamar: Are you serious?
- Brian: Sure. Why?
- Lamar: That is a Red Light District.
- Brian: What is Red Light District?
- Lamar: That's the area with prostitutes.
- Brian: Really? I didn't know that.
- Lamar: I bet you didn't.
- Brian: I definitely need a new apartment.
- Lamar: For sure. I'll let you know if I hear of anything.
- Brian: Thanks a lot. I appreciate it.
- Lamar: No problem.
- 乐玛: 在什么地方?
- 布莱恩: 一个公寓, 在皮德门特街上。
- 乐玛: 是真的吗?
- 布莱恩: 是啊, 怎么了?
- 乐玛: 那是红灯区。
- 布莱恩: 什么是红灯区?
- 乐玛: 就是有妓女的地区。
- 布莱恩: 真的吗? 我不知道啊。
- 乐玛: 我猜你也不知道。
- 布莱恩: 我一定要找个新的公寓。
- 乐玛: 当然。我要是听说哪里有, 我会告诉你。
- 布莱恩: 非常感谢。我很领情。
- 乐玛: 没问题。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It is easy to make friends with students. It won't be so easy after you started working. As a student, you may go to parties, games, and bars with classmates. Most students or graduate students are not married and have no family to take care of. However, don't depend on classmates too much. They may forget what they promised very quickly.

学生之间交朋友比较容易, 工作了以后就不那么容易了。作为学生, 你可以和同学去派对, 观看比赛, 去酒吧。大多数学生或者研究生也没结婚, 没有家的拖累。但是不要太依靠同学, 他们有时说完就忘了。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ④ over-stressed: 过分强调
- ⑤ Are you serious? 是真的吗? 你不是开玩笑吧?
- ⑥ Red Light District: 红灯区, 妓女出没的地区

- ④ bet: 猜想
 ⑤ appreciate: 领情
 ⑥ apartment: 公寓, 欧洲人称之为 Flat

句型

Patterns

- ◆ I bet ...
- ◆ Let ... know



- ◆ 我猜
- ◆ 通知

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I bet you didn't want to go.
- ◆ I bet he was crazy about you.
- ◆ I bet nobody cares.
- ◆ I bet it's very expensive.



- ◆ 我猜你不想去。
- ◆ 我猜他疯狂地爱着你。
- ◆ 我猜没人管。
- ◆ 我猜这一定很贵。

- ◆ Let me know if you want any.
- ◆ If you need any help, let me know.
- ◆ Could you let him know what you need?
- ◆ I'll let you know the meeting time later.



- ◆ 你想要点儿的话, 吱一声儿。
- ◆ 需要帮忙的话, 告诉我。
- ◆ 你能告诉他你需要什么吗?
- ◆ 一会儿我告诉你开会的时间。

Scene 2

场景 2

Lamar invited Brian to go to breakfast. Brian was not sure if Lamar was going to pick up the tab or not. He could only play by ear. He came to the restaurant at the time they set up, and found Lamar was already waiting there. Brian walked to Lamar's table and took a seat.

Chapter Two

乐玛邀请布莱恩去吃早餐。布莱恩吃不准乐玛是请他客还是各自付账,只好见机行事。他按时间来到餐馆,乐玛已经等在那里了。布莱恩走到乐玛桌前坐了下来。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Lamar: Good morning, Brian.

Brian: Good morning.

Lamar: What would you like for breakfast?

Brian: I like eggs and fruits.

Lamar: Then you can have fruit omelet.

Brian: Maybe. What are you going to have?

Lamar: I'll have the American traditional, two eggs, sausage, and toasts.

Waitress: Have you decided what you would have?

Lamar: I'll have two eggs, sunny side-up, a sausage, and toasts.

Waitress: Milk or orange juice?

Lamar: Milk, 2%.

Waitress: How about you?

Brian: I'll have two eggs, scrambled, a fruit cup, a blueberry muffin, and a fat-free yogurt.

Waitress: What would you like to drink?

Brian: Milk, skim milk.

Lamar: You really eat healthy.

Brian: Yes.



乐玛: 早晨好, 布莱恩。

布莱恩: 早晨好。

乐玛: 早饭想吃什么?

布莱恩: 我喜欢鸡蛋和水果。

乐玛: 那你可以吃蛋卷水果啊。

布莱恩: 也许。你想要点什么?

乐玛: 我要传统的美国早餐, 两个鸡蛋、香肠、还有烤面包片。

女服务员: 你们想好了吃什么了吗?

乐玛: 我要两个煎荷包蛋、香肠、外加烤面包片。

女服务员: 喝牛奶还是橙汁?

乐玛: 牛奶, 2%脂肪的。

女服务员: 您呢?

布莱恩: 我也要两个鸡蛋, 炒的。一个小果盘、一个蓝莓小蛋糕、一个无脂酸奶。

女服务员: 您喝点什么?

布莱恩: 牛奶, 无脂牛奶。

乐玛: 你真是健康吃法。

布莱恩: 是啊。

(After the waitress brought the food. She put the bill on the table, face down. After the meal, Lamar picked up the bill. 服务员端来食物后,把账单放在桌上,正面朝下。吃完了饭,乐玛拿起了账单。)

Lamar: It's \$5.50 for me, and \$6.15 for you.

Brian: Okay.

Lamar: Let's pay it at the counter.

Brian: How about the tip?

Lamar: 15% would be about \$1.50. I'll leave a dollar and you leave 50 cents on the table.

Brian: Thanks.

Lamar: Sure.

乐 玛: 我的账单是 5.5 元, 你的
是 6.15 元。

布来恩: 好的。

乐 玛: 我们到柜台上付吧。

布来恩: 小费怎么办?

乐 玛: 15% 大概是 1.5 元。我出
一美元, 你出 50 分吧。

布来恩: 谢谢。

乐 玛: 没关系。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Most American students do not cook. They eat either in the cafeteria or restaurants. When they invite you to eat, it does not mean they are going to pay for you. Most of time, people pay for themselves. You don't have to feel uneasy with this way of payment. In the above dialogue, Brian finally found out that it was go Dutch.

大多数美国学生不做饭,他们在食堂或者餐馆吃。他们请你吃饭时,并不代表他们会替你付账。通常是 AA 制的,你也不必感到不好意思。在上面的对话中,布来恩最后发现这顿饭是自己付钱的。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① pick up the tab: 付账
- ② play by ear: 看情形行事
- ③ omelet: 把搅好的鸡蛋和菜、香肠、火腿等一起下锅做成的蛋卷。可以选不同的配料
- ④ toast: 烤面包片,通常涂上奶油

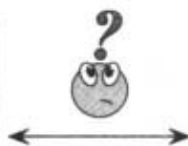
- 5 sunny side-up: 煎荷包蛋
- 6 scrambled: 炒鸡蛋, 油很少
- 7 yogurt: 酸奶
- 8 skim milk: 无脂(全脱脂)牛奶
- 9 tip: 小费
- 10 go Dutch: AA 制

Patterns

句型

◆ What would you like for (to)...

◆ What are you going to ...



◆ 你想 点什么?

◆ 你要 什么?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ What would you like for drink?

◆ What would you like to have?

◆ What would you like to eat?

◆ What would you like to do?



◆ 你想喝点儿什么?

◆ 你想吃点儿什么?

◆ 你想吃点儿什么?

◆ 你想干点儿什么?

◆ What are you going to do?

◆ What are you going to choose?

◆ What are you going to make?

◆ What are you going to play?



◆ 你怎么办? 你要干什么?

◆ 你想选哪儿一个?

◆ 你要做(制造)什么?

◆ 你想玩点儿什么?

Topic 2 Professors

第二题 教授

Professors and students can be very close. If a professor likes you, he would help you for a long time. I have seen such long good relationships. A professor went to industry later. Some of his students also joined the same company, working for him. The relationship between professors and students is a bit like that of parents and kids.

教授和学生可能会交往很好。如果一个教授喜欢你,他可能会长期地帮助你。我见过这种长期的友好关系:一个教授改行到工业界,他的学生也跟到同一家公司为他工作。教授和学生之间的关系有点像父母和孩子。

Scene 1

场景 1

Professor Floyd Leatherman is Brian's advisor, and also his boss. He gets support from industries, and he pays Brian's tuition and salary. He had a few Chinese students. All of them are quite smart. He is Jewish, as many professors in American universities. He likes Brian, and invited Brian to go to his home for dinner. Brian brought some tea with him as a gift. Professor Leatherman lives in an expensive condominium in Boston. The condo has spacious living area and a basement. Brian was impressed by the nice decoration.

弗洛易德·来思门教授是布莱恩的导师,也是他的老板。他从工业界搞钱,再发给布莱恩学费和工资。他有几个中国学生,都很聪明。和许多美国大学里教授一样,他是犹太人。他喜欢布莱恩,邀请了布莱恩到他家晚餐。布莱恩带了茶叶做礼物。来思门教授住在波士顿的一个豪华公寓里,里面有宽阔的生活空间和地下室。布莱恩对漂亮的装潢印象深刻。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Brian: Floyd, your home is beautiful.



布莱恩: 弗洛易德,你家真漂亮。

Floyd: Thank you. Brian, this is



弗洛易德:谢谢你。布莱恩,这是我

Chapter Two

my wife Sharon.

Brian: Hi, Sharon, so nice to meet you.

Sharon: Hi, Brian. I heard a lot about you.

Brian: A lot of bad things?

Sharon: No. Good things. You are very bright.

Brian: Thank you. I brought some tea for you.

Sharon: Oh, thank you. You shouldn't have done that.

Brian: You are welcome.

Floyd: So much tea, enough for my lifetime. Last time I had some Chinese tea, it was so strong, and I couldn't sleep for three days.

Brian: Ha-ha, so make sure you don't drink it before going to bed.

Floyd: I know. I think dinner is ready. Let's go to the dining room.

太太莎润。

布莱恩：您好，莎润，认识您真高兴。

莎润：你好，布莱恩，我总听到关于你的事情。

布莱恩：很多坏事吧？

莎润：不，好事，你很聪明。

布莱恩：谢谢。我带了些茶叶给您。

莎润：哦，谢谢你。你不该这么客气。

布莱恩：不客气。

弗洛易德：这么多茶，够我喝一辈子了。上次我喝了些中国茶，劲儿很大。我一连三天都睡不着觉。

布莱恩：哈哈，那你上床前一定不要喝茶。

弗洛易德：是啊。晚饭准备好了，我们去餐厅吧。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Professors and students can also become friends. This kind of friendship may last for lifetime. Americans do not pay too much attention to respecting professors. You can call a professor by first name. It shows that you are close to him. Americans also like being called by first name.

教授和学生也可以成为朋友，这种友谊可能持续一辈子。美国人并不很注重尊师，对教授可以直呼其名，这样显得亲热，美国人也愿意让人直呼其名。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交往的地道口语

- ① advisor: 导师
- ② smart: 聪明
- ③ bright: 聪明
- ④ condominium: 住户购买的公寓
- ⑤ condo: Condominium 的简称

Patterns

句型

- ◆ You shouldn't have ...
- ◆ Make sure ...



- ◆ 你不该
- ◆ 保证, 确保

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ You shouldn't have told him.
- ◆ You shouldn't have bought this.
- ◆ You shouldn't have argued with him.
- ◆ You shouldn't have had the fight.



- ◆ 你不该告诉他。
- ◆ 你不该买这个。
- ◆ 你不该和他吵架。
- ◆ 你不该打那一架。

- ◆ Make sure he is okay.
- ◆ Make sure he stays home.
- ◆ Make sure you don't get caught.
- ◆ Make sure you agree with each other.



- ◆ 一定保证他不受到伤害。
- ◆ 一定让他呆在家里。
- ◆ 保证你不会被抓到。
- ◆ 你们意见一定要一致。

Scene 2

场景 2

Professor Floyd Leatherman has another Chinese student Ming Li. Ming came to the U.S. not long ago. He is not used to the American culture yet. He does not express his opinion straightforward. This time, Professor Leatherman invited Brian, Lamar, and Ming to lunch at the end of the semester.

弗洛伊德·来思门教授还有一个中国学生叫李明。明来美时间不长。他对美国文化还不习惯。他不会直截了当地说出自己的想法。这次,来思门教授请布来恩、乐玛、和明在学期末去吃午饭。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Floyd: Hey, guys. Where do you want to go?



弗洛伊德: 嗨, 同伴们, 你们想去哪儿?

Lamar: There is a Middle East restaurant in downtown. Should we try that one?

乐玛: 市中心有家中东餐馆, 去那儿怎么样?

Brian: I know that place. Pretty good. How about you, Ming? What kind of food do you like?

布来恩: 我知道那家, 挺好的。明, 你觉得呢? 你喜欢哪类菜?

Ming: Middle East is okay.

明: 中东菜也可以。

Floyd: Let's go.

弗洛伊德: 那我们走吧。

(Floyd drove his BMW, taking his students to the restaurant. They found two parking spaces with meters. Floyd got out. 弗洛伊德开着他的宝马车, 带着他的学生们来到了这家餐馆。他们找到两个打表的停车位。弗洛伊德出了车。)

Floyd: Wait a minute. Let me take a look and see which meter has more money left.

弗洛伊德: 等等, 我看看哪个表里剩的钱多。

(They finally parked the car and entered the restaurant. They ordered the Middle-east food, and Ming was not eating much. 他们最后停好了车, 进了餐馆, 点了中东菜, 可是明没怎么吃。)

Floyd: What's wrong, Ming?

● 弗洛易德:你怎么了,明?

Ming: It doesn't taste good.

● 明: 不咋好吃。

Floyd: I thought you said Middle East was okay.

● 弗洛易德:你不是说中东菜还可以吗?

Ming: I thought if you guys liked it, I would just go with the flow.

● 明: 我想要是大家都喜欢,我就随大流吧。

Floyd: You shouldn't. Remember you need to speak for yourself. Now we know what kind of food you don't like.

● 弗洛易德:那你不该这样,记住你要为自己说话。现在我们知道你不喜欢哪种菜了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In this case, Ming did not want to disagree with other people, so he chose to follow them. At the end he did not enjoy the food. This shows the difference in American and Chinese culture. Americans feature straight talking, and Chinese people prefer implying. Sometimes, a Chinese may suffer himself for an agreement with others. This is not appreciated in the American culture.

在这件事里,明不想和其他人有不同意见,所以他决定遵从大家的意见。后来他没有享受到可口的饭菜。这表现了中美文化的区别。美国人的一个特点是直言不讳。中国人有时会含蓄一些。有时中国人会委曲求全,这在美国文化中是不受欣赏的。

In the U.S. cities, it is common to park on the street with meters. You need to pay coins in the meter to park legally. Otherwise the police would write you a ticket. Sometimes, the person parked before you put more money than he needed to be safe. Professor Leatherman wanted to save money, so he was checking on the meters to see which one has more money left.

在美国城市中,路边停车经常有停车表。你要往表里塞零钱才能合法停车,不然会被警察罚款。有时在你之前停车的人为了保险起见多放了钱。来思门教授想省钱,所以他要查看一下哪个表里剩的钱多。

This time, Professor Leatherman paid for the whole group for lunch.
这次吃饭,来思门教授请客,为大家买了单。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① guys: 伙计们, 同伴们
- ② Middle East: 中东
- ③ BMW: 宝马车
- ④ parking meter: 停车表
- ⑤ go with the flow: 随大流, 跟着走

Patterns

句型

- ◆ What kind of ... do you like?
- ◆ I thought ...

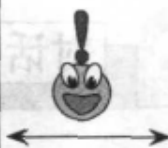


- ◆ 你喜欢哪一种
- ◆ 我以为

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ What kind of places do you like to visit?
- ◆ What kind of drinks do you like?
- ◆ What kind of work do you like?
- ◆ What kind of music do you like?



- ◆ 你喜欢去哪一类的地方游玩儿?
- ◆ 你喜欢哪种饮料?
- ◆ 你喜欢哪类工作?
- ◆ 你喜欢哪类音乐?

- ◆ I thought you went home.
- ◆ I thought you were drunk.
- ◆ I thought he was mad at you.
- ◆ I thought I got everything right.



- ◆ 我以为你回家了呢。
- ◆ 我以为你醉了。
- ◆ 我以为他生你气了。
- ◆ 我以为我都做对了。

Topic 3 Roommates

第三题 室友

Relationship between roommates is a hard one. You live with them every day. It can be very hard if you don't like any of them. Problems can stem from minor things. You need to pay attention to have a good relationship with your roommates.

室友之间的关系是比较难的。你和他们天天在一起,要是你不喜欢他们中的任何一位,你的生活就会不愉快。很小的事情可能演变成大问题,要有一个和睦相处的室友关系,还真要付出一些努力啊。

Scene 1

场景 1

Ming lives with Gary Taylor. Gary is a graduate student from New York. He drinks quite a bit. Tonight, Gary wants to go out to a bar with Ming.

明和盖瑞住一起,盖瑞是来自纽约的一个研究生,挺能喝酒。今晚儿,他想叫明一起去酒吧。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Gary: Ming, any plans tonight?

Ming: Nothing particular. I may do some laundry and homework.

Gary: When is the homework due?

Ming: Monday.

Gary: It's only Friday today. Forget about the homework. Let's go out for a drink.

Ming: Where do you want to go?

Gary: Cheer's is good.



盖瑞: 明,今晚儿有安排吗?

明: 没什么特别安排。也许洗洗衣服,做点作业。

盖瑞: 作业什么时候要交啊?

明: 星期一。

盖瑞: 今天刚刚星期五。别管什么作业了,喝酒去吧。

明: 想去哪儿啊?

盖瑞: “欢乐时光”不错。

Chapter Two

Ming: Who else is going?

Gary: Mark will join us later. Brian is going too.

Ming: Really? Okay. I'll go with you.

明: 还有谁去?

盖瑞: 马克一会儿去。布莱恩也去。

明: 是吗? 好的, 我和你去。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Drinking is also part of the culture on campus. It does not mean this is right. Some universities even provide transportations to bars on weekends to avoid drunk driving. The legal age to have alcoholic drinks is 21 in the U.S.. ID's may be checked when you buy liquor or beers in supermarkets or in bars.

喝酒也是校园文化的一部分, 这并不等于喝酒是对的。有些大学甚至在周末为学生提供去酒吧的接送服务, 这是为了避免酒后驾车。美国的法定喝酒年龄是 21 岁, 在超市或酒吧买酒也可能要检查身份证。

Most American students would not worry about homework until the day it is due. You can see a lot of students are busy doing homework before the class.

大多数美国学生都是等到要交作业时才着急。在上课前你能看到许多学生忙着做作业。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① quite a bit: 很多, 很经常
- ② do laundry: 洗衣服
- ③ drunk driving: 酒醉驾车
- ④ DUI: Drive under influence 喝酒或吸毒后驾车

Patterns

句型

- ◆ When is ... due?
- ◆ Forget about ...

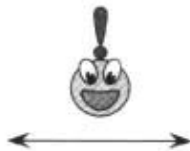


- ◆ 什么时候交? 什么时候到期?
- ◆ 不要管

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ When is the book due?
- ◆ When is the report due?
- ◆ When is the quotation due?
- ◆ When is the tuition due?



- ◆ 书什么时候要还?
- ◆ 报告什么时候交?
- ◆ 报价什么时候要?
- ◆ 学费什么时候交?

- ◆ Forget about him.
- ◆ Forget about the report.
- ◆ Forget about the work.
- ◆ Forget about the meeting.



- ◆ 别管他了。
- ◆ 别操心报告的事了。
- ◆ 把工作摆一摆吧。
- ◆ 别管什么会议了。

Scene 2

场景 2

In the bar, they started talking about the apartment they rent. There are four people living in the apartment: Gary, Ming, Mark, and Brian.

在酒吧里,他们谈起了他们租的公寓。公寓里住了四个人:盖瑞、明、布莱恩、马克。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Gary: You know, our landlord is really mean. Last month, we didn't pay rent on the 1st of the month. He called me on the 2nd and yelled at me.

Ming: I heard he's one of the infamous landlords in town.

Mark: He is talking about increasing the rent next year.



盖瑞: 哎, 咱们的房东真够恶的。上个月, 咱们一号没交房租, 他二号就打电话冲我喊。

明: 听说他是本有名的恶房东之一。

马克: 他张罗着过年涨房租呢。

Chapter Two

Brian: I may move out if he increases too much.

Mark: Right. We should look for new apartments before next semester.

Ming: Don't forget me when you guys are looking.

Gary: We'll take care of you. Don't worry.

Mark: Our toilet is still not fixed. The water is running all the time.

Brian: Yeah, so noisy that I'm having a hard time to sleep at night.

Gary: Let's fix it ourselves. It could be years before he fixes it.

Ming: Right.

布莱恩: 要是涨太多我就要搬走了。

马克: 是啊,下学期之前我们应该找找房子。

明: 你们找房子时可别忘了我。

盖瑞: 我们会照顾到你的,放心。

马克: 我们的马桶还没修好。水一直在流。

布莱恩: 是啊,噪音闹得我晚上都睡不着。

盖瑞: 我们自己修修吧,等房东可没年头。

明: 是啊。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Students usually live in cheap apartments. The status and equipment of the apartments may not be good. Sometimes they have friction with landlords. The landlord, in most cases, requires one-month deposit, and the rent is due on the 1st of each month. The maintenance may not be well for cheap apartments. There are minimum requirements by the government for the apartments. If any situation develops, you should contact the housing office of the university.

学生一般住在较便宜的公寓里,设备和环境都不见得好,有时还会和房东有摩擦。房东一般要求交一个月房租的押金,然后每月的一号交当月房租。便宜公寓的维修也不会太好。政府对公寓有最低要求。要是出现问题的话,可以咨询大学的住房办公室。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交往的地道口语

- ① apartment: 公寓
- ② mean: 凶恶, 坏
- ③ yell: 叫喊, 训斥
- ④ move out: 搬出
- ⑤ move in: 搬入
- ⑥ moving-in condition: 可以马上入住
- ⑦ deposit: 押金
- ⑧ rent: 租金
- ⑨ take care of: 照顾, 保管, 看护
- ⑩ toilet: 马桶
- ⑪ fix: 修理, 修好

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I heard he's ...
- ◆ Don't forget me when ...
- ◆ Take care of ...
- ◆ It could be years before ...



- ◆ 听说他是 ……
- ◆ 当 …… 时, 别忘了我。
- ◆ 照顾 ……
- ◆ 要 …… 可得时间了。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I heard he's going to New York.
- ◆ I heard he's a jerk.
- ◆ I heard he's a fool.
- ◆ I heard he's canned.



- ◆ 听说他要去纽约。
- ◆ 听说他挺混的。
- ◆ 听说他是个傻瓜。
- ◆ 听说他被开除了。

- ◆ Don't forget me when you guys go to a party.
- ◆ Don't forget me when you make any plans.

- ◆ 你们去派对时可别忘了我。
- ◆ 你计划任何事情时可别忘了我。

Chapter Two

Make Friends

- ◆ Don't forget me when you go out for lunch.
- ◆ Don't forget me when you see anything interesting.



- ◆ 你出去吃午饭时别忘了叫我。
- ◆ 见到有趣的东西 (事情), 告诉我。

- ◆ I'll take care of this.
- ◆ John will take care of the bill.
- ◆ Susan will take care of the kids.
- ◆ He will take care of the projector.



- ◆ 我会处理这件事。
- ◆ 约翰会买单的。
- ◆ 苏珊会照顾孩子们的。
- ◆ 他会把投影仪收起来。

- ◆ It could be years before she figures out.
- ◆ It could be years before we get our payment.
- ◆ It could be years before building is renovated.
- ◆ It could be years before the road is repaired.



- ◆ 等她搞明白是怎么回事, 可得年头了。
- ◆ 等到我们拿到钱, 可得时间了。
- ◆ 等到这楼房装修完, 可得哪年哪月。
- ◆ 等到路修好了, 那可得几年了。

对话

Dialogue 1

Topic 4 People from Other Countries

第四题 外国朋友

Because you are in the U.S., an immigration country, where there are people from all over the world, you have the opportunity to meet people from every corner of the globe. Some of them are proud; some are timid. Some are noble; some are humble. You can feel the different personalities of people from different nations. To become a friend with those people is a privileged experience.

因为你在美国,一个移民国家,在这里人们来自世界各地,你有幸和世界上各个角落的人见面。有些人高傲,有些人腼腆。有些人高贵,有些人卑微。你可以感受到不同国家人们的性格。和这些人交朋友是一种难得的经验。

Scene 1

场景 1

Muhammad is a graduate student from Middle East. He was sent by the government to study in the U.S.A.. He is very smart, good at computers and data acquisition. Ming had a class on this subject with him. One day, Ming met him on the campus. They started a conversation.

穆罕莫德是中东来的一个研究生。他是政府公派的留学生。他很聪明,并且在计算机和数据采集方面很强。明和他一起修这方面的课。一天,明在校园里遇见了他,他们谈了起来。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Ming: Hi, we are in the same class.



明: 你好,我们修同一门课。

Muhammad: Yes. Computer Interface and Data Acquisition, right?

穆罕莫德: 是啊,计算机接口和数据采集,对吧?

Ming: Yes. Where are you from?

明: 对。你从哪里来?

Chapter Two

Muhammad: Iran.

Ming: Wow. They let you come here to study?

Muhammad: Yes. My government sent me here. They provided me a scholarship.

Ming: You are lucky. I heard the government is quite strict over there.

Muhammad: Yes. There are a lot of crazy things. But I don't agree with the American policy either.

Ming: Which part don't you like?

Muhammad: Well. I don't want to talk about it.

Ming: This is a free country. You can say whatever you want.

Muhammad: You think so? I don't know. Nice to meet you.

Ming: Nice to meet you too. I may visit you someday.

Muhammad: You are very welcome. I'll show you my apartment.

Ming: Thanks. See you around.

Muhammad: See you.

穆罕莫德: 伊朗。

明: 哇, 他们让你来这儿学习?

穆罕莫德: 是啊, 我们政府公派我来的, 他们给我提供了奖学金。

明: 你真幸运。听说你们政府挺严厉的。

穆罕莫德: 是的, 有很多不可思议的事情。但是我也不同意美国的政策。

明: 哪方面的政策你不喜欢?

穆罕莫德: 哦, 我不想谈这些。

明: 这是个自由国家, 你可以想说什么就说什么。

穆罕莫德: 你真以为是这样吗? 我可说不准。很高兴认识你。

明: 也很高兴认识你, 我哪天去看你。

穆罕莫德: 很欢迎。我会带你参观我的公寓。

明: 谢谢。再见。

穆罕莫德: 再见。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Since Muhammad was from Middle East, under the circumstances, he was careful not to get into political discussions. Students from Middle East are smart and easy to work with. Because of the 9.11 event, people from

Middle East do not feel the same as before. There are sensitive topics you may want to avoid. In any case, they should enjoy the freedom as people from other countries.

因为穆罕默德来自中东,在现在的形势下,他很小心,不愿意谈论政治。中东来的学生挺聪明,也比较容易交往。因为 9.11 事件,中东来的人和以前感觉不一样了。有些话题比较敏感。不管怎么样,他们应该和其他国家来的人一样享受应有的自由。

Related Words and Phrases

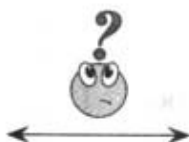
相关词语

- ① data acquisition: 数据采集
- ② free country: 自由国家
- ③ policy: 政策
- ④ crazy: 疯狂, 不可思议。
- ⑤ I don't want to talk about it. 我不想谈这个。
- ⑥ I don't know. 我不知道; 我不敢苟同。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ They let ...
- ◆ I'll show you ...



- ◆ 他们让
- ◆ 我会带你参观

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ They let him get away with murder.
- ◆ They let you in charge.
- ◆ They let me register for the classes.
- ◆ They let her take the test.



- ◆ 他们让他逃脱了谋杀罪。
- ◆ 他们让你负责任。
- ◆ 他们让我注册上课了。
- ◆ 他们允许她参加考試了。

- ◆ I'll show you my Lab.
- ◆ I'll show you our facility.
- ◆ I'll show you the report.
- ◆ I'll show you around.



- ◇ 我会带你参观我的实验室。
- ◇ 我会带你参观我们的设施。
- ◇ 我会给你看那份报告。
- ◇ 我会带你到处参观一下。

Scene 2

场景 2

Jun is a graduate student from Korea. He is very friendly and helpful. He works in the Electron Microscope Laboratory of the Materials Engineering Department. He taught Brian how to operate the microscopes. Here is a dialogue between him and Brian.

俊是韩国来的一个研究生,他很友好也很助人。他在材料工程系的电子显微镜实验室工作并教会了布莱恩怎样用电子显微镜。下面是他和布莱恩的一段对话。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: Hello, Jun.

Jun: Hi, Brian.

Brian: Where do you live, Jun?

Jun: I rented an apartment on West Street, not far from the campus.

Brian: Do you share with other students?

Jun: No. I share with my wife and son.

Brian: You are funny. How old is your son?

Jun: Two.

Brian: Terrible two.

Jun: Yes. He wants attention.

Brian: I can't imagine taking care of



布莱恩: 你好,俊。

俊: 你好,布莱恩。

布莱恩: 俊,你住在哪儿?

俊: 我在西街上租了个公寓,离校园不远。

布莱恩: 你和其他学生合租吗?

俊: 不是,我和我太太和儿子合租。

布莱恩: 你真逗。你儿子多大了?

俊: 两岁。

布莱恩: 淘气的两岁孩儿。

俊: 是啊,他需要别人的注意力。

布莱恩: 我想像不出带孩子是怎

American Interpersonal

English

kids.
Jun: For me or for you?
Brian: Ha-ha. I'm not married yet.
Jun: You don't have to be married to have kids. If you want to marry, you'll find somebody.
Brian: Yeah. My Cinderella.
Jun: You bet.

样。
俊: 是想像不出我带孩子还是你带孩子?
布莱恩: 哈哈,我还没结婚啊。
俊: 不是必须结婚才能要孩子啊。你要是想结婚,一定会找到意中人的。
布莱恩: 是啊,我的灰姑娘。
俊: 当然。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., some foreign students tend to mix with American students. Some don't. It is dependent on one's personality. Students from the same continent may feel close. Students from the same country would naturally have more contact and activities together. On some campuses, there are clubs for people from the same country or with same heritage.

在美国,有些外国学生和美国学生比较融合,有些不太融合。这和人的个性有关。来自同一个大陆的学生可能感觉比较近,来自同一个国家的学生自然接触更多,在一起活动也多一些。在有些校园里,还有一些同一个国家或同一文化的同乡会。

Related Words and Phrases

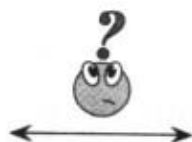
相关词语

- ① share: 分享,合租
- ② funny: 幽默,逗
- ③ terrible: 淘气,糟糕
- ④ Cinderella: 灰姑娘
- ⑤ Mr. Right: 白马王子

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I can't imagine ...
- ◆ If you want to ...



- ◆ 我不能想像
- ◆ 你要是想

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I can't imagine going to graduate school.
- ◆ I can't imagine working for a Doctor's degree.
- ◆ I can't imagine that you take care of kids.
- ◆ I can't imagine when you are mad.



- ◆ 我不能想像上研究生院是什么样。
- ◆ 我不能想像读博士学位会是怎样。
- ◆ 我想像不出你怎样照顾孩子。
- ◆ 我想像不出你生气什么样。

- ◆ If you want to be good at something, you got to work hard.
- ◆ If you want to be a president, you need to behave like a president.
- ◆ If you want to take care of me, you must take care of yourself first.
- ◆ If you want to cry, do it somewhere else. I cannot take it any more.



- ◆ 你要想有拿手的绝活儿，就得刻苦地干。
- ◆ 你要想当总裁，就得有个总裁的样儿。
- ◆ 你要想照顾好我，先要照顾好你自己。
- ◆ 你要是想哭，到别处去。我可再也受不了你了。

Topic 5 Net Friends

第五题 网友

The Internet has become so popular, and meeting people on the Internet is nothing special. People can go on the Internet to chat, play games, do business, buy stuff, look for jobs, trade stocks, and do a lot more things. People use special abbreviated words on the Internet, especially when chatting. Here is only an example.

互联网现在如此流行,在网上交友已经不是什么稀奇的事儿了。大家上网聊天,玩儿游戏,做生意,买东西,找工作,交易股票,还可以做很多其他事情。大家在网上,特别是聊天的时候,用一些特殊的缩略简化词。这里只是一个例子。

Scene

场景

Ming gets on Internet sometimes. He uses Yahoo. There are so many chatting groups on Yahoo with special interests, including people from China or interested in China. His Yahoo username is Tiger1246, and he has a few net friends on Yahoo. Today, he got in one of the chatting room, and found a person named Smiling Rose. He started chatting with the person.

明有时上网,他使用雅虎。雅虎里有好多为有特殊兴趣的群体开辟的聊天室,包括中国人的和对中国感兴趣的。他的雅虎用户名是老虎 1246,他在雅虎上有些网友。今天,他上了雅虎网的聊天室,发现了一个叫微笑玫瑰的人,他和这个人聊上了。

Dialogue

对话

Tiger1246: Hi, how r u?

Smiling Rose: Good, u?

Tiger1246: Fine. Where r u?

Smiling Rose: als pls?



老虎 1246: 喂,你好吗?

微笑玫瑰: 挺好,你呢?

老虎 1246: 挺好,你在哪儿?

微笑玫瑰: 请问年龄、地点、性

Chapter Two

别?

- Tiger1246: 23, USA, m. u?
- Smiling Rose: 20, China, f.
- Tiger1246: What do u do?
- Smiling Rose: Student.
- Tiger1246: Which university?
- Smiling Rose: Beijing University.
- Tiger1246: u must b smart.
- Smiling Rose: Not really. Which city r u in?
- Tiger1246: LA.
- Smiling Rose: This room is boring.
- Tiger1246: 4242.
- Smiling Rose: Got to go. 88.
- Tiger1246: Nice to meet u. See u.
- 老虎 1246: 23, 美国, 男。你呢?
- 微笑玫瑰: 20, 中国, 女。
- 老虎 1246: 你是做什么的?
- 微笑玫瑰: 学生。
- 老虎 1246: 哪个大学?
- 微笑玫瑰: 北京大学。
- 老虎 1246: 你一定很聪明。
- 微笑玫瑰: 过奖了。你在哪个城市?
- 老虎 1246: 洛杉矶。
- 微笑玫瑰: 这个聊天室没意思。
- 老虎 1246: 是啊是啊。
- 微笑玫瑰: 要下了, 拜拜。
- 老虎 1246: 很高兴认识你, 再见。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Contacts and communications through the Internet are more and more popular. It is easy to meet people on the Internet. However, Internet crime is also serious. You need to be careful when meeting people on the Internet.

通过互联网接触和交流已经越来越流行了。在网上认识人很容易, 但是互联网犯罪也日益严重。在网上交友要小心。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① r = are
- ② u = you
- ③ 4 = for
- ④ als = age, location, and sex
- ⑤ m = male
- ⑥ f = female
- ⑦ b = be
- ⑧ LA = Los Angeles
- ⑨ 4242 = 是啊是啊
- ⑩ 88 = bye-bye

Chapter Three Eat and Drink

第三章 吃喝



Friends do eat and drink together sometimes. A famous movie from Taiwan was called "Eat, Drink, Men and Women." There are different classes of restaurants. Language may also vary from one to another. In this chapter, we provide dialogues in each category of restaurants.

朋友总是会在一起吃喝的。台湾的一部著名影片就叫“饮食男女”。餐厅有不同的档次,所用的语言也会有所不同。在这章里,我们学习不同档次餐厅里的对话。

Topic 1 Snack Bar

第一题 小吃店

Snack bar is simpler and smaller than the regular cafeteria. On campus, there are usually both snack bars and cafeterias. If you just want to have a quick and light meal, you go to the snack bar. For a better meal, you go to the cafeteria.

小吃店比正常的食堂简单,也小。在校园里,通常既有小吃店也有食堂。你要是想吃得快点儿,简单一点儿,就去小吃店。要是想吃得好点儿,就去食堂。

Scene


场景

Amy met Brian again on the campus. It was about lunchtime. Brian walked up and said hello to Amy.

艾米又在校园里遇见布莱恩了。刚好是午饭时分,布莱恩走上前来和艾米打招呼。

Dialogue

对话

- Brian: Hi, Amy. Nice to see you again. 
- Amy: Hi, Brian. How are you?
- Brian: I'm fine. Just want to grab something for lunch. Do you want to come along?
- Amy: Why not. Where do you want to go?
- Brian: I'm not really hungry and just wanted to hit the Snack Bar.
- Amy: I want to have something light too. Let's go.
- 布莱恩: 你好,艾米。很高兴又见到你。
- 艾米: 你好,布莱恩。今天好吗?
- 布莱恩: 很好。刚想去吃点儿午饭,想不想一起去?
- 艾米: 好啊,想去哪里?
- 布莱恩: 我不太饿,只是想去小吃店。
- 艾米: 我也不想多吃。走吧。

(They got to the Snack Bar and stood in front of the counter. 他们来到小吃店,站在柜台前。)

交往的地道口语

Brian: I would like a sandwich.

How about you?

Amy: A sandwich and a cup of soup would be good.

Server: What would you like?

Amy: Italian on wheat, lettuce and tomato.

Server: Cheese?

Amy: Swiss please.

Server: You?

Brian: Roast beef on buns.

Server: What would you like on it?

Brian: Everything.

Server: Okay.

布莱恩: 我想要个三明治,你呢?

艾米: 三明治加杯汤挺不错。

服务员: 你想吃点什么?

艾米: 意大利三明治、全粉面包、生菜和西红柿。

服务员: 奶酪?

艾米: 请用瑞士奶酪。

服务员: 你呢?

布莱恩: 圆面包夹烤牛肉三明治

服务员: 上面放什么东西

布莱恩: 全套的。

服务员: 好的。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Snack Bar has only hot dogs, hamburgers, sandwiches, salads, soups, and drinks. When you order a sandwich, you need to specify what you want to put on. The selections are: kind of meat, bread, cheese, and if you want lettuce, tomato, onion, and pickles. If you order a hot dog, you need to choose if you want catch up, mustard, onion, and pickles.

小吃部只有热狗、汉堡包、三明治、沙拉、汤、和饮料。订三明治时,你要说明上面放什么。选择包括:哪种肉、面包、奶酪、还有是否要生菜、西红柿、洋葱、和酸黄瓜。要是买热狗,要说明是否要西红柿酱、芥末、洋葱和酸黄瓜。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① snack: 零食,小吃

② lunch time: 中午时分

③ breakfast: 早饭

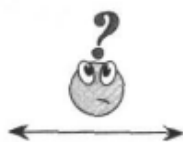
④ dinner: 晚饭

- ⑤ brunch: 早中饭
- ⑥ come along: 一起去
- ⑦ wheat: 全粉面包
- ⑧ bun: 圆面包
- ⑨ hot dog bun: 热狗面包
- ⑩ everything: 意思是加三明治的所有东西, 包括奶酪、西红柿片、生菜片、洋葱丝、酸黄瓜片、和三明治酱

Patterns

句型

◆ Just want to ...

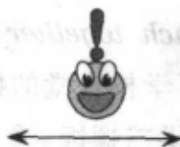


◆ 刚想; 只想

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Just want to find who that was.
- ◆ Just want to go to the restroom.
- ◆ Just want to hit the road.
- ◆ Just want to go home.



- ◆ 只想知道那是谁。
- ◆ 刚想去卫生间。
- ◆ 刚想上路。
- ◆ 就想回家。

Topic 2 Cafeteria

第二题 食堂

The cafeteria on the campus offers various meal plans. You can choose two meals per day for weekdays, three meals per day for weekdays, or three meals per day for all week. The price tag is different on each plan. You can choose the plan according to your needs.

校园里的食堂有各种不同的就餐计划。你可以选每周五天,每天两顿;每周五天,每天三顿;全周,每天三顿等等。价钱都不一样,你可以按需选择合适的计划。

Scene 1

场景 1

Amy and Brian joined the monthly program of the cafeteria on the campus. The plan they chose was a 5-day-a-week plan, Monday through Friday. They get three meals a day. The cafeteria is a buffet style. You can have as much as you want. They paid for one month to try it out. They came to lunch together today.

艾米和布莱恩加入了学校食堂的按月付费计划。他们选择了每周五天,星期一到星期五的计划,每天提供三顿饭。食堂是自助方式的,你可以随便吃。他们付了一个月的钱先试一下。今天他们一起来吃午饭。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Brian: Did you get your food card?

Amy: Yes, I did.

Brian: Do you know how it works?

Amy: Not really.

Brian: Each time you eat here, give the card to the girl at the register.

布莱恩: 你拿到饭卡了吗?

艾米: 对,拿到了。

布莱恩: 你知道怎么用卡吗?

艾米: 不太清楚。

布莱恩: 每次在这儿吃饭,把饭卡交给收款员。

Chapter Three

Amy: What is she going to do?
Brian: She will slide your card, and your lunch money for today is deducted from the card.
Amy: So nobody can use my card for lunch again.
Brian: Right, but only for today.
Amy: That's okay. I don't need two lunches the same day.
Brian: Remember we picked the 5-day plan. What are you going to do for weekends?
Amy: I'll cook myself.
Brian: Can I join you?
Amy: Can you cook?
Brian: No, I can eat.
Amy: Get out of here!
Brian: Come on. What are friends for?
Amy: I got to think about it.
Brian: Okay. Let me know. I can buy grocery.
Amy: I'll let you know.

艾米: 她做什么呢?
布莱恩: 她刷一下你的卡,你今天的午饭钱就从卡里减去了。
艾米: 那就没人可以再用我的卡吃午饭了。
布莱恩: 对,但只是今天不能了。
艾米: 那没关系,我不会一天吃两顿午饭。
布莱恩: 你记得我们选了五天计划,周末你怎么办呢?
艾米: 我自己做饭。
布莱恩: 能不能带我一个?
艾米: 你会做饭吗?
布莱恩: 不会。我会吃。
艾米: 去你的吧!
布莱恩: 帮帮忙。咱们是朋友嘛。
艾米: 我得考虑考虑。
布莱恩: 好吧,想好了通知我,我可以买菜。
艾米: 我会通知你的。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the above dialogue, Amy said: "Get out of here!" to Brian. She did not mean yelling at Brian. Sometimes, people especially girls say this to close friends.

在上面的对话里,艾米向布莱恩说:"去你的!",但她并没有骂布莱恩的意思。有时人们,尤其是女孩子对较熟悉的朋友会这样说。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① cafeteria: 食堂

② buffet: 自助餐

- ③ card: 卡片, 饭卡
 ④ plan: 计划, 项目
 ⑤ how it works: 怎样运行
 ⑥ Get out of here! 去你的! 滚蛋!

句型

Patterns

- ◆ Each time ...
- ◆ Nobody can ...
- ◆ I got to ...



- ◆ 每次
- ◆ 没人能
- ◆ 我一定要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Each time I go home, I see a lot of changes.
- ◆ Each time you use the VIP card, you will get 20% discount.
- ◆ Each time you bang on the door, you scare me to death.
- ◆ Each time he goes to Atlantic City, he comes back empty handed.
- ◆ Nobody can beat Jordon.
- ◆ If you can't, nobody can.
- ◆ Nobody can convince him.
- ◆ Nobody can get this job done in three hours.
- ◆ I got to go.
- ◆ I got to run.
- ◆ I got to get this done today.
- ◆ I got to keep my boss happy.



- ◆ 每次我回家乡, 都看到很多变化。
- ◆ 每次你用贵宾卡, 都会打八折。
- ◆ 每次你拍门, 都把我吓个半死。
- ◆ 每次他去大西洋赌城, 都输个精光。
- ◆ 没人能打过乔丹。
- ◆ 你要是不能, 就没人能了。
- ◆ 没人能说服了他。
- ◆ 没人能在三小时内干完这个活。
- ◆ 我必须走了。
- ◆ 我有急事要走了。
- ◆ 我今天一定要把这件事做完。
- ◆ 我必须让老板高兴。

Scene 2

场景 2

Lily works at Ford Motor Company. On the first day of her employment, she was excited and also a little bit nervous. Tony took her to the cafeteria of the company for lunch.

莉莉在福特汽车公司工作。她第一天上班时,既兴奋又有点紧张。托尼带她到公司的食堂吃午饭。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Tony: Ready for lunch?

Lily: Yes. I'm hungry.

Tony: Let's go to the Cafeteria.

Lily: Okay.

Tony: How's your first day?

Lily: Quite busy. I went to the orientation, and they talked a lot about visions and missions.

Tony: Yeah. How did you like it?

Lily: I didn't remember much.

Tony: I know. Too much stuff on the first day.

Lily: To get start is always hard.

Tony: Tell me about it.

Lily: Wow, I like the Cafeteria.

Tony: Impressive, right?

Lily: Sure. Like a fancy restaurant.

Tony: Much better than the school, right?

Lily: Right. There are several entrees, grill, hot and cold sandwiches, big salad bar, soups, and lots of drinks. Looks great.



托尼:准备好去吃午饭了吗?

莉莉:准备好了,我还真饿了。

托尼:我们去食堂吧。

莉莉:好的。

托尼:第一天感觉怎么样?

莉莉:挺忙的。去听了公司介绍,讲了很多公司的前景规划和使命。

托尼:是啊,你喜欢这些吗?

莉莉:我没记住多少。

托尼:我也有同感,第一天太多东西啦。

莉莉:万事开头难。

托尼:可不是吗。

莉莉:哇,我喜欢这食堂。

托尼:印象蛮好的,是吧?

莉莉:是啊,像高档饭店。

托尼:比在学校里强多啦,是吧?

莉莉:是啊。这里有好几样主菜、烧烤、许多种热的和冷的三明治、很大的沙拉自助台、各种汤、还有很多种饮料。看起来太棒啦。

Tony: I'm glad you like it.

Lily: Me too.

Tony: You want to order it for here or to go?

Lily: I'll have it here.

Tony: Good. Get some time away from the desk.

Lily: Right.

● 托尼：我很高兴你喜欢食堂。

● 莉莉：我也高兴。

● 托尼：想在这儿吃，还是带走？

● 莉莉：我在这儿吃。

● 托尼：好，从工作环境中解脱一会儿。

莉莉：是啊。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The cafeteria in large companies is quite good. There are a lot of choices of food. The whole company, from the CEO to the cleaning lady, have lunch there. The lunch is not free, but is cheaper than in the restaurants. You can eat there, or pack and take it somewhere else. Of course you can also go out to have lunch.

大公司里的食堂很不错。有很多种食物的选择。公司里的所有员工，从总裁到清扫工，都在食堂吃。午饭不是免费的，但比餐馆里要便宜一些。你可以在那里吃，也可以打包带走到别处吃。当然也可以到外面餐馆吃午饭。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① orientation: 公司为新雇员作的公司介绍，包括公司概况、目标、使命、待遇、保险、税收、和各种政策
- ② vision: 前景
- ③ mission: 使命，任务
- ④ entree: 主菜
- ⑤ grill: 烧烤
- ⑥ salad: 沙拉。一般有生菜、西红柿、黄瓜、芥兰、蘑菇、菜花、葡萄干、瓜子等
- ⑦ salad Dress: 沙拉油，一般有法国的(French)、阮奇(Ranch)、千岛(Thousand Island)、酒醋的(Wine and Vinegar)等等种类
- ⑧ pack: 打包

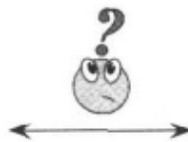
Chapter Three

9 go out: 出去吃饭, 约会

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I'm glad that ...
- ◆ You want to ...

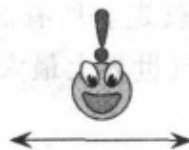


- ◆ 我很高兴
- ◆ 你想

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I'm glad that I didn't go.
- ◆ I'm glad that he understood me.
- ◆ I'm glad that we got back together.
- ◆ I'm glad that you came back.



- ◆ 多亏我没去。
- ◆ 我很高兴他理解我。
- ◆ 我好高兴我们又和好了。
- ◆ 我真高兴你回来了。

- ◆ You want to go right now?
- ◆ You want to fight? Be careful.
- ◆ You want to give me shit?
Tell you what. I don't care!
- ◆ You want to come with me?



- ◆ 你想现在就走吗?
- ◆ 你想争一争? 多加小心。
- ◆ 你想责难我? 告诉你, 我不在乎!
- ◆ 想和我去吗?

交

Topic 3 Fast Food Restaurants

第三题 速食店

往

的地道口语

Fast food is a feature of the American culture. Fast food was created because of the rapid pace of industrial revolution. You can get the food right away, eat and go. In the U.S., all the fast food restaurants have drive-through services. You don't even need to get off the car. Popular fast food chains are MacDonald's (The largest fast food chain in the world.), Burger King, Kentucky Fried Chicken, Pizza Hut, Taco Bell, White Castle, etc.

速食是美国文化的一个特色。速食是随着工业革命的快速节奏应运而生的。你可以马上得到食物,吃完了马上就走。所有的快餐店都有开车通过的服务,你都不用下车。流行的快餐店有麦当劳(世界上最大的快餐连锁店)、堡包王、肯德基、必胜客、塔口标和白城堡。

Scene

场景

Amy likes fast food very much. She wanted to go to MacDonald's for dinner today. She asked Brian to take her there.

艾米非常喜欢快餐。她今天想到麦当劳吃晚饭,所以她请布莱恩带她去。

Dialogue

对话

Amy: Do you like MacDonald's?

Brian: It's okay. But you know, that's junk food.

Amy: I know. But I like junk food.

Brian: Why?

Amy: They are tasty.

Brian: Yeah, right. Fat and Salt.

艾米: 你喜欢麦当劳吗?

布莱恩: 还行。可是你知道,那是垃圾食物。

艾米: 我知道,可是我就是喜欢垃圾食物。

布莱恩: 为什么?

艾米: 好吃。

布莱恩: 哼,是啊,脂肪加盐。

Chapter Three

Amy: I don't care.

Brian: You're all right. Quite slim.

Amy: Let's go.

• 艾米: 我不在乎。

• 布莱恩: 你没事儿,挺苗条的。

• 艾米: 我们去吧。

(They came to a MacDonald's. Amy and Brian stood in front of the counter. 他们来到麦当劳,艾米和布莱恩站在柜台前。)

Waitress: What would you like?

Amy: A cheeseburger, a small fries, and an orange juice.

Waitress: A cheeseburger, a small fries, and an orange juice. The total is \$4.50.

Amy: Okay.

Waitress: How about you, Sir?

Brian: A grilled chicken sandwich, and a cup of water.

Waitress: A grilled chicken sandwich and a cup of water. That would be \$2.50.

Brian: Here.

Waitress: Thanks.

• 服务员: 想来点儿什么?

• 艾米: 一个奶酪汉堡包、一个小炸薯条、一杯橙汁。

• 服务员: 一个奶酪汉堡包、一个小炸薯条、一杯橙汁。一共是4.5元。

• 艾米: 好的。

• 服务员: 您呢,先生?

• 布莱恩: 一个烤鸡三明治、一杯冰水。

• 服务员: 一个烤鸡三明治、一杯冰水。是2.5元。

• 布莱恩: 给您。



• 服务员: 谢谢。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Fast food is usually deep fried, greasy and salty, not good for health. In the U.S.A., mostly it is the kids who want to go to the fast food restaurants. These restaurants also offer free toys and gifts with kids' meals to attract kids.

快餐通常都是油炸过的,又油腻又咸,有损健康。在美国,都是孩子们愿意去快餐店。这些店也为了吸引孩子,提供随儿童餐免费的玩具和礼物。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① fast food: 快餐

② MacDonald's: 麦当劳

交

③ junk food: 垃圾食物, 快餐

④ slim: 苗条

⑤ Sir: 先生, 一种尊称, 多用于对警官, 上级军官, 顾客等的称呼

⑥ I don't care. 我不在乎。

往

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

◆ Do you ...

◆ They are ...



◆ 你

◆ 他们(她们, 它们)是

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ Do you want to go?

◆ Do you play golf?

◆ Do you speak English?

◆ Do you plan to go abroad?



◆ 你要走了吗?

◆ 你打高尔夫球吗?

◆ 你会说英语吗?

◆ 你计划出国吗?

◆ They are thirsty.

◆ They are hungry.

◆ They are nice.

◆ They are neat.



◆ 他们渴了。

◆ 他们饿了。

◆ 它们很可爱。

◆ 它们挺干净利落的。

Topic 4 Family Restaurants

第四题 家庭餐馆

Family restaurants usually have reasonable prices. The entrees are not very fancy either. A family of four can have a dinner at a family restaurant with about \$30 to \$40. They serve mostly traditional American food: chicken pot pie, mashed potato, baked potato, salads, soups, steaks, hamburgers, hot dogs, macaroni cheese, chicken fingers, etc. There are some foreign style restaurants that are also family restaurants. Those are Italian, Irish, Chinese, Mexican, Vietnamese, and Tai. French, Spanish, and Japanese restaurants are more expensive. Indian, German, and Russian restaurants seem serving specific groups of customers.

家庭餐馆通常价钱比较公道,菜也不那么漂亮。一家四口在这种餐馆吃一顿晚饭大概 30 到 40 美元。这些餐馆一般有典型的美国菜:罐鸡、土豆泥、烤土豆、沙拉、汤、牛排、汉堡包、热狗、奶酪通心粉、炸鸡肉条等等。有些外国风味的餐馆也是家庭餐馆,像意大利的、爱尔兰的、中国的、墨西哥的、越南的和泰国的。法国、西班牙和日本的餐馆比较贵一些。印度、德国和俄罗斯的餐馆的顾客有一定的局限性。

Scene

场景

Betty plans to take her family out for dinner in a family restaurant. She got a big bonus for last year's performance. Her family has four members: her husband Jim, and two kids Keith and Tracey. They came to the Bob Evan's.

贝蒂计划全家去家庭餐馆吃晚饭。她们公司去年效益不错,发了一大笔奖金。她家里有四口人:她丈夫吉姆、两个孩子凯思和翠西。他们一起来到鲍波·艾文思。

Dialogue

对话

Receptionist: Good evening.

Betty: Good evening.

Receptionist: How many?

Betty: Four.



接待小姐: 晚上好。

贝蒂: 晚上好。

接待小姐: 几位?

贝蒂: 四位。

Receptionist: Smoking or non?

Betty: Non.

Receptionist: Come with me please.

Betty: Thanks.

Receptionist: Is this table okay?

Betty: Good.

Receptionist: Here are the menus.

Your server will be
right with you.

接待小姐: 吸烟还是不吸烟?

贝蒂: 不吸。

接待小姐: 请跟我来。

贝蒂: 谢谢。

接待小姐: 这张桌子行吗?

贝蒂: 挺好的。

接待小姐: 这是菜单。你们的服务
员马上就过来。

(The waitress came in a few minutes. 几分钟后, 服务员来了。)

Waitress: Good evening. Are you
ready to order?

Betty: Yes. I'll have the Chicken
Pot Pie.

Waitress: That comes with bread.
What kind of bread would
you like?

Betty: What do you have?

Waitress: White, wheat and banana.

Betty: I'll have the banana.

Waitress: That is good. Anything to
drink?

Betty: Just water.

Waitress: You, Sir.

Jim: I'll have the New York
Steak.

Waitress: How do you like your
steak cooked?

Jim: Medium rare.

Waitress: That comes with a salad
and potato. What dressing
on your salad?

服务员: 晚上好。可以点菜了吗?

贝蒂: 可以了。我要罐鸡。

服务员: 这道菜配有面包, 你想要
哪种面包?

贝蒂: 你们有哪些面包?

服务员: 白的、全粉的、还有香蕉
的。

贝蒂: 我要香蕉的。

服务员: 香蕉的挺好吃的。喝点什
么?

贝蒂: 水就行了。

服务员: 您呢, 先生?

吉姆: 我要纽约式牛排。

服务员: 您想要什么火候的?

吉姆: 中等偏鲜。

服务员: 这道菜配有沙拉和土豆。
您要哪种沙拉酱?

Chapter Three

Jim: Ranch.

Waitress: How do you like your potato, baked, meshed, or fries?

Jim: Baked.

Waitress: With butter and sour cream?

Jim: No, nothing. Just plain.

Waitress: How about drink?

Jim: Orange.

Waitress: Okay. Hello, kids. What would you like?

Keith: A hamburger for me.

Waitress: With fries?

Keith: Yes.

Waitress: Drink?

Keith: Sprite.

Waitress: Okay. How about you, little princess?

Tracey: I'll have the chicken fingers.

Waitress: Okay. What to drink?

Tracey: Milk.

Waitress: All right. I'll be back with your drinks.

吉姆: 阮奇。

服务员: 土豆要怎样烧的? 烤的、土豆泥、还是炸土豆条?

吉姆: 烤的。

服务员: 加奶油和酸奶油吗?

吉姆: 不,什么都不要,就是纯土豆。

服务员: 喝的呢?

吉姆: 橙汁。

服务员: 好的。你们好,孩子们,想吃点什么?

凯思: 我要汉堡包。

服务员: 加炸薯条吗?

凯思: 是的。

服务员: 喝什么?

凯思: 雪碧。

服务员: 好的。你呢,小公主?

翠西: 我要炸鸡肉条。

服务员: 好的。喝什么?

翠西: 牛奶。

服务员: 好的。我马上把饮料拿过来。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the family restaurants, the waitresses are nice. Some of them are middle aged, just like housewives. The food does not look fancy, but they try to be practical on the size and flavor. Some of the family restaurants are really not bad for taste.

在家庭餐馆里,服务员很友好。有些服务员是中年妇女,就像家庭主妇一样。食物不追求漂亮,但是在量上和味道上都很实际。有些家庭餐馆味道还真的不错。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交

① family restaurant: 家庭餐馆

② Bob Evan's: 鲍波·艾文思, 一个中档餐馆连锁店

③ non (non-smoking): 不吸烟

④ be right with you: 马上就到。在中国多听到服务员说的是: “请稍等。”好像不如“马上就到”更积极主动

⑤ server: 服务员

⑥ Chicken Pot Pie: 罐鸡。是把鸡肉块儿和土豆块儿炖在一个罐子里, 表面上放一个饼把罐口封住。吃的时候把饼捣碎和下面的菜一起吃

⑦ New York Steak: 纽约式牛排。是一大块牛肉, 两面在铁板上烤熟的。

⑧ medium rare: 中等偏鲜。烤制的一种程度。从熟到生(鲜)的等级是: well done: 熟, medium well: 中等偏熟, medium: 中等, medium rare: 中等偏鲜, rare: 鲜

⑨ sour cream: 酸奶油

⑩ orange: 橙汁

⑪ chicken fingers: 炸鸡肉条

往
的地道口语

Patterns

句型

◆ That tastes ...

◆ That comes with ...



◆ 那个吃起来味道

◆ 这道菜配有

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ That tastes awful.

◆ That tastes great.

◆ That tastes terrible.

◆ That tastes nothing.



◆ 那个真难吃。

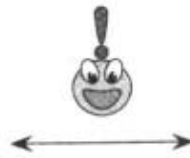
◆ 那个好吃极了。

◆ 那个太难吃了。

◆ 那个没啥味道。

Chapter Three

- ◆ That comes with a toss salad.
- ◆ That comes with a bread stick.
- ◆ That comes with two choices of side orders.
- ◆ That comes with a baked potato.



- ◆ 这道菜配有小沙拉。
- ◆ 这道菜配有面包条。
- ◆ 这道菜配有两样配菜。
- ◆ 这道菜配有烤土豆。

Topic 5 Formal Restaurants

第五题 高档餐厅

Formal restaurants are more expensive. A family of four would cost \$80 to \$100. The waiters and waitresses there are more courteous and services are quite good and formal.

高档餐馆比较贵。一家四口人要 80 到 100 美元。服务人员很客气,态度比较谦恭,服务档次也比较正规。

Scene

场景

Keith turned 12 today. Keith and Tracey had a birthday party at Chunky Cheese. Keith invited his close friends and had a good time playing and eating pizza. For dinner, Betty took the family to Red Lobster.

凯思今天过 12 岁生日。凯思和翠西在“大块奶酪”搞了个生日派对。凯思邀请了他的好朋友,玩游戏,吃比萨饼,很开心。晚饭时贝蒂带着全家来到“红龙虾”。

Dialogue

对话

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Waiter: Hello! How is everybody doing? | 服务员: 您好! 每个人都好吗? |
| Jim: Great. | 吉姆: 很好。 |
| Waiter: Are we here for any special occasions? | 服务员: 今天到这里有什么喜庆的事儿吗? |
| Betty: Yes, to celebrate my son's birthday. | 贝蒂: 是啊, 庆祝我儿子的生日。 |
| Waiter: Wow, birthday boy, how old are you? | 服务员: 哇, 生日娃娃, 多大了? |
| Keith: 12. | 凯思: 12 岁了。 |
| Waiter: That's an important birthday. We have free cake for you, | 服务员: 这是个重要的生日。我们有免费的蛋糕送给你。你 |

Chapter Three

and we will sing the birthday song for you if you like.

Keith: I'll be embarrassed.

Tracey: Why not. It's fun. Let them sing.

Keith: Okay.

Waiter: Let's start with drinks. What would you like, Mam?

Betty: A glass of White Wine.

Waiter: How about you, Sir?

Jim: What kind of beer do you have?

Waiter: Heineken, Beck's, Coors, Budweiser, Bud Ice, and Red Dogs.

Jim: What's on the tap?

Waiter: Miller Draft and Coors Light.

Jim: Coors Light, please.

Waiter: How about the kids?

Keith: I'll have the Strawberry Smoothies.

Tracey: Me too!

Waiter: Okay, two Strawberry Smoothies. I'll be right back with your drinks while you take a look at our menu.

Betty: Thanks.

(The waiter brought the drinks to the table. 服务员送来了饮料。)

Waiter: Are you ready to order?

Betty: Yes. I'll have the steamed lobster.

Waiter: That comes with a baked potato. Butter and sour cream?

Betty: Please.

要是愿意的话,我们还给你唱生日歌。

凯思: 我会不好意思的。

翠西: 为什么不唱? 很有意思的。让他们唱吧。

凯思: 好吧。

服务员: 那让我们先点饮料吧。您想来点儿什么,夫人?

贝蒂: 一杯白葡萄酒。

服务员: 您呢,先生?

吉姆: 你们有哪些啤酒?

服务员: 喜力、拜克、库耳、百威、冰百威、还有红狗。

吉姆: 扎啤有哪些?

服务员: 米勒扎啤和库耳淡爽。

吉姆: 库耳淡爽吧。

服务员: 孩子们呢?

凯思: 我要草莓果肉汁。

翠西: 我也要!

服务员: 好的,两杯草莓果肉汁。你们先看看菜单,我马上就把饮料送上来。

贝蒂: 谢谢。

服务员: 你们选好菜了吗?

贝蒂: 选好了。我要蒸龙虾。

服务员: 这道菜配有烤土豆。要奶油和酸奶油吗?

贝蒂: 是的。

- Waiter: You will also get a salad.
What kind of dressing?
- Betty: Thousand island, on the side.
- Waiter: Okay. What would you like to order, Sir?
- Jim: I'll have the Surf and Turf.
- Waiter: How do you like your steak cooked?
- Jim: Medium.
- Waiter: Butter and sour cream on the baked potato?
- Jim: No.
- Waiter: Dressing on the salad?
- Jim: Fat free Ranch.
- Waiter: How about the kids?
- Keith: Grilled trout.
- Waiter: Great.
- Tracey: I want to have the Seafood Pasta.
- Waiter: Thank you. It will be just one minute.
- 服务员:您还会有一道沙拉,想要什么沙拉酱?
- 贝蒂: 千岛, 摆在边上就可以了。
- 服务员: 好的。这位先生想点什么菜?
- 吉姆: 我要龙虾牛排。
- 服务员: 牛排喜欢几分熟的?
- 吉姆: 中等的。
- 服务员: 烤土豆上要奶油和酸奶油吗?
- 吉姆: 不要。
- 服务员: 想要什么沙拉酱?
- 吉姆: 脱脂阮奇。
- 服务员: 孩子们要点什么?
- 凯思: 烧烤鲑鱼。
- 服务员: 很好。
- 翠西: 我要海鲜面条。
- 服务员: 谢谢。菜一会儿就上来。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Betty picked this formal restaurant for Keith's birthday, showing her attention and care of his son. In the formal restaurants, the waiter usually starts the orders for drinks and then for dinner. You will have a complete set of silverware: two forks, two knives, and two spoons. Remember to work from outside to inside on the silverware.

贝蒂选了这家高档餐馆来庆祝凯思的生日,表现出了她对儿子的关心。在高档餐馆里,服务员通常请顾客先点酒和饮料,然后再点菜。餐具是全套的:两把叉子、两把餐刀、两把勺子。记住用餐具的顺序是从外往里。

Chapter Three

When Betty ordered the salad dress, she told the waitress to put it on the side. That was because she did not want to have too much dressing on the salad. Salad dress can have a lot of fat and is not healthy. If it was on the side, she could put on whatever the amount she liked to.

当贝蒂点沙拉酱时,她告诉服务员放在旁边。那是因为她不想在沙拉上放太多沙拉酱。沙拉酱可能有很多脂肪,不利健康。如果是放在旁边,她就可以任意选择沙拉酱的用量。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Chunky Cheese: 大块奶酪, 是一个为小孩子服务的市内游戏场, 同时也用餐, 主要有比萨饼, 沙拉等食物。主办生日派对, 还有歌舞表演
- ② pizza: 比萨饼, 一种意大利食品, 必胜客就卖这种食物
- ③ Red Lobster: 红龙虾, 是美国一家较高档的连锁餐馆
- ④ occasion: 时刻, 时节
- ⑤ Mam: 夫人
- ⑥ Bud ice: 冰百威啤酒
- ⑦ Miller Draft: 米勒扎啤
- ⑧ Coors Light: 库耳淡爽啤酒
- ⑨ smoothies: 和冰一起搅碎的果肉汁
- ⑩ on the side: 摆在旁边
- ⑪ fat free Ranch: 脱脂阮奇
- ⑫ trout: 鳟鱼
- ⑬ pasta: 意大利面条

Patterns

句型

◆ Let's ...

◆ I'll ... while ...



◆ 让我们 吧。

◆ 趁 时, 我就

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Let's get started.
- ◆ Let's start with Kracey.
- ◆ Let's go.
- ◆ Let's go to dinner.



- ◆ 咱们开始吧。
- ◆ 我们从克瑞茜开始吧。
- ◆ 我们走吧。
- ◆ 去吃晚餐吧。

- ◆ I'll get this done while you look for the document.
- ◆ I'll get something to eat while waiting on him.
- ◆ I'll hit the restroom while waiting for the food.
- ◆ I'll clean up the room while you are mowing the lawn.



- ◆ 趁你找文件,我把这儿事儿做完。
- ◆ 趁等他的机会,我吃点东西。
- ◆ 趁等菜的工夫,我去趟卫生间。
- ◆ 你修整草地时,我打扫房间。

Chapter Four Parties

第四章 派对



Having parties is one important dimension of American life. We call people going to parties all the time "Party Animals". There are all kinds of parties, such as birthday, student, colleague, family, company, picnic, and Christmas parties. Interactions with American friends are quite different depending on the occasions. In this chapter, we are going to learn conversations for all the parties.

美国人生活的一个重要方面是派对。总是去派对的人被称作“派对兽”。派对的形式丰富多彩,有生日派对、学生派对、同事聚会、家庭聚会、公司聚餐、野餐、还有圣诞节聚会,和美国朋友的相互交流也会因时而异。这章里,我们来学习各种聚会中的对话。

Topic 1 Birthday Party

第一题 生日派对

Birthday party is very important for kids or adults. A birthday party is usually held with family and friends. If you are invited to a birthday party, a small gift is fine. Something around \$10 to \$20 is okay. American kids do not pay a lot of attention and respect to guests, so that don't feel offended by that.

生日派对无论对孩子还是大人都很重要。生日派对一般是和家人及朋友一起举行的。要是有人请你去生日派对,买一个小礼物就行了,10到20美元的礼物就可以。美国孩子对客人不讲究多尊敬,这点不必放在心上。

Scene


场景

Remember that Keith had a birthday party at Chunky Cheese? Betty, Keith's Mom, is a professor. She happened to be in the same Department as Amy. Since Amy came to the U.S. from China, Betty invited her to the party as well. Amy knew that she should bring a gift for Keith, so she bought a Harry Potter book that just came out. The party time was 12:00 noon, and Amy came just on time. Amy saw Betty waiting at the door of Chunky Cheese.

还记得凯思在“大块奶酪”开过生日派对吗?贝蒂,凯思的妈妈,是一位教授,恰好和艾米是同一个系的。因为艾米来自中国,贝蒂也邀请了她来参加凯思的生日派对。艾米知道她需要给凯思买个礼物,她就买了一本刚刚出版的哈利·波特。派对的时间是中午12点,艾米按时到了,她看见贝蒂已经等在“大块奶酪”的门口。

Dialogue

对话

- | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------|
| Betty: Hello, Amy. So glad that you made it. |  | 贝蒂: 你好,艾米。真高兴你能来。 |
| Amy: Me too. I really wanted to see Keith's happy face. | • | 艾米: 我也愿意来,我很想看见凯思的笑脸。 |
| Betty: They are having a great time. | • | 贝蒂: 他们在里面玩得很高兴。我 |
| I was just waiting for you. | • | 就在这儿等你呢,快进来 |

Chapter Four

Come on in.

Amy: Thank you so much. This is a little gift for Keith.

Betty: You shouldn't have done it. You just needed to come.

Amy: This is a new Harry Potter book. I thought Keith would like it.

Betty: Keith is crazy about Harry Potter.

Amy: Great! I bought something right.

Betty: That's for sure.

吧。

艾米: 非常感谢你等我。这是给凯思的一点儿小礼物。

贝蒂: 你用不着买礼物啊。你来就行了。

艾米: 这是新出的哈利·波特, 我想凯思会喜欢这书。

贝蒂: 凯思可喜欢哈利·波特啦。

艾米: 太好了! 我买对礼物了。

贝蒂: 没错儿。

(They came to the table reserved for the party, and the kids were already there. 她们来到为派对预订的桌子, 孩子们都等在那里了。)

Betty: Keith, look who is here. Say hello to Amy.

Keith: Hi!

Amy: Hi! Happy birthday!

Keith: Thank you!

Amy: You're welcome.

Betty: It's time to sing Happy Birthday to Keith. Let's light the candles. Keith, make a wish and blow off the candles.

Keith: All right!

All (sing): Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday dear Keith. Happy birthday to you!

Betty: Time to open the gifts, Keith.

Keith: Sure! I can't wait!

贝蒂: 凯思, 看谁来了, 和艾米打招呼。

凯思: 你好!

艾米: 你好! 生日快乐!

凯思: 谢谢你!

艾米: 不客气。

贝蒂: 该给凯思唱生日歌了。点上蜡烛, 凯思, 许个愿, 然后吹蜡烛。

凯思: 好嘞!

大家唱: 祝你生日快乐, 祝你生日快乐, 祝你生日快乐, 亲爱的凯思, 祝你生日快乐!

贝蒂: 该拆看礼物啦, 凯思。

凯思: 当然了! 我等不及了!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交往

的地道口语

For kids, birthday party is fun, and American kids want to have fun all the time. For adults, birthday is when you have a lot of feelings, sometimes emotional. Life goes on at an accelerated speed. The older you are, the faster you feel it goes by. So stop and smell the roses.

对于孩子来说,生日派对是玩乐的好时机。美国孩子总是要玩乐。对于大人来说,生日是感慨万千的时候,有时会很动感情。生活是以加速度进行的,年龄越大,生活就过得越快。所以要时不时放松一下,享受一下生活。

In the U.S., it is also interesting how people count their ages. Kids would say: "I am 2 and half." People of middle age would say: "I'm in the forties." After people reach 100, they would say: "I'm 100 and a half."

在美国,人们数自己年龄时也很有意思。小孩子数起来,会说:“我两岁半。”中年人会说:“我四十多了。”等到人活过一百,他们又会说:“我现在一百零半岁。”

Related Words and Phrases

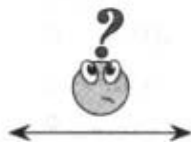
相关词语

- ① party animals: 派对兽,对派对疯狂的人
- ② made it: 办到了,能来,做到了
- ③ Harry Potter: 哈利·波特,流行小说中的一个角色,孩子们心目中的英雄
- ④ crazy about: 非常喜欢
- ⑤ stop and smell the roses: 停下来闻一闻玫瑰。形容不要总是忙,要享受一下生活

Patterns

句型

- ◆ It's time to ...
- ◆ I thought ...



- ◆ 该是 的时候了。
- ◆ 我以为

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It's time to have lunch.
- ◆ It's time to go.
- ◆ It's time to take off.
- ◆ It's time to light the candles.



- ◆ 该去吃午饭了。
- ◆ 该走了。
- ◆ 该出发了。
- ◆ 该点蜡烛了。

- ◆ I thought he would be mad at me.
- ◆ I thought he went home.
- ◆ I thought we were going to the party.
- ◆ I thought you would like her.



- ◆ 我以为他会生我的气。
- ◆ 我以为他回家了。
- ◆ 我以为我们是去开派对。
- ◆ 我以为你会喜欢她。

Topic 2 Student Party

第二题 学生派对

Student parties can be wild. Drinking has been a problem on American campuses for many years. The legal age to drink is 21 in the U.S.. Some underage students drink. Some students drink and drive. Date rapes can happen during or after parties as well. It is a good idea to stay away from these parties if you don't feel comfortable with the situation, especially for girls.

学生派对有时会很疯狂。喝酒是美国校园中长期遗留下来的问题。在美国法定的喝酒年龄是21周岁。有些不够年龄的学生也喝酒。有些学生酒后驾车。约会强暴案也可能在派对时或派对后发生。你要是对这些派对感觉不好，那最好还是不去，女孩子更要注意。

Scene 1

场景 1

It was the end of a semester. The students were having parties after the Finals. Amy, Brian, Lamar and Andrea were all invited to a party. They went together. It was in a student dorm, quite crowded. There was a big barrel of beer at one corner of the living room. A tap was installed on the barrel. Food was on the table. There were sausages, raw vegetables, roasted ribs, raviolis, and meatballs. Paper plates, plastic silverware, and napkins were available on the table. Students were drinking, chatting, and dancing, surrounded by the loud rock-n-roll music.

期末了，学生们过了期末考试，都在狂欢聚会。艾米，布莱恩，乐玛和安雅娅都被邀请参加聚会，他们就一起去了。聚会是在一个学生宿舍里，人很多，挺拥挤的。在客厅的一个角落里有一个大啤酒桶，上面安了个水龙头。食品都摆在桌子上，有香肠、各种生蔬菜、烤排骨、意大利奶酪饺、还有肉丸子。桌子上有纸盘子、塑料餐具和纸巾。在震耳的摇滚乐声中，学生们在喝酒、聊天或者跳舞。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Amy: I'll have some vegetables.

艾米：我要来点儿蔬菜。

Brian: Meatballs are pretty good.

布莱恩：肉丸子也不错。

- too.
- Andrea: Would you guys like beer? I'll get some for you.
- Lamar: Why not?
- Amy: Do you know all these people?
- Lamar: Some of them. See, Ben is there.
- Amy: Yeah. Hello, Ben!
- Ben: Hi, Amy. How are you doing?
- Amy: Not too bad. I just heard that you got an "A" on Mechanics of Materials.
- Ben: You did too. I got a "B" on Differential Equations. You beat me on that one.
- Amy: I was just lucky.
- Ben: Let's pick another course next semester. I want to see who is better.
- Amy: Okay. Be my guest.
- Brian: Ben, what if you lose next semester?
- Ben: I'll take you guys to dinner.
- Brian: Deal?
- Ben: Wait a minute. Why should I take you to dinner? Just Amy.
- Amy: I won't go if Brian is not invited.
- Ben: Okay, okay. Count him in. But if you lose, you guys would have to buy me dinner twice.
- 安雅娅: 你们想喝啤酒吗? 我给你们拿来。
- 乐玛: 为什么不喝?
- 艾米: 你们都认识这些人吗?
- 乐玛: 有的认识。看, 本不是在那儿吗?
- 艾米: 是啊。你好, 本!
- 本: 你好, 艾米, 你好吗?
- 艾米: 还不错。听说你材料力学得了"A"。
- 本: 你也得了"A"啊。我微分方程得了"B", 输给你了。
- 艾米: 我只是运气好一点儿罢了。
- 本: 下学期我们再一起选一门课, 我一定要比一比谁厉害。
- 艾米: 好啊, 来者不拒。
- 布莱恩: 本, 你要是下学期输了怎么办?
- 本: 我请你们客。
- 布莱恩: 说定了?
- 本: 慢着, 我为什么请你客啊? 只请艾米。
- 艾米: 要是不请布莱恩, 我也不去。
- 本: 好吧, 好吧, 算他一个。但是要是你输了, 你们要请我两次。

Amy: Deal!

Lamar: Time for some beer. Forget about the grades.

Brian: Amy, that guy is staring at you.

Amy: I'd better go home.

Brian: Don't worry. If he bothers you, let me know.

Amy: Thank you. Would you walk me home later?

Brian: Sure.

• 艾米: 说定了!

• 乐玛: 快喝啤酒吧, 忘了分数吧。

• 布莱恩: 艾米, 那小子盯着你看。

• 艾米: 我还是回家吧。

• 布莱恩: 别担心, 要是他找你麻烦, 和我吱一声儿。

• 艾米: 谢谢。一会儿你送我回家好吗?

• 布莱恩: 没问题。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Most Chinese students in the U.S. were top students from China. It was understandable that Amy had good grades. Chinese students also work very hard. Some of the American students are also extremely smart.

在美国的大多数中国学生在中国时都是优等生, 艾米成绩好也是可以理解的。中国学生也很用功。有些美国学生也是非常聪明的。

In these kind of parties, students look for dates. If you do not want to go out with somebody, do not give him the impression that you like him.

在这种派对中, 学生们找约会的对象。要是你不想和谁出去, 不要让他感到你喜欢他。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① semester: 学期
- ② finals: 期末总考
- ③ dorm: Dormitory, 学生宿舍
- ④ raviolis: 意大利饺子, 里面的馅儿主要是奶酪
- ⑤ meat balls: 肉丸子
- ⑥ rock-n-roll: 摇摆舞, 摇滚会
- ⑦ count somebody in: 算某人一个

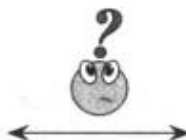
- 8 deal: 说好了, 定了
- 9 grades: 学习成绩
- 10 walk somebody home: 送某人回家
- 11 stare at: 盯着看
- 12 date rape: 约会中出现的强暴
- 13 date: 约会的对象

Patterns

句型

◆ What if ...

◆ I won't ... if ...



◆ 要是 怎么办

◆ 要是 我就不

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ What if I can't go?

◆ What if you lose?

◆ What if you pick the wrong stock?

◆ What if Amy does not want to go?



◆ 要是我去不了怎么办?

◆ 要是你输了呢?

◆ 要是你买错了股票怎么办?

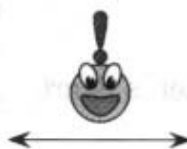
◆ 要是艾米不想去怎么办?

◆ I won't forgive you if you hurt Alice.

◆ I won't let her go if you don't come back on time.

◆ I won't be able to take the test if I don't recover by that time.

◆ I won't talk to him if you don't want me to.



◆ 你要是伤害了爱丽丝, 我可饶不了你。

◆ 你们要是不能按时回来, 我就不让她去了。

◆ 如果我到时候还不能复原, 我就考不成试了。

◆ 你如果不想让我和他说话, 我就不说。

Scene 2

场景 2

交往
的地道口语

A new semester started. The students and some professors of Amy's Department wanted to go out for lunch together. They picked a Chinese restaurant in downtown, called Chopsticks. Most of them car-pooled, and some were on their motorcycles. Lamar made the reservation. Ben bought a case of beer, 24 cans, and brought them to the restaurant. Amy, Brian, Betty, Andrea, Floyd, Lamar, Gary and some other students went for lunch.

一个新的学期开始了。艾米所在系的一些学生和教授要一起出去吃午饭。他们选了一个市中心的中国餐馆，叫“筷子园”。大多数人结伴搭车而行，也有些人骑摩托车。乐玛订了座，本买了一箱 24 瓶啤酒，带到了餐馆。艾米、布莱恩、贝蒂、安雅娅、弗洛易德、乐玛、盖瑞和其他一些学生都去了。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Receptionist: Hello, how many?



迎宾小姐：您好，请问几位？

Lamar: Sixteen total. I just called for reservation.

乐玛：一共十六位。我刚刚打过电话订位。

Receptionist: Last name?

迎宾小姐：姓什么？

Lamar: Moore.

乐玛：莫尔。

Receptionist: Okay, here it is. We made a long table for you, so you can sit together.

迎宾小姐：是的，在这儿。我们摆了一个长桌子，你们可以坐在一起。

Lamar: Great.

乐玛：太好了。

Receptionist: Please come with me.

迎宾小姐：请跟我来。

(They walked to the table and settled down. 他们走到预订的桌子旁，坐了下来。)

Waitress: Would you like to start your order?

服务员：你们想开始点菜吗？

Ben: Yes. Ladies first. Let's start with Betty.

本：是的。女士优先，贝蒂先来吧。

Betty: I'll have the Almond Chicken.

贝蒂：我要杏仁鸡片。

Chapter Four

Waitress: Soup?

Betty: Hot and Sour.

Waitress: Any drinks?

Betty: Water would be fine.

- 服务员: 什么汤?
- 贝蒂: 酸辣汤。
- 服务员: 喝点儿什么?
- 贝蒂: 水就行了。

(Lamar sits next to Betty. The waitress turned to Lamar for order. 乐玛坐在贝蒂旁边, 服务员转向乐玛, 请他点菜。)

Lamar: I'll have No. 12 Lunch Special.

Waitress: Okay. What kind of soup?

Lamar: Egg drop.

Waitress: Drink?

Lamar: We got beer. That's enough for me.

Waitress: How about you?

Amy: I'll have the Gong Pao Shrimp.

Waitress: Soup?

Amy: Wonton soup.

Waitress: Any drink?

Amy: Water will do. Please get me white rice instead of fried rice.

Waitress: Okay.

- 乐玛: 我要第十二号特价午餐。
- 服务员: 好的, 什么汤?
- 乐玛: 蛋花汤。
- 服务员: 饮料呢?
- 乐玛: 我们带了啤酒, 我有它就行了。
- 服务员: 您呢?
- 艾米: 我要宫保虾。
- 服务员: 汤呢?
- 艾米: 馄饨汤。
- 服务员: 喝点儿什么?
- 艾米: 水就可以了。请给我白饭, 我不要炒饭。
- 服务员: 好的。

(The waitress took orders from everybody. 服务员给每人都点了菜。)

Ben: I bought the beer. Would appreciate any donations.

- 本: 我买了啤酒, 有没有人能贡献一点儿?

(Brian took out his wallet and was going to give some money to Ben. Lamar held Brian's hand down, and whispered to Brian. 布莱恩拿出他的钱包想给本点儿钱。乐玛按住了布莱恩的手, 和他低声耳语。)

Lamar: Watch for your money. Let him suffer.

- 乐玛: 看住你自己的钱。让他受罪去吧。

(At the end of the lunch. The waitress brought the bill. Lamar took it.
吃完了午饭,服务员拿来了账单,乐玛接了过来。)

交

Lamar: The total is \$85.50. \$6 each
including tips.



乐玛: 一共是八十五块五。一人交
六块钱吧,小费已经算在内
了。

住

的地道口语

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It is common for students and professors to go out for lunch. When Lamar made the reservation, the receptionist took his last name. It was because there are a lot of common first names in the U.S., but not last names, as in China. Ben brought beer from outside of the restaurant. This is allowed in some restaurants, but not all restaurants. Make sure it is okay before you do something like that.

学生和教授们一起出去吃午饭也是常事。当乐玛订位时,迎宾小姐要了他的姓,因为美国人的名重复的很多,不像在中国,姓重复的很多。本把啤酒从外面带到饭店里,有的餐馆可以这样做,有的餐馆不许这样做。所以在做这类事情之前要打听明白。

There are three common soups in the Chinese restaurants in the U.S.: Hot and Sour, Egg Drop, and Wonton soup. The Lunch Specials usually come with one of the three soups. But for dinner, never order these three soups. They are cooked in large quantity and left there all day, not fresh. Each dish is also numbered for the convenience of non-Chinese customers. For dishes other than noodles, Lunch Specials come with rice. If you don't ask for white rice specifically, the waitress will always bring you the rice fried with soy sauce.

在美国的中国餐馆里有三种流行的汤:酸辣汤、蛋花汤和馄饨汤。午饭一般这三种汤可以免费任选一种。但是晚饭千万不要点这三种汤。这些汤都是一次做一大锅,整天放在那里,不新鲜。每一个菜也有号码,使外国人选择起来比较方便。除了面条以外,特价午饭都带有米饭。如果你不特意告诉服务员要白米饭,她会给你上酱油炒的炒饭。

The cost of the lunch is usually divided equally among the people. If it were for somebody's birthday, or a farewell party for someone, the others would cover that person's expense. Drinks in restaurants are usually

expensive and unhealthy. Water is the best choice, healthy and free.

这种午饭的费用一般是大家分摊。如果是某个人的生日或者是告别午餐,那个人的费用不必自己交,大家会分摊。餐馆里的饮料都很贵,也不利健康。水是最好的,保健又免费。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① car pool: 大家集中乘车
- ② Almond Chicken: 杏仁鸡片
- ③ Gong Pao: 宫保, 可以有宫保鸡丁(Gong Pao Chicken)、宫保虾
- ④ wWhite rice: 白饭
- ⑤ fried rice: 炒饭
- ⑥ Hot and Sour: 酸辣汤
- ⑦ Egg Drop: 蛋花汤
- ⑧ Wonton soup: 馄饨汤

Patterns

句型

◆ I just ...

◆ I'll have ...



◆ 我刚刚 , 我只是

◆ 我要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ I just had dinner.

◆ I just want to remind you.

◆ I just mailed the package.

◆ I just got a new book.



◆ 我刚刚吃过晚饭。

◆ 我就是想提醒你一下。

◆ 我刚刚把包裹寄出去。

◆ 我刚刚得到一本新书。

◆ I'll have Chicken Soup Noodles.

◆ I'll have Fried Rice.

◆ I'll have a Sprite.

◆ I'll have a coke.



◆ 我要鸡肉汤面。

◆ 我要炒饭。

◆ 我要雪碧。

◆ 我要可乐。

交

往

的地道口语

Topic 3 Colleague Luncheon

第三题 同事中午聚餐

In the U.S., people are busy at work. There is no time and it is not allowed to chat at work. Sometimes, officemates may not even say a word to the colleagues next to them the whole day. Lunchtime is the only chance to talk to your friends at work.

在美国,大家工作都很忙,没有时间也不允许在工作时间聊天。有时,办公室里的人整天都和同事说不上一句话。午饭时间是唯一和同公司的朋友说说话的机会。

Scene

场景

Dan has a few good friends at work. He often goes to lunch with them. One of them is Zhonghua Chen. Dan sent an email to Zhonghua earlier in the morning, and asked him to go to lunch together at 11:30am. It was 11:25 already. Dan picked up the phone and called Zhonghua.

丹在公司有几个好朋友,他们经常一起去吃午饭,其中一个陈中华。早晨早些时候丹发了个伊妹儿给中华,约他中午十一点半一起去吃午饭。现在已经十一时二十五分了,丹抓起电话拨通了中华。

Dialogue

对话

Zhonghua: Hello, this is Zhonghua.

中华: 你好,我是中华。

Dan: Hey, ready to go to lunch?

丹: 嗨,准备好去吃午饭了吗?

Zhonghua: Yes. Do you want me to come down or you come up?

中华: 准备好了。你想让我下去还是你上来?

Dan: I'll come up. Just wait there, and I'll get you.

丹: 我上来。你等着我吧,我来找你。

(Dan came to the cubical of Zhonghua. 丹来到中华的办公室。)

Chapter Four

Zhonghua: Hello, Dan, my friend.

Dan: Hello. How are you doing?

Zhonghua: Pretty good. Where is your car?

Dan: Right outside of the door. I can drive.

Zhonghua: Okay. Let's go.

Dan: Where do you want to go?

Zhonghua: China Buffet?

Dan: Fine with me.

Zhonghua: Let's go.

中华: 你好, 丹, 我的朋友。

丹: 你好, 你还好吗?

中华: 挺好。你车停在哪儿?

丹: 就在门外, 我来开车。

中华: 好吧, 我们走吧。

丹: 你想去哪儿?

中华: 中国自助餐怎么样?

丹: 我没意见。

中华: 走吧。

(They drove to China Buffet and parked the car. 他们开车来到了中国自助餐, 停好了车。)

Dan: It's good that we are early.

Zhonghua: Yeah, we don't have to wait in line.

丹: 我们还算是比较早的, 挺好。

中华: 是啊, 我们不必排队。

(They walked into the restaurant. And the Receptionist showed them to their table. 他们进了餐馆, 迎宾小姐把他们带到了桌前。)

Dan: Let's get something to eat.

Zhonghua: Yeah. I want to have a big lunch so I don't have to have dinner.

Dan: Lazy.

Zhonghua: I'm single, and nobody cooks for me.

Dan: Do it yourself.

Zhonghua: Sounds like you can do it.

Dan: Yes. I did it for more than a year.

丹: 去弄点儿吃的吧。

中华: 好的。我要中午多吃点儿, 晚上就不用吃了。

丹: 懒虫。

中华: 我单身, 没人给我做饭。

丹: 自己做呗。

中华: 好像你能自己做似的。

丹: 当然, 我自己做过一年多。

Zhonghua: I just want to find a wife.
Dan: Good for you! Don't forget to get some fruits.

中华: 我就想找个老婆。
丹: 对你是好事! 别忘了弄点儿水果。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Lunchtime is usually a half to one hour. It is necessary to pick a restaurant that serves quick lunches. Almost all of the Chinese restaurants in the Mid-West of U.S. (Where most auto workers are.) are buffet style. With buffet style, you don't need to order. It offers good selection and quick service. The tip is also less than the regular restaurants.

午饭时间通常是半小时到一小时,所以有必要找一个午饭服务比较快的餐馆。几乎所有美国中西部(也是大多数汽车工业的所在地)的中国餐馆都是自助餐。在自助餐馆里,不用点菜,选择比较多也快。小费也比正规餐馆里要少。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① come up: 上来
- ② come down: 下去
- ③ buffet: 自助餐
- ④ cubical: 隔成方格子的办公室

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Fine with ...
- ◆ Good for ...



- ◆ 没意见,没问题。
- ◆ 对 有好处。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Fine with me.
- ◆ Fine with him.
- ◆ Fine with them.
- ◆ Fine with Mom.



- ◆ 我没问题。
- ◆ 他没问题。
- ◆ 他们没问题。
- ◆ 妈妈没问题。

Chapter Four

Parties

- ◆ Good for you.
- ◆ Good for him.
- ◆ Good for her.
- ◆ Good for the company.



- ◇ 对你有好处。
- ◇ 对他好啊。
- ◇ 对她有好处。
- ◇ 对公司有利。

Topic 4 Pot Luck

第四题 自带聚餐

Pot Luck is a party with each person bringing a dish to the party. It saves a lot of work for the host. And people can enjoy food of different styles and flavors. It was the Memorial Day weekend. Traditionally, summer vacations start from the Memorial Day and end on the Labor Day.

自带聚餐由大家自己带菜的聚会。这样给举办派对的人带来很大便利,大家也可以享用不同风格和口味的食物。这一天正是阵亡将士纪念日。传统上,夏天度假都是从阵亡将士纪念日开始,到劳动节(在九月份)结束。

Scene

场景

Betty decided to have a Pot Luck party. She invited Floyd, Amy, Brian, Lamar and some other people to her home. All the dishes brought in were put on a long table. People could pick whatever they want.

贝蒂决定搞一个自带聚餐。她邀请了弗洛伊德、艾米、布莱恩、乐玛和其他人到她家里来。带来的食物都放在一个长桌上了,大家可以各取所需。

Dialogue

对话

Betty: We can start now. Drinks are in the cooler.

贝蒂: 我们可以开始吃了,饮料和酒水在冷藏箱里。

Lamar: Yeah! I'm hungry. I'll let Amy go first. I'll follow Amy.

乐玛: 好嘞!我都饿了。我让艾米先来,我排在艾米后面。

Amy: Okay. Who made this honey chicken? Looks so good.

艾米: 好吧。谁做的蜂蜜鸡块儿?看着真好。

Brian: I did. Hope you like it.

布莱恩: 我做的,但愿你喜欢吃。

Chapter Four

Amy: I must have some.

Lamar: The Chinese Salad looks delicious.

Amy: Hope I did a good job. It's spicy though.

Lamar: I like spicy stuff.

Betty: Why don't we have a competition? Vote after we eat, and see who is the best cook.

Floyd: Good idea! I like it.

Betty: What did you make, Floyd?

Floyd: I made nothing. Sharon made the Pasta.

Betty: Looks great. What a great party!

• 艾米: 我一定要吃点儿。

• 乐玛: 这中式凉菜看上去真有食欲。

• 艾米: 希望我做得不错。它可是辣的。

• 乐玛: 我喜欢辣的。

• 贝蒂: 我们何不搞一个竞赛? 吃完了投票, 看谁是最棒的厨师。

• 弗洛易德: 好主意! 我同意。

• 贝蒂: 弗洛易德, 你做什么了?

• 弗洛易德: 我啥也没做, 莎润做的意式面条。

• 贝蒂: 看着太棒了, 今天的聚会真不错!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Pot Luck is a great way to have a party. It provides an opportunity for people to show off their cooking skills. Cooking also represents personality. Through such gatherings, you get to know your friends better. There are always surprises at a Pot Luck party.

自带聚餐是一种很好的聚会形式。这种聚会给大家创造了显示自己烹饪技巧的好机会。烹调也是一种性格的表现, 通过这种聚会, 会使朋友之间增加了解。自带聚餐总是会给您带来意外的惊喜。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① Pot Luck: 自带聚餐

② cooler: 冷藏箱

③ spicy: 辣的, 有别于 hot, hot 是热

④ did a good job: 做得挺好

⑤ good idea: 好主意

⑥ honey chicken: 蜂蜜鸡块

⑦ Chinese Salad: 中式凉菜, 中国东北的一种凉拌菜。里面有黄瓜丝, 凉粉或粉丝, 加其他配料

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Hope ...
- ◆ Looks ...



- ◇ 希望
- ◇ 看起来

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Hope you like it.
- ◆ Hope it's not inconvenient for you.
- ◆ Hope you can make it.
- ◆ Hope to see you soon.



- ◇ 希望你喜欢。
- ◇ 希望不会给你造成麻烦。
- ◇ 希望你能来。
- ◇ 希望很快能和你再见。

- ◆ Looks good.
- ◆ Looks delicious.
- ◆ Looks terrible.
- ◆ Looks like you know it already.



- ◇ 看起来挺好。
- ◇ 看起来很有食欲。
- ◇ 看上去糟透了。
- ◇ 看起来你已经知道了。

Topic 5 Thanksgiving Party at a Household

第五题 感恩节在美国人家中聚餐

Thanksgiving is an occasion for family gatherings. Air tickets are very tight around Thanksgiving. Everybody comes back home at Thanksgiving. You need to book your flight long before if you plan to travel at that time. Americans also like to invite foreigners to home for this holiday. Traditionally the food would be turkey, meshed potato, ham, salads, and macaroni cheese. Turkeys weigh about twenty pounds, and it takes long time to bake.

感恩节是家庭团聚的时节。感恩节时机票特别紧张,每个人都要在感恩节时回家。你要是准备在感恩节期间旅行的话,要早点儿订票。美国人也喜欢在这个节日请外国人到家里来作客。传统上食物是火鸡、土豆泥、火腿、沙拉和奶酪空心粉。火鸡约重二十磅左右,要花很长时间烤。

Scene

场景

This year, a number of Chinese students got a call from the members of the Sino-American Friendship Association, inviting them to their home for Thanksgiving party. Richard was one of the hosts who invited Amy, Ming, Dan, and two Japanese students, Yasu and Mary. Richard had made an appointment with each of them and picked them up on the day of Thanksgiving. They came with Richard to his home.

今年,中美友好协会的会员给许多中国学生打了电话,请他们感恩节到家里做客。理查德请了艾米,明,丹和两个日本学生:亚苏和玛丽。理查德和他们约好了时间,感恩节那天来接了他们。他们随理查德来到了他的家。

Dialogue

对话

Richard: Welcome to our house.
Make yourselves at home.



理查德: 欢迎到我们家做客。不必拘束,就像在自己家一样。

Amy: The Superman is on the TV

艾米: 电视又在演“超人”,每

again. Is he on for every Thanksgiving?

Richard: Yes. That is also an American tradition.

Amy: I see.

Richard: My son, my daughter-in-law, and my grandson are also home. Let me introduce my family to you.

Richard: This is my wife Jane.

Jane: Hello! Welcome. Nice to meet you.

Amy: I'm Amy. Nice to meet you too. Your house is lovely.

Jane: Thank you!

个感恩节都演“超人”吗?

里查德: 是, 这也是美国的一个传统。

艾米: 我知道了。

里查德: 我的儿子、媳妇、还有孙子都在家, 我来给你们介绍一下我的家人。

里查德: 这是我的太太珍妮。

珍妮: 你们好, 欢迎光临, 认识你们很高兴。

艾米: 我是艾米。也很高兴认识你。你的房子真好。

珍妮: 谢谢你!

(Richard introduced all of his family and the foreign students. The dinner was ready. Richard took the seat at the one end of the long table, and Jane sat at the other end. All the guests and his family sat at both sides of the table. 里查德介绍了他所有的家人和外国学生。晚饭准备好了, 里查德坐在长餐桌的一端, 珍妮坐在了另一端。他们的家人和客人坐在桌子的两边。)

Amy: The turkey is so good. How long did it take to bake?

Jane: It took me the whole day.

Amy: How do you check if it is cooked?

Jane: There is a plastic nail in the turkey. When the turkey is cooked, the nail pops up.

Amy: Very interesting.

Yasu: Amy, what do you study here?

Amy: Mechanical Engineering. How about you?

Yasu: I'm here to learn English.

Amy: When do you plan to go back to Japan?

艾米: 火鸡真好吃。花了多长时间烤啊?

珍妮: 花了我一整天的时间。

艾米: 怎么样检查是不是熟了?

珍妮: 火鸡里有个塑料钉。火鸡熟了钉子就跳出来了。

艾米: 真有意思。

亚苏: 艾米, 你在这儿学什么?

艾米: 机械工程。你呢?

亚苏: 我在这儿学英语。

艾米: 你打算什么时候回日本?

Chapter Four

Yasu: In two years.

Amy: Sounds great.



亚苏：再过两年。

艾米：挺好的。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The Thanksgiving is the last Thursday of November. Both that Thursday and Friday are holidays. So it is an extra long weekend. At the Thanksgiving party, Americans also have a custom to give thanks. They would take turn to express their thanks for the best thing that happened to them in the past year. With the foreign friends around, they may or may not do this.

感恩节是在十一月的最后一个星期四,那个星期的星期四和星期五都是节日,所以是个超长周末。在感恩节聚会上,美国人还有个感恩的习惯。每个人轮班讲一讲过去一年里他们对自己经历的最好的事情的感激。有外国人在场,他们也许会进行感恩表白,也许不会。

When attending such a party, it is a good idea to compliment the house and the meal of the host, as Amy did. It shows your respect to the host.

参加这样的聚会时,最好赞扬一下主人的房子和饭菜,就像艾米做的那样。这也是对主人的一种尊敬。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Thanksgiving: 感恩节
- ② turkey: 火鸡
- ③ Sino-American Friendship Association: 中美友好协会
- ④ daughter-in-law: 儿媳
- ⑤ long weekend: 长周末
- ⑥ compliment: 称赞, 赞美

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I'm here to ...
- ◆ When do you plan to ...



- ◇ 我是来
- ◇ 你计划什么时候

Substitute Exercise

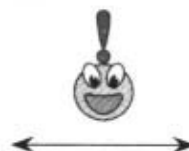
替换练习

- ◆ I'm here to eat.
- ◆ I'm here to study.
- ◆ I'm here to help.
- ◆ I'm here to get trained.



- ◇ 我是来吃饭的。
- ◇ 我是来学习的。
- ◇ 我是来帮忙的。
- ◇ 我是来受培训的。

- ◆ When do you plan to get started?
- ◆ When do you plan to go to the party?
- ◆ When do you plan to come home?
- ◆ When do you plan to buy a new car?



- ◇ 你们想什么时候开始?
- ◇ 你打算什么时间去派对?
- ◇ 你想什么时候回家?
- ◇ 你计划什么时候买新车?

Topic 6 Christmas Party of a Company

第六题 公司圣诞节宴会

Every company in the U.S. has a Christmas Party. This is supposed to be a celebrating party at the end of the year. Employees would dress up and come to have some drinks, chat, dancing, and fun. The invitation letters for the party are sent to employees about a month before the party. The invitation letter would state "RSVP", which is a short for French "Please Reply." You need to make reservations for you and your spouse (or your significant other). For this kind of party, kids are not allowed.

每个美国公司都有圣诞节聚会,这种聚会应该是年末的喜庆时刻。员工们穿戴得比较正式,聚到一起喝酒、聊天、跳舞、享乐一下。聚会的邀请信在一个月前就发给了大家。邀请信上标明了"RSVP",是法语"请回复(请预订)"的缩写。你需要预订,还要说明你是否带配偶(或者你的重要朋友)。这类的聚会是不许带小孩儿的。

Scene

场景

For this year, DIS Company was having a Christmas party. But the company was not doing well, so some employees got laid off before the Christmas. Employees attending the party had mixed feelings. President and CEO Donald also attended the party. Here is the dialogue between him and other employees.

今年,DIS 公司举行了圣诞节聚会。但是这个公司效益不好,圣诞节前裁了一些雇员,使参加聚会的员工们心情有些复杂。公司的董事长兼总裁唐纳德也参加了聚会。下面是他和一些员工的对话。

Dialogue

对话

Donald: Hello, Bob. Merry Christmas!

Bob: Hi, Don. Merry Christmas!



唐纳德: 你好,鲍勃。圣诞节快乐!

鲍勃: 你好,唐。圣诞节快乐!

Chris: Don, there are lot of worries about the future of our company. What do you think?

Donald: We are having a hard time right now. But I believe we are getting to the end of the tunnel.

Susan: Don, there are a lot of complains about the layoff.

Donald: I know. Some think I was cruel to lay off people before the Christmas. But there is no good time to lay off people.

Susan: That's true. In any case, our orders are up.

Donald: Yes. That is the most important thing. No orders, no sales. No sales, no profit. Simple as that.

Bob: We all feel bad about the people laid off.

Donald: Tell me about it. I couldn't sleep the night of the layoff. Had a lot of drinks.

Chris: Hope the economy will turn around the corner, and we'd be out of the woods.

Donald: Right. We have a good plan for our products. We just need to execute it well.

Susan: Enough for the business. It's Christmas. Let's go dancing.

Bob: Okay. Let's go!

克瑞斯: 唐, 有很多人担心我们公司的前途。你是怎么看的?

唐纳德: 我们现在很困难, 但是我相信我们的困境快要到头了。

苏珊: 唐, 前几天解雇了员工带来了许多抱怨。

唐纳德: 我知道。有些人认为我狠, 圣诞节前解雇人。可是没有什么时候解雇人是合适的。

苏珊: 这倒是真话。不管怎么样, 我们的订货量现在开始回升了。

唐纳德: 是啊, 这是最重要的。没有订货, 就没有销售; 没有销售, 就没有利润。就这么简单。

鲍勃: 我们都为被解雇的人感到难过。

唐纳德: 是啊, 那天晚上我一直睡不着, 喝了不少酒。

克瑞斯: 希望经济尽快复苏, 我们就能走出困境了。

唐纳德: 是啊, 我们对我们的产品有一个很好的计划。我们只需要执行好这个计划。

苏珊: 净谈公事了, 这是圣诞节啊, 咱们跳舞吧。

鲍勃: 好的, 我们跳舞。



People dress very well at the Christmas party. Men can wear suits and ties. Women can wear evening dresses. Some companies announce their annual awards at the party as well. There are dancing sessions after the dinner. Christmas parties are usually the fun time with rich holiday atmosphere.

在圣诞节宴会上,大家都穿戴考究。男人可以穿西装,打领带,女人可以穿晚礼服。有些公司还在宴会上宣布公司的年终奖励,晚宴后还会举行舞会。圣诞节聚会是伴随着浓厚的节日气氛的欢乐时光。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① dress up: 正式的穿戴打扮
- ② mixed feelings: 感觉复杂,比如既高兴又遗憾,既有喜事又有悲伤
- ③ hard time: 困难时期
- ④ end of the tunnel: 看见曙光了,困难快到头了
- ⑤ turn around the corner: 走出困境
- ⑥ out of woods: 同上
- ⑦ lay off: 解雇人
- ⑧ laid off: lay off 的过去式和过去分词
- ⑨ suit: 西装
- ⑩ tuxedo: 燕尾服
- ⑪ take a break: 休息一下

Patterns

句型

◆ We all feel ...

◆ Enough for ... Let's ...



◆ 我们都感觉

◆ 太多 了,让我们

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

交往的地道口语

- ◆ We all feel sad about the loss.
- ◆ We all feel excited about the new business.
- ◆ We all feel terrible about the accident.
- ◆ We all feel a big loss with Jack's departure.



- ◆ 我们都对这次的损失感到不痛快。
- ◆ 我们都为新的业务感到兴奋。
- ◆ 这次事故让我们痛心疾首。
- ◆ 杰克的离职使我们感觉损失重大。

- ◆ Enough for the talk. Let's have some action!
- ◆ Enough for the work. Let's have some fun!
- ◆ Enough for the break. Let's get to work.
- ◆ Enough for the problems. Let's take a break.



- ◆ 说的够多的了，开始干吧！
- ◆ 干得够多的了，玩儿一会儿！
- ◆ 休息够多了，干点儿活吧。
- ◆ 问题谈得够多了，休息一会儿吧。

Topic 7 Farewell Party

第七题 送别聚餐

In the U.S., people move around a lot, following the jobs. As China gets into market economy, labor market also becomes more mobile. Farewell party for colleagues is common in the U.S.. One of the companies I worked for pays for the employee's lunch at his farewell luncheon party. People joked about it: "The only way to get the company to buy you a lunch is to quit." It was only a joke. No company likes losing talented and experienced employees.

在美国,人们流动性很大,跟着工作走。随着中国进入市场经济,劳动力市场也会活起来。在美国,同事换工作,送别聚餐也很经常的。我工作过的一个公司在这种聚餐时,给辞职的员工买单。大家说笑话:“你要想让客户给你免费午餐的唯一方法就是辞职。”这当然只是说笑话,任何公司都不想失去有才能和经验的雇员。

Scene

场景

Tom was leaving his company for a new job. Today was his last day. His colleagues took him out for lunch. Here's the conversation at the table.

汤姆找到了新工作,要离开公司了。这一天是他最后一天上班。他的同事们请他出去吃中饭。下面是他们在饭桌上的谈话。

Dialogue

对话

Mike: Hey, Tom, what is your new title?

Tom: Metals Lab Manager.

Jim: Sounds pretty good. Did you get any salary increase?

迈克: 嗨, 汤姆, 你的新工作是什么职位?

汤姆: 金属实验室经理。

吉姆: 听起来不错嘛。加工资了吗?

Tom: About 15%.

Mike: That's all? Does that justify
your relocation?

Tom: There is also a sign-up bonus.

Jim: How much is that?

Tom: \$10,000.

Mike: That's not too bad. Do they pay
for your relocation?

Tom: Yes, and the company will pay
for the tax on the moving ex-
penses.

Jim: That's good. Or you would be
surprised when filing for your
income tax return.

Tom: Right. I had that experience
before.

Mike: When do you start the new job?

Tom: Tomorrow.

Jim: What? Are you flying over today?

Tom: Yes. I'm flying over tonight, and
start working tomorrow.

Mike: You are crazy.

Tom: You bet I am.

Jim: Tom, you should give a speech.

Mike: Yes, Tom! Come on!

Tom: Okay, okay. I'm not a speaker.

I really appreciate you taking
me out for lunch. Over the past
four years, I learnt a lot from
you. I enjoyed working with
you. I want to thank you for
everything you did for me. I'll
miss you guys. (Applause.)

汤姆: 大概加了百分之十五吧。

迈克: 就这么多吗? 这能足以让你
搬一次家吗?

汤姆: 还有加盟奖金。

吉姆: 多少啊?

汤姆: 一万美元。

迈克: 不错。他们付你的搬家费用
吗?

汤姆: 付的, 并且还付搬家费用产
生的税钱。

吉姆: 那挺好。不然的话, 你年末
报所得税的时候就会大吃
一惊了。

汤姆: 是啊。我以前有过这种经
验。

迈克: 你什么时候开始上班?

汤姆: 明天。

吉姆: 什么? 你今天飞过去?

汤姆: 是。我今天晚上飞过去, 明
天上班。

迈克: 你疯了。

汤姆: 你猜对了。

吉姆: 汤姆, 你应该讲讲话。

迈克: 对, 汤姆! 快来吧!

汤姆: 好的, 好的。我不会讲话。我
真心感谢各位请我。在过去的
四年里, 我从你们身上学
到了很多东西。我和你们一
起工作很快乐。我要谢谢你
们过去对我的帮助。我会想
念你们的。(掌声。)

People usually do not give out the exact number of his salary, so Tom was giving his salary increase as a percentage. American companies usually pay for the relocation expenses. Some good companies also pay for realtor fees to sell your old house and expenses for applying for mortgage for buying a new house within one year of the new employment. Tom did not have to pay for his lunch at the farewell party.

人们一般不告诉别人自己的工资,所以当汤姆被问到加薪时只给出一个百分数。美国公司通常付给搬家费用。有些较好的公司还付你卖旧房子花费的房产代理费,以及买新房子申请贷款的手续费,但是要在开始新工作后一年之内买房子。汤姆不必付他送别午餐的饭钱。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① farewell party: 送别聚会
- ② last day: 最后一天上班
- ③ lab: Laboratory 的缩写, 实验室
- ④ relocation: 搬家(到别的城市)。在美国搬到五十英里以外才算符合税收和公司优惠条件的搬家
- ⑤ moving expenses: 搬家费用
- ⑥ income tax return: 年终结算和上报所得税
- ⑦ crazy: 疯了
- ⑧ realtor: 房产经纪人, 代理人
- ⑨ mortgage: 购房贷款, 一般是 15 年和 30 年期的

Patterns

句型

◆ Or you would be ...

◆ I really appreciate ...



◆ 不然你就会

◆ 我真感谢

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Or you would be disappointed.
- ◆ Or you would be expecting too much.
- ◆ Or you would be losing a lot.
- ◆ Or you would be fooled.



- ◆ 不然你就会大失所望。
- ◆ 不然你就会期望太高。
- ◆ 不然你会损失惨重。
- ◆ 不然你就会被骗了。

- ◆ I really appreciate what you did for me.
- ◆ I really appreciate your help.
- ◆ I really appreciate your work.
- ◆ I really appreciate your support.



- ◆ 我真感谢你为我所做的一切。
- ◆ 我真感谢你对我的帮助。
- ◆ 我真欣赏你的工作。
- ◆ 我真感谢你的支持。

Topic 8 Picnic with Friends

第八题 和朋友们野餐

Picnic is fun to do. It is also very convenient in the U.S.. There are a lot of parks in the U.S.: National Parks, State Parks, and local community parks. There are picnic facilities in almost every park, and most of them are free to use. The parks are funded and maintained by tax paid by public. There are barbecue racks, picnic tables, and restrooms. All you need to bring is the food, drinks and coke. Alcoholic drinks are prohibited in some parks.

野餐很有趣儿,在美国也很方便。这里有很多公园:国家公园,州立公园,还有很多本地的社区公园。几乎在每个公园里都有野餐设施,并且大多数是可以免费使用的。公园是公众交的税建成和维护的。公园里有烧烤架子、野餐桌椅和卫生间,你只需要带食品、饮料和焦炭。有些公园禁止饮用含有酒精的饮料。

Scene 1

场景 1

Jim organized a picnic with his friends in the Red River State Park. They prepared chicken fingers, chicken wings, vegetables, corns, ribs, hot dogs, and hamburgers for the barbecue. They also brought sodas, juices, and spring water. Plastic silverware and paper plates, napkins were brought along. They parked not far from the picnic area in the parking lot.

吉姆和他的朋友们在红河州立公园组织了一次野餐。他们准备了鸡肉条、鸡翅、蔬菜、玉米、排骨、热狗和汉堡来烧烤。他们还带了汽水、果汁、矿泉水、塑料刀叉、纸盘子和纸巾。他们把车停在离野餐区不远的停车场。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Jim: Betty, how about this area?

吉姆: 贝蒂,这里怎么样?

Betty: Good. Let's move the two picnic tables together, under

贝蒂: 挺好。把这两个野餐桌搬到一起,放在树下。

- the tree.
- Gary: Jim, I can help you to move the tables.
- Jim: Thanks. Lamar, could you put the coke into the barbecue rack?
- Lamar: Sure. Did you bring any aluminum foil?
- Jim: What for?
- Lamar: To put it on top of the rack. It is cleaner that way.
- Amy: I brought some foil.
- Lamar: Good job.
- Amy: Remember to poke some holes on the foil for air.
- Lamar: I know.
- Amy: You know everything.
- Lamar: You bet. Look at the coke. They are burning so well. What to cook first?
- Betty: Anything, chicken, veggies, corns and hot dogs.
- Lamar: Okay. I'm the Chef today!
- 盖瑞: 吉姆,我可以帮你搬桌子。
- 贝姆: 谢谢。乐玛,你把焦炭放到烧烤炉里好不好?
- 乐玛: 没问题。你带铝箔纸了吗?
- 吉姆: 干什么?
- 乐玛: 放在烧烤架上,这样会干净些。
- 艾米: 我带了铝箔纸。
- 乐玛: 好样儿的。
- 艾米: 别忘了在铝箔纸上捅些眼儿,通风。
- 乐玛: 我知道。
- 艾米: 你什么都知道。
- 乐玛: 你说对了。看这炭,烧得多好。先烤什么?
- 贝蒂: 什么都行。鸡肉、蔬菜、玉米还有热狗。
- 乐玛: 好的。我今天是主厨了!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The picnic tables in the park can be moved around within the picnic area. The barbecue racks are usually rusty, so cover it with an aluminum foil is a good idea. However, you need to poke some holes immediately for air, especially with gas cooking. Or the gas may be kept under the foil, and cause a small explosion when you start fire.

公园里的野餐桌可以在野餐区里搬移。烧烤架子常常生锈,所以用铝箔纸盖在上面比较干净。但是,铝箔纸上要立即扎孔通风,特别是用煤气烧烤时。不然煤气会聚集在铝箔纸下面,打火时会引起小爆炸。

Related Words and Phrases

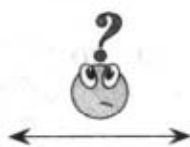
相关词语

- ① picnic: 野餐
- ② picnic table: 野餐桌
- ③ barbecue: 烧烤
- ④ soda: 汽水
- ⑤ soft drinks: 没有酒精的饮料, 通常亦指汽水
- ⑥ aluminum foil: 铝箔纸
- ⑦ What for? 干什么用
- ⑧ veggies: 蔬菜
- ⑨ poke holes: 扎眼儿, 捅窟窿
- ⑩ bet: 猜对啦, 说对了
- ⑪ chef: 主厨

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Did you ...
- ◆ It ... that way.
- ◆ Remember to ...

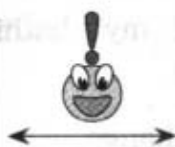


- ◆ 你做 ……
- ◆ 那样做会 ……
- ◆ 记住 ……, 别忘了 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Did you do your homework?
- ◆ Did you complete your homework?
- ◆ Did you look for the book?
- ◆ Did you go bowling yesterday?



- ◆ 你作业做了吗?
- ◆ 你做完作业了吗?
- ◆ 你找那本书了吗?
- ◆ 你昨天打保龄球了吗?

- ◆ It is easier that way.
- ◆ It cooks faster that way.
- ◆ It is more fun that way.
- ◆ It burns more gas that way.



- ◆ 那样会容易一些。
- ◆ 那样烧饭会快点儿。
- ◆ 那样做更有趣儿。
- ◆ 那样更费煤气。

- ◆ Remember to go to the hospital.
- ◆ Remember to come tomorrow.
- ◆ Remember to get me a pizza.
- ◆ Remember to water the flower.



- ◆ 记住要去医院。
- ◆ 记住明天来。
- ◆ 别忘了给我买比萨饼。
- ◆ 别忘了给花儿浇水。

Scene 2

场景 2

As Jim and his friends cooked and ate, some activities got going as well. They did biking, walking, and swimming. They also played volleyball.

在吉姆和他的朋友们烧烤和吃东西的同时,他们也搞了一些其他活动。他们骑自行车,散步,游泳,还打了排球。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Jim: Keith, do you want to go biking with me?

Keith: Sure. Let's go!

Amy: I want to go swimming. Betty, do you want me to take Tracey?

Betty: Okay. Tracey, do you want to go swimming with Amy?

Tracey: Yes! Where's my bathing suit?

Betty: Here. Go and change.

Amy: Come with me.

Tracey: Okay.

Gary: Who wants to play volleyball with me?

Brian: I do.

吉姆: 凯思,想和我去骑自行车吗?

凯思: 当然想,走吧!

艾米: 我想去游泳,贝蒂,你想让我带着翠西去吗?

贝蒂: 好的。翠西,你想和艾米去游泳吗?

翠西: 想! 我的泳衣在哪儿?

贝蒂: 在这儿,去换衣服吧。

艾米: 跟我来。

翠西: 好的。

盖瑞: 谁要和我打排球?

布莱恩: 我打。

Chapter Four

Gary: Lamar, come and join us!

Lamar: I'd love to, but who is going to cook here?

Betty: Go. I'll take care of the cooking.

Lamar: Thanks a lot.

盖瑞: 乐玛,你也来吧。

乐玛: 我很想玩儿,可是谁在这儿烧烤啊?

贝蒂: 你去吧。我来照顾这里。



乐玛: 太谢谢了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Bicycles can be brought in on top or the back of the car with special racks. There are biking trails in the park. There are also changing rooms for men and women for swimming. When doing picnic, the barbecue can go on all the time. People would come back to eat when they feel like.

可以用特殊的架子把自行车放在车棚上或者车后面带到公园里,在公园里有专门的自行车道。游泳区也有男女更衣室。野餐时,烧烤可以一直持续,有人饿了就回来吃。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① biking: 骑自行车,也可以叫 cycling。biking 在美国用得较多, cycling 在加拿大用得较多
- ② bathing suit: 等于 Swimming suit, 游泳衣
- ③ changing room: 更衣室

Patterns

句型

◆ Go and ...

◆ Who wants to ...



◆ 去干

◆ 谁想要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Go and eat.
- ◆ Go and get it done.
- ◆ Go and get me one.
- ◆ Go and do something!



- ◇ 去吃饭。
- ◇ 去把事情做完。
- ◇ 去给我拿(买)一个。
- ◇ 去做点儿什么!

- ◆ Who wants to go with me?
- ◆ Who wants to join the team?
- ◆ Who wants to take the exam?
- ◆ Who wants to take the risk?



- ◇ 谁想和我去?
- ◇ 谁想参加这个团队?
- ◇ 谁想参加考试?
- ◇ 谁要冒这个险?

Topic 9 Company Picnic

第九题 公司郊游

Company picnic is a treat to the employees. There are several occasions that the company show appreciations to and treat its employees: Employee Appreciation Day, Christmas Party, and Company Picnic. For Employee Appreciation Day, the executives of the company would serve free lunches to employees at work. We had the topic of Christmas Party already, which is for the employees and spouses. Company Picnic is for family fun. The whole family, including kids, can come to eat and play. There are a lot of games and competitions going on. The prizes are quite good.

公司郊游是对员工的一种慰劳。一个公司一年有几次招待员工的机会:员工慰劳日,圣诞节聚会,还有公司郊游。在员工慰劳日那天,公司的高层官员给员工打免费的午饭。圣诞节聚会的话题我们已经讲过,是招待员工和他们的配偶的。公司郊游是招待员工全家的。整个家庭,包括小孩子都可以来吃饭,玩儿。有很多游戏和比赛,奖品还是很不错的。

Scene

场景

Jim was taking his family to the company picnic. It was held in a huge farm. The lunch was buffet style in a tent. There were a lot of drinks, beers and ice creams. There were all kinds of games: throwing rings to catch prizes, toy gun shooting, shooting basket balls, hammer strike, jumping on the cushion, pony ride, hay ride, bingo and a lot more. No matter win or lose, you will get a gift. Keith and Tracey had a lot of fun.

吉姆带着他全家参加公司的郊游。郊游是在一个很大的农场举行的。午饭是自助形式的,在一个帐篷里。有很多饮料,啤酒和冰淇淋。有很多游戏:套圈儿、打玩具枪、投篮、砸锤子、在气垫上跳、骑小马、坐草捆车、冰勾、还有很多其他的游戏。不管是输赢,每人都有礼物。凯思和翠西玩得很开心。

对话

Dialogue

交

往

的地道口语

Jim: Let's have something to eat first.

Keith: Don't forget my Talent Show.

Jim: It's one o'clock. We still have time.

Betty: Tracey, are you going to do your violin as planned?

Tracey: Yes.

Jim: What do you guys want to drink? I'll get the drinks.

Keith: Sprite for me.

Tracey: Iced Tea.

Betty: Water please.

Keith: I'll have some hot dogs and potatoes.

Betty: Salad is good.

Tracey: I'll have some.

吉姆：我们先吃点儿东西吧。

凯思：别忘了我还要有才艺表演。

吉姆：那是一点钟，我们还有时间。

贝蒂：翠西，你会按计划表演小提琴吗？

翠西：会的。

吉姆：你们都想喝什么？我去拿饮料。

凯思：我要雪碧。

翠西：冰茶。

贝蒂：水。

凯思：我来点儿热狗和土豆。

贝蒂：沙拉不错吗。

翠西：我要点儿。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the company picnic, hot dogs are usually the favorite for kids. Adults can have salads, roasted chicken, hamburgers, etc. Sometimes there is Talent Show competition for either kids or adults. Face painting and balloon animals are also there for fun.

在公司郊游时，孩子们的最爱是热狗。大人通常会选择沙拉，烤鸡，汉堡包等等。有时还会有为大人或孩子举办的才艺表演比赛。画花脸和用气球做动物造型也是受欢迎的活动。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① tent: 帐篷

② hammer strike: 一种砸锤子的游戏，看砸下后有多大力度

- ③ hay ride: 在马车或拖拉机上摆满干草捆, 人们可以坐在上面兜风
- ④ pony ride: 骑小马, 通常是给孩子们玩儿的
- ⑤ bingo: 一种拼词的游戏。每人有一个盘, 上面有不同的字母, 主持人念字母, 你手里的盘能对上就赢了
- ⑥ iced Tea: 冰茶

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Don't forget to ...
- ◆ I'll ...
- ◆ Let's have a ...



- ◆ 别忘了
- ◆ 我要, 我会
- ◆ 我们 吧。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Don't forget to get me a grilled chicken sandwich.
- ◆ Don't forget to turn off the lights.
- ◆ Don't forget to lock the door.
- ◆ Don't forget to do the inventory.



- ◆ 别忘了给我买一个烤鸡肉三明治。
- ◆ 别忘了关灯。
- ◆ 别忘了锁门。
- ◆ 别忘了盘点货物。

- ◆ I'll go home.
- ◆ I'll tell you what to do.
- ◆ I'll get back to you.
- ◆ I'll let you know.



- ◆ 我要回家了。
- ◆ 我会告诉你怎么办。
- ◆ 我以后再回复你吧。
- ◆ 我会通知你的。

- ◆ Let's have a talk.
- ◆ Let's have a test.
- ◆ Let's have a late lunch today.
- ◆ Let's have a drink.



- ◆ 我们谈谈吧。
- ◆ 我们试验一下吧。
- ◆ 我们今天晚点儿吃午饭吧。
- ◆ 去喝一杯。

Chapter Five Bars

第五章 酒吧



People in China might think that the U.S. is a place full of nightlife and bars. In fact, bars in China are at least as popular as in the U.S.. There are some differences between the bars of the two countries. For example, strip bar is illegal in China, but legal in the U.S.. In this chapter, we are going to introduce you to the bar conversations in the U.S.. Please remember that drinking under the age of 21 is illegal in the U.S..

中国人可能认为美国充满了灯红酒绿,到处是夜生活和酒吧。事实上,酒吧在中国一点儿也不比美国逊色。这两个国家的酒吧有一些区别,比如脱衣舞酒吧在美国是合法的,但在中国是不合法的。这一章里,我们会为您介绍一些酒吧里的对话。请记住 21 周岁以下喝酒在美国是违法的。

Topic 1 Dancing Bar

第一题 舞厅

Some bars have a Disco area where people dance. These bars may not be as big as some of the Disco clubs in China. They are also less crowded. People can have a table for drinks, and go dancing from time to time. There is no requirement for minimum expenses. Some bars have cover charges. Some don't.

有些酒吧有迪士高舞厅供大家蹦迪。这些舞厅可能还没有中国的一些迪厅大，但也不那么拥挤。顾客可以坐下来喝酒，时不时地跳跳舞。酒吧没有最低消费的要求。有些酒吧收入场费，有些不收。

Scene

场景

Lee is a Professor in Computer Science. He married a Chinese girl, Ying. Today, they invited a Chinese student couple, Ming and Dandan, to go to the bar. They drove up in the big wagon of Lee's. After a couple of drinks they started dancing. Ying invited Ming and Lee went to dance with Dandan.

李是计算机科学系的一位教授。他和一个中国姑娘“莹”结婚了。这一天，他们邀请一对中国学生夫妇，明和丹丹，去酒吧。他们开了李的大轿车来的。几杯酒下肚儿，他们下了舞池。莹邀请了明，而李邀请了丹丹。

Dialogue

对话

Ying: Ming, have you been to a
Disco bar in China?

Ming: Yes. Those bars open till 2
or 3 o'clock in the morning.

Ying: Do you like dancing?

Ming: Yes. But didn't have much

莹：明，你在中国去过迪厅吗？

明：去过。这些迪厅营业到早晨
2点到3点。

莹：你喜欢跳舞吗？

明：喜欢。可是没时间去，特别是

- time to go to, especially after we got here.
- Ying: How are you adapting to the life here?
- Ming: Not bad. The life here is much simpler than in China.
- Ying: You mean relationship wise, right?
- Ming: Yes. But not that much of fun either.
- Ying: You gain something and lose something.
- Ming: Right. The environment is much cleaner here.
- Ying: Agree.
-
- Lee: How do you like the U.S.?
- Dandan: I like it. It is clean and everything is in order.
- Lee: What are your plans after graduation?
- Dandan: I'll find a job and get some experience.
- Lee: What after that?
- Dandan: Not sure yet. Go with the flow.
- Lee: You should plan for yourself.
- Dandan: I know. Just don't have a good plan yet.
- Lee: I see. Hope you have a good one soon.
- Dandan: Changes might be sooner than plans.
- Lee: I know.
- 到了美国以后。
- 莹: 你感觉适应这里的生活吗?
- 明: 不错。这里的生活比中国简单得多。
- 莹: 你是指人际关系方面, 对吧?
- 明: 是。但是也没国内那么有意思。
- 莹: 有得必有失嘛。
- 明: 是啊, 这里的环境干净得多。
- 莹: 那是。
-
- 李: 你喜欢美国吗?
- 丹丹: 我喜欢。这里很干净也很有条理。
- 李: 你毕业后想怎么办?
- 丹丹: 我想找个工作, 取得一些经验。
- 李: 那以后呢?
- 丹丹: 还不知道。随波逐流。
- 李: 你应该为自己计划好。
- 丹丹: 我知道, 只是还没有好的计划。
- 李: 我懂了。希望你很快就有好的计划。
- 丹丹: 计划不如变化快。
- 李: 也是。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In those dancing bars, the music was not as loud as some of the bars in China. You can still dance and talk. Sometimes, strangers may also come up asking for dance, but it is rare. You can decline if you don't want to.

在这些有舞厅的酒吧里,音乐没有在中国的一些酒吧里那么响,还是可以边跳舞边说话的。有的时候,也有陌生人来邀请跳舞,但是这种情况比较少。你不愿意跳可以婉言谢绝。

Related Words and Phrases

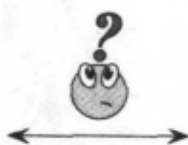
相关词语

- ① cover charges: 门票
- ② wagon: 一种大轿车,行李箱是在后座后面敞开的,行李箱的上盖儿和顶棚一样高
- ③ go with the flow: 随波逐流,见机行事
- ④ decline: 婉言谢绝

Patterns

句型

- ◆ You should ...
- ◆ What are your plans ...



- ◆ 你应该
- ◆ 你 的计划是什么?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ You should go.
- ◆ You should have bought it.
- ◆ You should take it.
- ◆ You should have something to eat.



- ◆ 你应该去。
- ◆ 你应该把它买下来。
- ◆ 你应该应承下来。
- ◆ 你应该吃点儿东西。

- ◆ What are your plans for the project?
- ◆ What are your plans after the program?
- ◆ What are your plans for vacation?
- ◆ What are your plans for Tom?



- ◇ 你对这项任务是怎么计划的?
- ◇ 你在这个项目完成后有怎么打算?
- ◇ 你打算怎样度假?
- ◇ 你想把汤姆怎么办?

Topic 2 Sports Bar

第二题 运动吧

Sports bars are where people go and have a drink, watching sports on TV at the same time. There is usually a circular counter around the bar tender. You can order drinks and food from the bar tender. There are high chairs around the counter, where people sit and watch TV. If you sit at the tables in the bar, there are larger screen TVs on each side of the bar, or hung at the corners of the bar.

人们去运动吧喝杯酒,同时看看电视上的体育节目。这种酒吧通常有一个圆形的吧台,调酒员在吧台里。人们围坐在吧台边的高脚凳上,点酒和菜。酒吧里桌子旁的顾客可以看酒吧两端的大电视或者挂在酒吧四角的电视。

Scene 1

场景 1

Jim came to a sport bar with his friends. The game tonight was baseball. Jim lives in Detroit. The baseball team in Detroit is called The Lions. It is not a very strong team, and loses quite a bit. Jim did not have too much hope for The Lions to win, but just came here to spend some time with friends.

吉姆和他的朋友来到一个运动吧。今晚儿的节目是棒球。吉姆住在底特律,那里的棒球队是“雄狮队”。这个队并不太行,经常输球。吉姆并没有希望“雄狮队”会赢球,他只是想和朋友们聚一聚。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Bar Tender: Hello. May I help you?

Jim: Heineken. How about
you guys?

Gary: Martini, please.

Frank: Screw Driver.

George: Scotch on the Rock.

Bar Tender: The total is \$21.

调酒师: 您好,需要什么吗?

吉姆: 喜力啤酒。你们呢?

盖瑞: 请来一杯马爹利。

弗兰克: 螺丝刀。

乔治: 苏格兰威士忌加冰块儿。

调酒师: 一共是 21 元。

Jim: I'll take this round.

Gary: Thanks, Jim. I'm the next.

George: I have no confidence in The Lions.

Jim: I know.

Gary: You know, there is a joke going around.

Frank: What is it?

Gary: A kid went to school, and told his teacher that he did not like his father.

Frank: So?

Gary: His teacher asked why. He said: "My Dad beats me."

Frank: And?

Gary: The teacher asked: "Do you like your Mom?" The kid said: "I don't like my Mom either."

Frank: I know. His Mom beats him too.

Gary: Right. And the teacher asked: "Then whom do you like?"

Frank: What did he say?

Gray: The kid said: "I like The Lions." The teacher said: "Why?" And the kid said: "The Lions does not beat anybody."

Frank: Ha-ha. It's funny.

吉姆: 我来付这轮。

盖瑞: 谢谢你, 吉姆。下轮我付。

乔治: 我对“雄狮队”是一点儿信心都没有。

吉姆: 谁说不是呢。

盖瑞: 你知道吗, 有个笑话在流传。

弗兰克: 什么笑话?

盖瑞: 一个小孩子到学校上学, 告诉他的老师他不喜欢他爸爸。

弗兰克: 那又怎么样?

盖瑞: 他的老师问他为什么。他说: “我爸爸打(赢)我。”

弗兰克: 然后呢?

盖瑞: 老师问他 “你喜欢妈妈吗?” 他说: “我也不喜欢我妈妈。”

弗兰克: 我知道, 他妈妈也打(赢)他。

盖瑞: 对了。然后这老师问: “那你喜欢谁?”

弗兰克: 他怎么说?

盖瑞: 这小孩儿说: “我喜欢‘雄狮队’”。老师问: “为什么?” 这小孩儿说: “雄狮队’不打(赢)任何人(队)”。

弗兰克: 哈哈, 有意思。

Americans are very into sports. The three most popular sports are: football, basketball and baseball. Hokey is the next one to follow. Professional players in these sports make millions of dollars each year. Soccer is not very popular in the U.S.. People asked: "When can soccer be popular in the U.S.?" The answer was: "When the soccer players can date the super models."

美国人很热衷于体育。三种最热的体育运动是：橄榄球，篮球和棒球。冰球仅次于这三项。这些运动的职业运动员一年可以赚几百万美元。足球在美国并不流行。有人问过：“什么时候足球在美国才能流行？”回答是：“等到足球运动员可以和超级模特谈恋爱的时候。”

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① bar tender: 酒吧调酒师, 酒保
- ② Heineken: 喜力啤酒
- ③ Martini: 马爹利, 一种鸡尾酒
- ④ Screw Driver: 螺丝刀, 一种鸡尾酒
- ⑤ Scotch: 苏格兰威士忌(Whiskey)
- ⑥ Brandy: 白兰地
- ⑦ Jin: 琴酒
- ⑧ Rum: 朗姆酒
- ⑨ Vodka: 伏特加
- ⑩ take this round: 为这一轮酒付费
- ⑪ beat: 赢, 击败

Patterns

句型

◆ I'll take ...

◆ He said ...



◆ 我要

◆ 他说

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I'll take this watch.
- ◆ I'll take the heat.
- ◆ I'll take it.
- ◆ I'll take a Taxi.



- ◆ 我买这块表了。
- ◆ 我来承受指责。
- ◆ 我买了(我承受了)。
- ◆ 我打的走。

- ◆ He said: "Henry doesn't like me!"
- ◆ He said Henry did not like him.
- ◆ He said: "You are messing me up!"
- ◆ He said I was messing him up.



- ◆ 他说：“亨利不喜欢我！”
- ◆ 他说亨利不喜欢他。
- ◆ 他说：“你净给我捣乱！”
- ◆ 他说我净给他捣乱。

Scene 2

场景 2

Playing pool is very popular in sports bars and other bars. Amy wanted to learn pool shooting from Brian, so they came to a sports bar. Brian started teaching Amy.

打桌球在运动吧和其他酒吧里也很流行。艾米想要和布莱恩学打桌球，他们来到了一家运动吧。布莱恩开始教艾米。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Amy: Teach me some of the basics first.

艾米：先教我些基本知识。

Brian: You have 16 balls on the table, 7 solids, 7 stripes, the black 8th ball, and the white ball.

布莱恩：桌上有16个球，7个全色的，7个带状颜色的，一个黑的，还有一个白的。

Amy: And?

艾米：还有呢？

Brian: You hit the white ball or cue

布莱恩：用球杆打白球，白球打到

Chapter Five

彩色球。你要争取把彩色球打进洞里。

ball with your cue. The cue ball hits the colored balls. And you want to get the colored balls into the pockets.

Amy: How do you know you should hit the solid or the stripe?

Brian: It doesn't matter at the beginning. Once someone gets one ball in, it's set.

Amy: Do I have to hit my balls first?

Brian: Yes. If you hit the balls of your opponent's first, or hit the black ball first, or didn't hit any balls, you get penalty of giving up your next turn.

Amy: Do I need to get the black ball in?

Brian: After you get all your balls in, you try to get the black ball in.

Amy: Let's try it now!

艾米: 怎么知道你要打全色球还是带状球?

布莱恩: 开始没关系。一旦有人打进一球,就定下来了。

艾米: 我必须先打我的球吗?

布莱恩: 是啊。如果你先打到你对手的球, 或者先打到黑球, 或者没打到任何球, 你要受罚停打一把。

艾米: 我需要把黑球打进吗?

布莱恩: 把你的所有球都打进以后, 再设法把黑球打进去。

艾米: 现在就打打看吧!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Shooting pool can have various formats and rules. Sometimes people use pool shooting for gambling, say five dollar a game. Be careful not to get involved with the gambling.

桌球有很多形式和规则。有时人们还打桌球赌博, 比如一局五美元。小心不要参加到赌博中去。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① cue ball: 白球
- ② the 8th ball: 黑球
- ③ cue: 球杆

Patterns

句型

◆ You ...

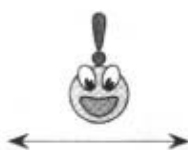


◆ 你

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ You hit the ball.
- ◆ You use the cue.
- ◆ You wipe the floor.
- ◆ You take me home.



- ◆ 你打球。
- ◆ 你用球杆。
- ◆ 你擦地。
- ◆ 你带我回家。

美国文化习俗

Customs and Culture in America

Working people have different customs and habits. Sometimes people are
looking for a job. They are often looking for a job. They are often looking for a job.
They are often looking for a job. They are often looking for a job. They are often looking for a job.

相关

Related Words and Phrases

Topic 3 Strip Bar

第三题 脱衣舞厅

Strip bars are not very popular in the U.S., as believed by most people in China. There are only a few in an average city. It may not exist in a small town. Nobody goes to those places very often. Most people went there for curiosity. Another reason for people to go is the Bachelor Party. Bachelor Party is a party for the groom on the night before the wedding. His friends would take him to a strip bar to enjoy the last night of his bachelor life. The bride also knows what's going on, and it is a custom in the U.S..

脱衣舞厅在美国并不像多数中国人想像的那么流行。在一般城市里也就只有几个,小城市可能根本就没有。没有人经常去这种地方,去的人也都是出于好奇。还有一个去脱衣舞厅的原因是单身汉派对。单身汉派对是给即将结婚的新郎在结婚前一天晚上开的派对。他的朋友们会带他去脱衣舞厅去享受单身生活的最后一个晚上。新娘也知道这些。这是个美国的风俗习惯。

Scene

场景

Gary was getting married to Linda. The night before the wedding, the graduate students of his Department went to a bar with him. After a few drinks, someone suggested to go to a strip bar. Gary did not reject. They jumped in the big old car of John's, and raced to a strip bar. They took a table and sat down. A couple of girls were dancing on the stage with a band on their legs.

盖瑞要和琳达结婚了。结婚的前一天晚上,他们系的研究生们和他去了酒吧。几杯酒下肚儿,有人提议去脱衣舞场,盖瑞也没反对。他们就跳上约翰的大破车,疾驶到一个脱衣舞厅。他们找了张桌子坐了下来。有几个姑娘在台上跳舞,腿上套了条松紧带儿。

Dialogue

对话

Gary: You guys are crazy. Linda would kill me if she found  盖瑞: 你们疯了。琳达知道了还不杀了我。

out.

John: Are you going to tell her?

Gary: Of course not.

John: Then how could she find out?

Gary: I don't know.

Lamar: Relax. Just make sure this is the last time you come here.

Gary: Tell you the truth. I have really not been to strip bars much.

Lamar: Who does?

John: You should give some tips to the girls, Gary.

Gary: Okay. I got a couple of dollar bills.

• 约翰: 你会告诉她吗?

• 盖瑞: 当然不会。

• 约翰: 那么她怎么会发现呢?

• 盖瑞: 我也不知道。

• 乐玛: 放松一些, 只要你以后不再来不就行了嘛。

• 盖瑞: 说实话, 我真没看过几次脱衣舞。

• 乐玛: 谁总来啊?

• 约翰: 盖瑞, 你应该给这些姑娘点儿小费。

• 盖瑞: 好的, 我有几张一块钱纸币。

(Gary walked to the stage and put a dollar bill in the band on the leg of a dancing girl. He also talked to the girl briefly. 盖瑞走到舞台前, 把一张一元钞塞到一个跳舞姑娘腿上的带子里, 还和她说了几句话。)

John: Hey, what did you say to her?

Gary: I told her I was getting married.

Lamar: What did she say?

Gary: She told me: "Good luck!"

Lamar: Very nice!

John: Say "Bye-bye" to your bachelor life!

Gary: I know.

• 约翰: 嗨, 你和她说了什么了?

• 盖瑞: 我告诉她我要结婚了。

• 乐玛: 她说什么了?

• 盖瑞: 她对我说: "祝你好运气!"

• 乐玛: 真不错!

• 约翰: 跟你的独身生活说再见吧!

盖瑞: 谁说不是呢。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Most of the strip bars are quite in order. The customers obey the rules set by the bars, such as they cannot touch the dancing girls. The D.J. repeats these rules all the time.

大多数脱衣舞厅都比较有秩序, 顾客也都遵守舞厅的规定, 比如他们不能碰跳舞的姑娘。舞厅的主持人总是在不断地重复这些规定。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① strip: 脱
- ② strip dance: 脱衣舞
- ③ crazy: 疯了
- ④ bachelor: 单身汉; 学士
- ⑤ groom: 新郎
- ⑥ bride: 新娘

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Just make sure ...
- ◆ Say ... to ...



- ◆ 只要确保
- ◆ 对 说

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Just make sure that you do the right thing.
- ◆ Just make sure I don't see you again!
- ◆ Just make sure that you find the right person.
- ◆ Just make sure you don't get caught.



- ◆ 你只要确保做正确的事情。
- ◆ 千万别让我再见到你!
- ◆ 一定要找到正确的人。
- ◆ 你一定不能被抓到。

- ◆ Say "Hello" to my friends.
- ◆ Say "Yes" to whatever he asks.
- ◆ Say something nice to your wife.
- ◆ Say "No" to unreasonable requests.



- ◆ 和我的朋友打声招呼。
- ◆ 他要求什么都答应。
- ◆ 对你太太说点儿好话。
- ◆ 对不合理的要求要加以拒绝。

Topic 4 Live Entertainment Bar

第四题 现场演艺吧

There are a number of different kinds of bars with live entertainment in the U.S.. Some of them feature in Jazz, very popular in some areas, such as New Orleans. Some of them are famous in the blues, like those in Chicago. Some plays country music, like the songs by John Denver known by many Chinese. Needless to say, Rock-n-roll is very popular in some bars. Live entertainment means the music is played by real musicians, not from CD's.

在美国有很多不同种类的现场演艺酒吧。有些是以爵士乐为主,在某些地区比如新奥尔良非常流行。有些专门表演蓝调音乐,像在芝加哥的一些酒吧里。还有的表演乡村音乐,就像很多中国人熟知的约翰·丹佛唱的那种歌曲。不用说,摇滚乐在酒吧里也很流行。现场演艺是指音乐是由真人表演的,不是从光碟放出来的。

Scene

场景

Lamar went to New Orleans for a conference. He came to the famous French Corner for entertainment. He walked in a bar. A band was playing Jazz. He took a seat and listened to the band. Another couple came in and there was no table available. They walked to Lamar's table.

乐玛去新奥尔良来开会。他来到有名的“法国角”来娱乐一下。乐玛走进了一间酒吧,乐队在演奏爵士乐。他找了把椅子坐了下来,听听音乐。另一对伴侣走了进来,没有空桌子了。他们来到了乐玛的桌前。

Dialogue

对话

The guy: Would you mind if we sit with you?

Lamar: Not at all.

The girl: Thanks.

Lamar: Are you guys from this

小伙子: 我们和您坐一起,您介意吗?

乐玛: 没问题。

姑娘: 谢谢。

乐玛: 你们是本地人吗?

Chapter Five

area?
The guy: No. We are from Boston.
Lamar: You must be kidding. I'm also from Boston.
The girl: What a coincidence! Which part of Boston?
Lamar: Newton.
The girl: We're from Cambridge.
Lamar: I see. Are you going to Harvard?
The guy: No. MIT.
Lamar: Great school.
The guy: Not too bad.
Lamar: How do you like the Jazz?
The girl: We love it. This band is fantastic!
Lamar: They play very well. Want something to drink?
The guy: It's on me for this round. Tell me what you'd like.
Lamar: Thanks. I'll have a draft beer.
The guy: Hello! Can we have some drinks please?

小伙子: 不是。我们是从波士顿来的。
乐玛: 你开玩笑吧? 我也是从波士顿来的。
姑娘: 太巧了! 你住在波士顿哪个地方?
乐玛: 牛顿。
姑娘: 我们是在剑桥。
乐玛: 明白了。你们上哈佛大学吗?
小伙子: 不是, 是麻省理工。
乐玛: 非常好的学校。
小伙子: 还不错。
乐玛: 你喜欢他们演奏的爵士乐吗?
姑娘: 我们喜欢得要命。这支乐队太棒了!
乐玛: 他们演奏得很好。想喝点儿什么吗?
小伙子: 这一轮我来付。告诉我你喜欢喝什么。
乐玛: 谢谢。我要一杯扎啤。
小伙子: 喂! 给我们来点儿酒怎么样?



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It is the same for people from anywhere of the world. You need to make connections. When Lamar and the other couple found they were from the same city, the distance between them was shortened immediately. In the U.S., we call these kinds of talks "small talks". "Small talks" try to make connections by talking about something personal. Even if for business meetings, people may start "small talks" at the beginning to break the ice.

However, some "small talks" may be too personal, and asking for the information can be illegal. For example, if you are doing a job interview and you ask about the interviewee's age during the "small talk." Later you decide not to hire him. It is not a problem in China, but you may be sued because of age discrimination in the U.S.

世界上哪儿的人都一样,你需要联络感情。当乐玛和那对伴侣发现他们来自同一个城市,他们之间的距离一下子就拉近了。在美国,我们对这种谈话称为“唠小嗑”。“唠小嗑”是利用谈论私人的事情联络感情。即使是办公事儿,人们也会从“唠小嗑”开始来变得熟络起来。但是,有些“唠小嗑”可能太敏感了,这种谈话有可能会违法。比如,如果你在进行招工面试,你“唠小嗑”,问了接受面试的人的年龄,而最终并没有录用他。这在中国没有什么问题,但是在美国可能会被告到法庭上,说你年龄歧视。

Related Words and Phrases

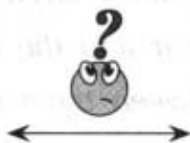
相关词语

- ① live entertainment: 现场演艺, entertainment 不局限于唱歌和演奏音乐
- ② hazz: 爵士乐
- ③ blues: 蓝调音乐
- ④ country music: 乡村音乐
- ⑤ Harvard: 哈佛大学
- ⑥ MIT: 麻省理工学院
- ⑦ Cambridge: 剑桥, 是哈佛大学和麻省理工学院的所在地
- ⑧ on me: 我来付账
- ⑨ make connections: 联络感情, 寻找共同点
- ⑩ age discrimination: 年龄歧视。在美国找工作, 法律上规定不能有年龄, 性别, 残疾和人种等方面的歧视

Patterns

句型

- ◆ What a ...
- ◆ ... is (are) on me.



- ◆ 好一个
- ◆ 我来付。

Substitute Exercise

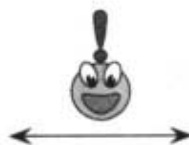
替换练习

- ◆ What a nightmare!
- ◆ What a nice day!
- ◆ What a life!
- ◆ What a great job!



- ◆ 好可怕的恶梦!
- ◆ 多好的天气!
- ◆ 多有趣的生活!
- ◆ 干得真漂亮!

- ◆ The dinner is on me.
- ◆ The drinks are on me!
- ◆ The lunch is on me.
- ◆ The cocktails are on me.



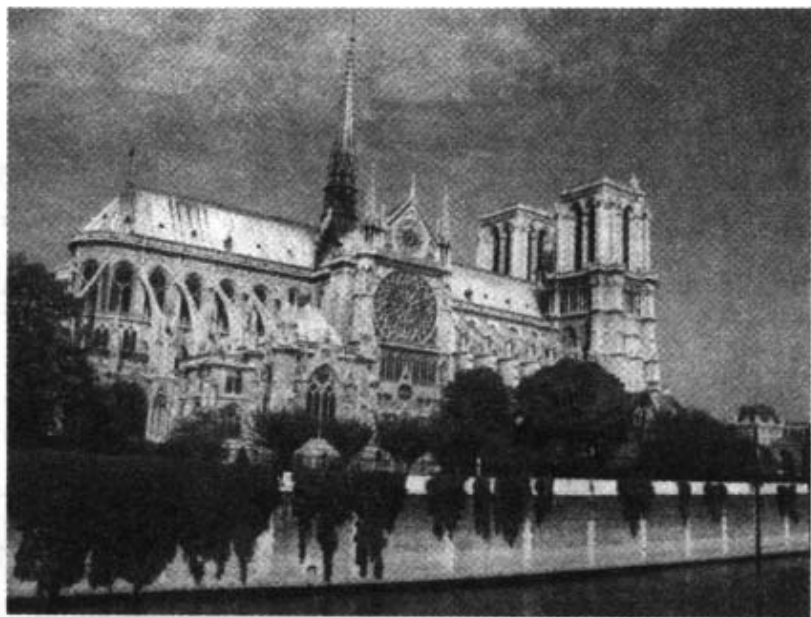
- ◆ 晚餐我来付。
- ◆ 这酒我请客!
- ◆ 午饭我请客。
- ◆ 鸡尾酒我付钱。

交往

的地道口语

Chapter Six Churches and Religions

第六章 教堂和宗教



Unlike China, religion is so important in the American society. Most people have a religion. The good thing is that people do not talk about religion at work, which makes the life a lot easier. However, because of people's belief in religion, one should be careful not to offend people. You do have the freedom to believe or not believe a religion, but you have no right to criticize or judge a religion.

不像在中国,宗教在美国社会里是如此重要,大多数人有宗教信仰。有一点比较好,那就是在工作场合不谈宗教,这使生活容易多了。可是,因为人们有宗教信仰,所以要注意不要得罪人。你有信不信宗教的自由,但是你没有批评和评判某一宗教的自由。

Topic 1 Meeting Religious People

第一题 与教民打交道

There is no doubt that you will meet people with religion in the U.S.. They may try to get you to believe their religion. More often than not, they may help you out of their nice hearts. How to meet religious people, and how to get along with them is something you have to do in the U.S..

毫无疑问,你在美国一定会遇见信教的人,他们也可能劝你加入。经常地,出于好心,他们也可能帮助你。在美国,怎样和教民打交道,如何和他们相处是你必须面对的课题。

Scene 1

场景 1

Ming met Mr. Liu at a party. Mr. Liu appeared very nice. He said he was also a student coming to the U.S. to study years ago. He had a lot of help from the people in the church. He is now a Christian. He works in a research institute of the U.S. government.

明在一个派对上遇见刘先生,刘先生看起来很和善。他说他多年前也是来美留学的学生。他曾经得到教堂的很多帮助。他现在是基督徒了,在美国政府的一个研究机构里工作。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

- | | | | |
|----------|---|------|-----------------------|
| Ming: | I always wonder how a scientist like you can also believe in the God. | 明: | 我总是想不通像您这样的科学家怎么能信上帝? |
| Mr. Liu: | Why not? | 刘先生: | 为什么不能? |
| Ming: | You must have learnt science, and the Evolution. | 明: | 您学过科学和进化论。 |
| Mr. Liu: | I did. But it does not mean I believe in the Evolution. | 刘先生: | 我是学过,但是不等于我相信进化论。 |

Ming: Then, you believe that the God created the world?

Mr. Liu: Of course. There are all kinds of theories for the creation of the universe, such as the Big Bang, the Evolution, etc. It is my belief that the God created the universe.

Ming: Does that mean that you don't believe in science?

Mr. Liu: No. I'm not convinced that the Evolution is scientific.

Ming: I see. But do you have any proof that the God created the universe?

Mr. Liu: If it was not the God, how could the universe be so nice? Who would have such power?

Ming: In any case, I'm not convinced of the God.

Mr. Liu: You will. Come to our Sunday school, and you will learn.

Ming: I will come to visit your school. But I don't think I can be convinced.

Mr. Liu: A thing at a time. Come to the school, and we will see.

Ming: Okay.

Mr. Liu: I know you came to the U.S. to study on your own. It is not easy for you. Here's

明: 那么您相信上帝创造了世界?

刘先生:当然了。对于创造世界有很多理论,比如大爆炸学说,进化论等等。我相信上帝创造了宇宙。

明: 那是不是说您不相信科学?

刘先生:不。我不认为进化论是科学。

明: 我明白了。可是您有证据说上帝创造了宇宙吗?

刘先生:如果没有上帝,宇宙能这么好吗?这种力量舍上帝其谁也?

明: 无论如何,我不能相信有上帝。

刘先生:你会相信的。到我们周日查经班来,你会理解的。

明: 我会来到你们的查经班看看,但是我不会被说服。

刘先生:一步一步来,先到查经班来,我们再看。

明: 好的。

刘先生:我知道你是自费来美国留学的,一定不容易。这是二

Chapter Six

十美元,请收下。这是我对
你留学的贡献。

\$20. Please take it. It's
my contribution to your
education.

Ming: Oh. I didn't expect this.
I shouldn't take money
from you.

明: 噢,我没想到会这样。我不
应该要你的钱。

Mr. Liu: I insist. I want to help you.

刘先生:你一定收下。我要帮助你。

Ming: Okay. Thanks a lot.

明: 好吧。太谢谢了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Who created the universe is the first topic to argue between people who believe in the God and who don't. It is not easy to convince somebody to believe in the God, but religious people would always try. It is also true that some religious people are very nice, and they often help students by donating money, providing food, etc.

谁创造了宇宙是信上帝的人和不信上帝的人争论的首要问题。劝人信上帝不是件容易的事,但是信教的人总要试图说服别人。有些教民也真的比较善良,他们经常帮助学生捐钱,提供食物,等等。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① believe in: 信仰
- ② the Evolution: 进化论
- ③ the God: 上帝
- ④ Sunday School: 周日查经班
- ⑤ the Big Bang: 大爆炸学说
- ⑥ one thing at a time: 一步一步来
- ⑦ JIT: Just In Time: 即时装配(没有过多存货)

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I always ...
- ◆ Come to ... , and you ...



- ◇ 我总是
- ◇ 来到 你就会

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I always believe in myself.
- ◆ I always practice before a presentation.
- ◆ I always try my best in a competition, even if I knew I was losing.
- ◆ I always come to a meeting 5 minutes earlier.



- ◇ 我总是相信我自己。
- ◇ 我总是在讲演前练习一下。
- ◇ 比赛时我总是全力以赴,即使我知道我会输。
- ◇ 我总是提前五分钟到会。

- ◆ Come to our class, and you will see for yourself.
- ◆ Come to the JIT plant, and you would understand how your design affects assembly.
- ◆ Come to practice, and you will find it's not as hard as you thought.
- ◆ Come to my house, and you would appreciate how much time I've spent on it.



- ◇ 到我们班里来,你自己会明白的。
- ◇ 到我们即时装配工厂来,你就会明白你的设计会对装配有多大影响。
- ◇ 来练习一下,你会发现并不像你想象的那么难。
- ◇ 到我家来,你就会明白我在房子上花了多少时间。

Scene 2

场景 2

Dan and Jim went on a business trip, driving from Pittsburgh to Johnstown. Jim is a Christian. During the trip, they started talking about religions.

丹和吉姆一起公出,从匹兹堡开车到约翰城。吉姆是基督徒。在旅途中,他们开始谈论起宗教。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Jim: What is the religion in China?

吉姆:在中国人们信什么教?

Dan: It was Confucius long time ago, and then the Buddhism.

丹: 很久很久以前信孔教,后来是佛教。

Jim: How about now?

吉姆:现在呢?

Dan: Not many people have a religion any more.

丹: 再没有多少人信教了。

Jim: Why?

吉姆:为什么?

Dan: After the Cultural Revolution, people stopped believing in anything.

丹: 在文化大革命以后,人们不再信仰什么了。

Jim: I can't imagine a society without religion.

吉姆:我想像不出一个社会没有宗教会是什么样子。

Dan: Some people believe in money; some believe in power; some believe in themselves. Still a lot of people don't believe in anything.

丹: 有些人相信钱,有些人相信权力,有些人相信他们自己。还有很多人什么也不信。

Jim: How about Christian?

吉姆:基督教呢?

Dan: There are churches around. But I think the Christian in China is independent of the rest of the world.

丹: 有一些教堂。但是我知道中国的基督教是独立于世界的。

Jim: I see. It's quite different from here.

吉姆:我明白了,和这里相当不同。

Dan: Yes. I met some Christians

丹: 是。我在这里遇见过一些基

American Interpersonal

English

- here, and they are quite nice.
- Jim: Being a Christian is far more than just being nice.
- Dan: I'm not very clear about Christianity.
- Jim: Come to our church if you like to.
- Dan: Easter is not too far away. I plan to visit your church by that time.
- Jim: Good. Easter is the most important religious holiday.
- Dan: Really? What about Christmas?
- Jim: Christmas is so commercialized. It lost its meaning of religion.
- Dan: I see.
- 教徒,他们很善良。
- 吉姆:做基督徒在意义上远远不只是善良。
- 丹:我对基督教也不是很清楚。
- 吉姆:你愿意的话,到我们教堂来吧。
- 丹:复活节不远了,我计划那时到你们教堂看看。
- 吉姆:好啊。复活节是最重要的宗教节日。
- 丹:是吗?那圣诞节呢?
- 吉姆:圣诞节已经太商业化了。已经失去了宗教上的意义。
- 丹:我明白了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Religion is one of the big differences between the U.S. and China. In the U.S., more than 50% people have religion. For the new generations, fewer people are religious. In China, the percentage of people who are religious is much lower.

宗教信仰是中美的一大区别。在美国,百分之五十以上的人信教。年轻人信教的越来越少。在中国,教徒的百分比小得多。

In the Easter celebration, there is a ceremony when everyone eats a piece of bread with some red wine. They represent the meat and blood of Jesus. This ceremony is trying to show that Jesus sacrificed himself to save the people.

庆祝复活节时,有一个庆典,人们要吃一小块儿面包,还有一点儿红酒。这些代表耶稣的肉和血。这个仪式是要试图说明耶稣牺牲自己拯救人民。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Confucius: 孔子, 孔教
- ② the Cultural Revolution: 文化大革命

③ Easter: 复活节

④ Easter eggs: 复活节彩蛋

Patterns

句型

◆ I can't imagine ...

◆ I plan to ...



◆ 我想像不出

◆ 我计划

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ I can't imagine being that fat.

◆ I can't imagine living here.

◆ I can't imagine the seven years you stayed with her.

◆ I can't imagine how little money you are living on.



◆ 我想像不出那么胖怎么办。

◆ 我想像不出这地方怎么住。

◆ 我想像不出你怎么和她过了七年。

◆ 我想像不出你靠这么一点儿钱生活。

◆ I plan to go to the U.S. for my Ph.D.

◆ I plan to skip my vacation this year.

◆ I plan to study English for two hours a day.

◆ I plan to refresh my French.



◆ 我计划到美国去读博士学位。

◆ 我计划今年不休假了。

◆ 我打算每天学两小时英语。

◆ 我想再把法语复习一下。

Topic 2 Attending Sunday Schools

第二题 参加主日查经

Churches have Sunday Schools for Bible study. Chinese Churches in the U.S. also have bilingual schools. People come to the school to study the Bible on Sundays, discuss their understandings, and sometimes have heated discussions. Different point of views may be presented during the discussions. It may result in different groups in a church.

教堂有学圣经的主日(星期天)查经班,在美国的中国教堂还有双语学校。人们星期日到查经班学圣经,讨论他们的理解感受,有时甚至争吵起来。讨论中会有不同的观点,最后可能导致不同的派别。

Scene

场景

Mr. Huang is an elder overseas Chinese, a retired diplomat. He is the president of a Chinese Christian church, taking care of the administrative affairs of the church. This Sunday, after the service, he was leading the Sunday school class. He invited Pastor Hou from another church to give a lecture. Pastor Hou told his story about how he became a Christian after he had come to the United States, how he gave up engineering studies and entered the God's Bible School, and how he finally became a Pastor. A discussion followed the lecture.

黄先生是一位老年华侨,以前当过外交官。他是一个中国人的基督教教堂的主席,管理教堂的事务。这个星期天,他们做了礼拜以后,他主持查经班的学习。他邀请了另一个教堂的侯牧师来讲经。侯牧师讲了他怎样在来到美国之后成为基督徒,放弃了学工程,加入了神学院,最后成为一名牧师。他讲完之后,讨论开始了。

Dialogue

对话

Mr. Huang: Pastor Hou's lecture was very impressive. He found his way to believe in the God. Please let us



黄先生:侯牧师的讲演非常深刻,他找到了信仰上帝的途径。现在大家可以共享对他经历的感受。

share how you feel about his experience.

Lily: I was moved by his story. He had so much trouble before he believed in the God. And he felt so good after he joined the world of the God.

Pastor Hou: Right. Once you believe in the God, you let the God to worry about the life. If you keep praying, the God will help you with whatever the problem might be.

Mr. Cheng: I have a question. If the God helps everybody, why do we still have people suffering?

Pastor Hou: Some people have to suffer. But eventually if they believe in the God, the God will help them.

Mr. Huang: Everyone is sinned. But if you believe in the God, the God will let you go to the Heaven.

Mr. Cheng: I'm still not convinced. Why do we still have wars and disasters if the God is controlling everything?

Mr. Huang: Well, we hope you keep coming to the Sunday school, and eventually

莉莉: 听了他的故事, 我很感动。在信仰上帝之前, 他有过很多麻烦。追随上帝之后, 他的心情是那么好。

侯牧师: 是啊, 你一旦信仰了上帝, 你就让上帝来主宰生活。不管有什么困难, 只要一直祷告, 上帝就会帮你解决问题。

程先生: 我想提个问题。如果上帝帮助每个人, 为什么还有人在受苦?

侯牧师: 有些人必须受苦。但是最后如果他们信仰上帝, 上帝会帮助他们。

黄先生: 每个人都是有罪的。但是如果你信仰上帝, 上帝会让你进天堂的。

程先生: 我还是没有被说服。既然上帝主宰一切, 为什么还有战争和灾难?

黄先生: 这样吧, 我们希望你坚持来查经班学习, 将来你会明白上帝帮助每一个人。

American Interpersonal

English

you will understand how
the God helps everyone.

In the meantime, keep
praying for whatever you
wish.



在这期间,继续为你的希望祈祷。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

For a non-religious person, there are a lot of unanswered questions about the God and the Bible. Even for religious people, questions and different understandings about the Bible arise all the time. The purpose of the Sunday Schools is to clear the confusions of the people. But unanswered questions will always be there.

对于一个不信教的人,会有许多关于上帝和圣经的问题。即使是教徒,也有各种各样的关于圣经的问题。主日查经班的目的是为了了解答这些疑问,可是问题总是会存在的。

Related Words and Phrases

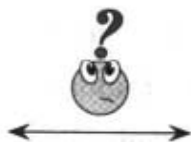
相关词语

- ① retired diplomat: 退休的外交官
- ② pastor: 牧师
- ③ share: 共享,合用,合租
- ④ suffer: 遭罪,受苦
- ⑤ pray: 祈祷
- ⑥ the Bible: 圣经

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Once you ... , you ...
- ◆ I'm not convinced that ...



- ◆ 一旦你,你
- ◆ 我还是没被说服; 我不相信

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Once you reach the Master level in martial arts, you can control the airflow in your body.
- ◆ Once you come to our school, you would understand why kids learn fast in our school.
- ◆ Once you watch the Friends, you would be hooked on.
- ◆ Once you fall in love with him, you would get hurt.



- ◆ 一旦你达到了武术的大师级，你能控制你身体里的气流。
- ◆ 一旦你到我们学校来看看，你就能明白为什么孩子们在我们学校里学习进步很快。
- ◆ 一旦你看了“六人行”，你就会迷上了。
- ◆ 一旦你爱上了他，你就会受到伤害。

- ◆ I'm not convinced that this concept can work.
- ◆ I'm not convinced that you can do this job.
- ◆ I'm not convinced that he is the man.
- ◆ I'm not convinced that this city is any better than my hometown.



- ◆ 我不相信这个概念设计能成功。
- ◆ 我不相信你能做这项工作。
- ◆ 我不相信他是我们需要的人。
- ◆ 我不觉得这个城市比我的家乡好。

Topic 3 Going on a Trip with a Church Group

第三题 参加教堂郊游

往

的地道口语

Churches organize trips such as the Harvest Outing in the fall. Saints go to a tourist village for a weekend. They stay for a couple of days, studying the Bible, listening to the lectures by the pastors, having performance, and playing sports. It could be very enjoyable.

教堂组织一些外出活动,比如说秋天的丰收之旅。教民周末时去度假村,他们在那里呆几天,学圣经,听牧师讲道,举行演出,进行体育活动。这种旅行有可能挺有意思的。

Scene

场景

Mr. Huang invited Dan and Dave Cheng to the Harvest Outing of the church. Mr. Huang picked them up at their apartment at 5:00 pm Friday and drove them to a small tourist village. After dinner, they sat down and had a little chat.

黄先生邀请了丹和程大卫参加教堂的丰收之旅。黄先生星期五下午五点到他们的公寓接他们,开车带他们到了一个小度假村。晚餐以后,他们坐下来聊了会儿天儿。

Dialogue

对话

Mr. Huang: Dan, when did you come to the U.S.?

Dan: Three months ago.

Mr. Huang: You are really a new comer here.

Dan: Right.

Mr. Huang: Which school do you go

黄先生: 丹, 你什么时候来美国的?

丹: 三个月以前。

黄先生: 你是名副其实新来的。

丹: 是啊。

黄先生: 你上哪个学校?

to?
Dan: Worcester Polytechnic Institute.

Mr. Huang: A good school. People call it the Little MIT.

Dan: Really? I feel better now.

Mr. Huang: Why?

Dan: Because it is not famous in China, so I thought it may not be a prestigious school.

Mr. Huang: It is a very good school. It was rated as top 50 in the U.S. last year.

Dan: Great!

Mr. Huang: Dave, where do you go to school?

Dave: Also WPI.

Mr. Huang: How do you like it?

Dave: It's quite good. Expensive but I got scholarship.

Mr. Huang: We invited another pastor to give us a talk tomorrow. You had questions last time on the Bible. We can discuss your questions tomorrow.

Dave: Good.

Mr. Huang: The performance is on Sunday. Did you prepare anything?

Dave: I'll be singing a song.

Mr. Huang: Great!

丹: 伍斯特理工学院。

黄先生: 好学校, 人称小麻省理工。

丹: 真的啊? 我感觉好一些。

黄先生: 为什么?

丹: 因为这个学校在中国不闻名, 所以我认为它并不是什么名校。

黄先生: 这学校很好, 去年在美国它排进前五十名。

丹: 太好了!

黄先生: 大卫, 你上哪个学校?

大卫: 也在伍理工。

黄先生: 喜欢吗?

大卫: 挺好的。学费很贵, 但是我有奖学金。

黄先生: 我们邀请了另一个牧师明天给我们讲道。你上次有圣经方面的问题, 我们明天可以讨论你的问题。

大卫: 好。

黄先生: 演出是在星期天, 你们准备节目了吗?

大卫: 我会唱一首歌儿。

黄先生: 很好!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交往的地道口语

Church outings are also centered on religion, as you expect. Even the performance is mostly related to the Bible, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. The activities do reflect the church as a big family. There are a lot of nice people. Through these activities, you can have more understanding of religions.

如人们所料,教堂外出也是以宗教为中心。即使是演出也多数是关于圣经,圣父,圣子,圣灵。这些活动确实反映出教堂像一个大家庭,有很多互相关心的人。通过这些活动,你能对宗教有更多的了解。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① saint: 教徒, 教民
- ② chat: 聊天
- ③ top 50: 前五十名
- ④ WPI: Worcester Polytechnic Institute (伍斯特理工学院) 的简称
- ⑤ the Father: 圣父
- ⑥ the Son: 圣子
- ⑦ the Holy Spirit: 圣灵

Patterns

句型

◆ When did ...

◆ We invited ... to ...



◆ 什么时候

◆ 我们邀请了 来

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ When did you find the truth?

◆ When did you come home?

◆ When did you buy the pants?

◆ When did you come back to school?



◆ 你是什么时候发现真相的?

◆ 你什么时候回家的?

◆ 你什么时候买的裤子?

◆ 你什么时候回学校的?

Chapter Six

- ◆ We invited Dr. Liu to give us a lecture.
- ◆ We invited President Clinton to host the Opening Ceremony.
- ◆ We invited John to come to our house next Saturday.
- ◆ We invited Ming to play tennis with us.



- ◆ 我们邀请了刘博士来给我们讲课。
- ◆ 我们邀请了克林顿总统来主持开幕式。
- ◆ 我们邀请了约翰下个星期六到我们家里来。
- ◆ 我们邀请了明来和我们一起打网球。

Topic 4 To Be or Not To Be

第四题 信教还是不信

As long as you deal with religious people, this is always a question. The religious people have the duty to get more people into their group. But some groups push very hard, and some don't. It is also dependent on the religion and the personality of the saints.

只要你和信教的人打交道,就要面对这个问题。信教的人有义务来说服更多的人加入他们的团体。可是有些宗教团体比较积极地推动别人信教,另一些团体比较温和,劝说得不那么凶。这和宗教的种类和教民的性格都有关。

Scene 1

场景 1

Sean Li is a Chinese student from Shanghai, who came to the U.S. to study last summer. He had two roommates, Ming and Dan, who were also from China. One evening, he was in his apartment reading, and his roommates went to school. When his roommates returned at night, he told them what happened that evening.

李尚是上海来的一位中国学生,他是去年夏天到美国来的。和他合住的还有另外两位中国学生:明和丹。有一天傍晚,他在公寓里看书,他的室友到学校去了。当他的室友晚上回来时,他叙述了傍晚发生的事情。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Sean: You guys won't believe this.



尚:你们一定想不到发生了什么事情。

Dan: What happened?

•

丹:怎么了?

Sean: Right after you guys left, I heard somebody knocking on the door.

•

尚:你们俩刚走,我就听到有人敲门。

•

•

Ming: Who was it?

•

明:谁啊?

Sean: I opened the door, and a

•

尚:我开了门,有两个家伙站在那

couple of guys were standing there.

Dan: Who were they?

Sean: They said they were some kind of religious people. I didn't catch what kind of religion it was.

Ming: So?

Sean: They said they wanted to talk to me.

Dan: Did you let them in?

Sean: I did. I thought it could at least help me practice English.

Ming: What did they talk to you?

Sean: It was okay at the beginning. We talked a little bit on the God. Then they started to convince me to join.

Ming: Did you join?

Sean: No. I told them I didn't want to.

Dan: Did they give up?

Sean: Nope. They started to grab me.

Dan: What did they want to do?

Sean: They pushed me to the bathroom, and they put my head to the sink to give me a wash.

Ming: What? They wanted you to join their religion by washing you?

Sean: Apparently. I was so mad, and I started to resist and got them off me. So I was not washed at the end.

儿。

丹：他们是谁？

尚：他们说他们是信什么教的，我没太听懂是什么教。

明：那又怎么样？

尚：他们说想和我聊聊。

丹：你让他们进来了？

尚：我让他们进来了，我想这至少可以帮我练练英语。

明：他们和你谈了什么？

尚：一开始还行，我们谈了一会儿上帝。然后他们就说服我加入。

明：你加入了么？

尚：没有啊，我告诉他们我不想加入。

丹：他们放弃了？

尚：根本没有，他们开始抓住我。

丹：他们想干什么？

尚：他们往卫生间推我，把我的脑袋往水池里摁，想给我受洗。

明：什么？他们想通过受洗让你加入他们的宗教？

尚：显然是。我急了，开始反抗，摆脱他们。后来就没洗成。

Dan: Then what happened?

● 丹: 后来呢?

Sean: I told them to leave, or I would call the cops.

● 尚: 我让他们走, 说不然我要叫警察了。

Ming: Did they leave?

● 明: 他们走了吗?

Sean: They did. I guess they didn't want to force me too much. But I was really mad at them.

● 尚: 他们走了, 我想他们不想太强制。但是我真是很生气。

Dan: Who wouldn't? How could they do this to you?

● 丹: 谁会不生气? 他们怎么可以这样对待你?

Sean: I didn't expect this. I guess we need to be more careful.

● 尚: 我也没想到。我们大概要更小心一些。

Ming: Yes. Don't let any strangers in any more.

● 明: 是啊。不能让任何陌生人进来。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Many years ago, before I went to the U.S., I read an English book which warned: Never open doors to strangers, no matter who he appears to be, a repair man, a gas worker, a cop or anybody else. Sean was not careful. He was almost forced to do something. He was lucky that he was not robbed.

很多年前, 还是我去美国之前, 我就在一本英语书上看见过这样的警告: 不能给任何陌生人开门, 不管他看起来像是什么人, 修理工、煤气工人、警察、还是任何其他人。尚不够小心, 差点儿被强制做了不愿意做的事。没有被抢劫已经是运气不错了。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① catch: 明白, 听懂
- ② nope: 等于 no
- ③ grab: 抓, 抓住
- ④ get a wash: 受洗
- ⑤ sink: 洗手池
- ⑥ look after: 照顾

- 7 get lost: 滚开
- 8 keep somebody posted: 让某人保持了解事情的进展
- 9 take off: 走, 离开, 起飞

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I told ... to ...
- ◆ I guess ...

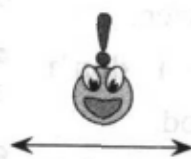


- ◆ 我告诉 干
- ◆ 我猜

Substitute Exercise

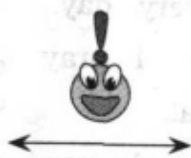
替换练习

- ◆ I told them to look after my sister.
- ◆ I told him to come back earlier.
- ◆ I told them to get lost.
- ◆ I told her to keep me posted.



- ◆ 我告诉他们照顾好我妹妹。
- ◆ 我告诉他早点儿回来。
- ◆ 我告诉他们滚蛋。
- ◆ 我告诉她随时通知我事情的进展。

- ◆ I guess I was wrong.
- ◆ I guess she is not coming.
- ◆ I guess we can take off now.
- ◆ I guess we can forget about it.



- ◆ 我想是我错了。
- ◆ 我猜她不会来了。
- ◆ 我想我们可以走了。
- ◆ 我猜这件事没什么指望了。

Scene 2

场景 2

Chong Hua is a student from Malaysia. He studied in the U.S. and got a Master's degree in Mechanical Engineering. After graduation, he found a job in the same company as Dan's. He is a very nice person and soon became a good friend of Dan's. He is a Christian, and would

like to convince Dan to join his church. The following is a conversation between the two.

中华是马来西亚来的留学生。他在美国上学,获得机械工程专业的硕士学位。毕业以后,找到了一份工作,和丹在一个公司。他人很好,很快就和丹成为好朋友。他是基督徒,也想说服丹加入他们的教堂。下面是这两个人的对话。

对话 2

Dialogue 2

Chong Hua: Dan, would you like to come to our church this Sunday?

中华: 丹, 这个星期天想来我们教堂吗?

Dan: I've been to some churches.

丹: 我已经去过几个教堂了。

Chong Hua: I didn't mean to come and see what our church looks like. I meant to come to our service.

中华: 我不是说到我们教堂看看啥样儿, 我是想让你来做礼拜。

Dan: I don't know. I don't believe in the God.

丹: 我不想去, 我不信上帝。

Chong Hua: Why not? It feels good if you believe in the God.

中华: 为什么不呢? 信上帝感觉很好的。

Dan: Do you really think the God exists?

丹: 你真的相信有上帝吗?

Chong Hua: Yes, I pray every day. You know that. I pray before every meal.

中华: 是啊。我天天祷告, 这你是知道的, 我每顿饭前都祷告。

Dan: I know. But how do you know the God exists? Have you seen the God?

丹: 我知道。但是你怎么知道上帝存在? 你见过上帝吗?

Chong Hua: No. But you have not seen everything in the world. For example, you haven't seen sharks. Do sharks exist?

中华: 没有。可是你也没有见过世界上的万物。比如说, 你没见过鲨鱼, 鲨鱼存在吗?

Dan: I haven't seen sharks,

丹: 我没见过鲨鱼, 但是别人见

Chapter Six

but other people have,
and there are pictures of
the sharks.

Chong Hua: We also have the
pictures of the God. We
even have the movies
about the God.

Dan: But who has seen him?

Chong Hua: Some people said they
did see the God.

Dan: Well, it is hard for me to
believe. In the past, we
believed in Chairman
Mao. We treated him
like the God. And it
turned out he was not a
god at all. It's hard to
believe in anything now.

Chong Hua: At least you should try.

Dan: Believe me, it won't
work.

Chong Hua: You may come around in
the future.

Dan: I don't think so. We'll
see.

Chong Hua: You are still my friend in
any case.

Dan: That's for sure.

过,还有鲨鱼的照片。

中华: 我们也有上帝的照片。我们
甚至有关于上帝的电影。

丹: 可是谁见过上帝?

中华: 有人说他们见过上帝。

丹: 可是,我很难相信。过去,我
们信仰毛主席,我们把他当
成上帝。可是后来证明他根
本不是神。现在什么都很难
让我信了。

中华: 至少你应该试一试。

丹: 请相信我,那是不可能的。

中华: 你将来也许会转变看法。

丹: 我觉得不会。再说吧。

中华: 无论如何,你还是我的朋
友。

丹: 那当然。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In this case, ChongHua pushed quite a bit to convince Dan. But Dan was not interested in becoming a Christian. This kind of conversation can often cause argument. One should be very careful not to offend the

religious people. It is their belief. If you do not believe in the God, don't hurt their feelings. Just tell them earnestly how you feel. But don't let them feel you are attacking what they believe in.

在这里, 中华很努力地说服丹, 可是丹并不想成为基督徒。这种谈话常常会引起争吵。应该小心谨慎, 不要得罪信教的人。这是他们的信仰, 如果你不信上帝, 不要伤害他们的感情。只是诚意地告诉他们你的想法, 但是不要让他们感到你是在攻击他们的信仰。

When somebody says, "I don't know." He does not mean that he does not know, as shown by the text. It means that he does not want to do it.

当有人说, “我不知道。”实际上他并不是像字面上表明的他不知道。他实际上是说 he 不想干这件事。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① service: 到教堂做礼拜
- ② I don't know: 我不想去, 我不想干
- ③ Chairman Mao: 毛主席
- ④ work: 行, 能成, 好使, 成功
- ⑤ come around: 思想转弯, 想法变过来了
- ⑥ hurt feelings: 伤害感情

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I didn't mean ...
- ◆ At least you should ...



- ◆ 我不是 的意思。
- ◆ 至少你应该

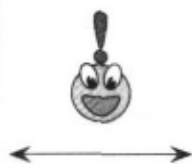
Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I didn't mean to stop you. I just wanted you to think again.

- ◆ 我不是想阻止你, 我只是想让你三思后行。

- ◆ I didn't mean it was no good. You just need to go through it a couple more times.
- ◆ I didn't mean to harm you. I was actually trying to protect you.
- ◆ I didn't mean to keep you out of this group. I just wanted to let you be with your friends.



- ◆ 我不是说它一无是处，你只需要再修改两遍。
- ◆ 我没有想伤害你，我实际上在努力保护你。
- ◆ 我不是不让你加入这个组，我只是想让你和你自己的朋友在一起。

- ◆ At least you should taste a sample.
- ◆ At least you should let me finish.
- ◆ At least you should give me some advice.
- ◆ At least you should tell me the truth.



- ◆ 至少你应该尝一尝。
- ◆ 至少你应该让我说完。
- ◆ 至少你应该给我些建议。
- ◆ 至少你应该告诉我真相。

Scene 3

场景 3

Gary Li is a visiting scholar from Beijing. He came to the U.S. for a project, and would stay for six months. He was a roommate of Dan's, and quite open on the matter of religion. This evening, when they all came back to their apartment, Dan told him about being asked to join the church. He made some comments. We can see that he was not ready to join any religion at all.

盖瑞·李是北京来的一个访问学者。他到美国来做一个项目，要呆六个月。他是丹的室友，也对宗教信仰开诚布公。这天晚上，他们都回到了公寓，丹告诉他有人劝他入教，盖瑞谈了自己的想法。我们可以看出他不准备加入任何宗教。

Dialogue 3

对话 3

交往的地道口语

Dan: Hi, Gary. How was your day?

Gary: Not bad. Anything interesting happened to you?

Dan: Not really. Just that ChongHua asked me to join their church.

Gary: I will never join the Christian.

Dan: Why not?

Gary: The Bible said something like: If somebody hit you on the left face, give him your right face. Isn't that foolish?

Dan: Really? I haven't seen this, but they probably want to make friends with their enemy.

Gary: I'll never do that. But I hope that everybody becomes Christian except me.

Dan: Why is that?

Gary: I can then take advantage of everybody. I can hit them. And they don't hit me back. I can get money from them, and don't have to pay back.

Dan: I can't believe you really think this way.

Gary: I do think this way. I'm all about myself.

Dan: What a guy!

丹: 你好,盖瑞。今天好吗?

盖瑞: 不错。你今天碰到什么有趣的事儿了吗?

丹: 也没什么。只是中华劝我加入他们教会。

盖瑞: 我是永远也不信基督教。

丹: 为什么不信?

盖瑞: 圣经上好像说: 要是有人打你的左脸, 你把自己的右脸也送上去。这不是傻瓜吗?

丹: 是吗? 我没看见过这段话, 但是可能他们想化敌为友吧?

盖瑞: 我可不会那么做。但是我想让每个人都成为基督徒, 除了我例外。

丹: 为什么你这样想?

盖瑞: 那我就可以占任何人的便宜。我可以打他们, 他们不能还手。我还可以拿他们的钱, 也不用还。

丹: 你竟然是这么想的, 我真不敢相信。

盖瑞: 我就是这样想的。我只为我自己。

丹: 这样的一个人!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The above was a true conversation. We have to admit that Gary was a quite selfish guy. It is totally wrong to take advantage of religious people.

Chapter Six

上面是一段真实的对话。我们不得不承认盖瑞是个非常自私的家伙。占宗教信徒的便宜是绝对错误的。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

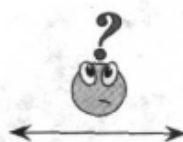
- ① take advantage of: 占人便宜, 欺负人
- ② hit back: 还击
- ③ pay back: 还钱, 偿还债务

Patterns

句型

◆ Just that ...

◆ I'll never ...



◆ 只是

◆ 我永远不会

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ Just that Linda stopped by.

◆ Just that I don't really want to go.

◆ Just that I don't get along with him.

◆ Just that I need to go home.



◆ 只是琳达来过了。

◆ 只是我不太想去。

◆ 只是我和他处不来。

◆ 只是我得回家。

◆ I'll never see you again.

◆ I'll never let this happen again.

◆ I'll never let him go.

◆ I'll never come back.



◆ 我再也不要见你了。

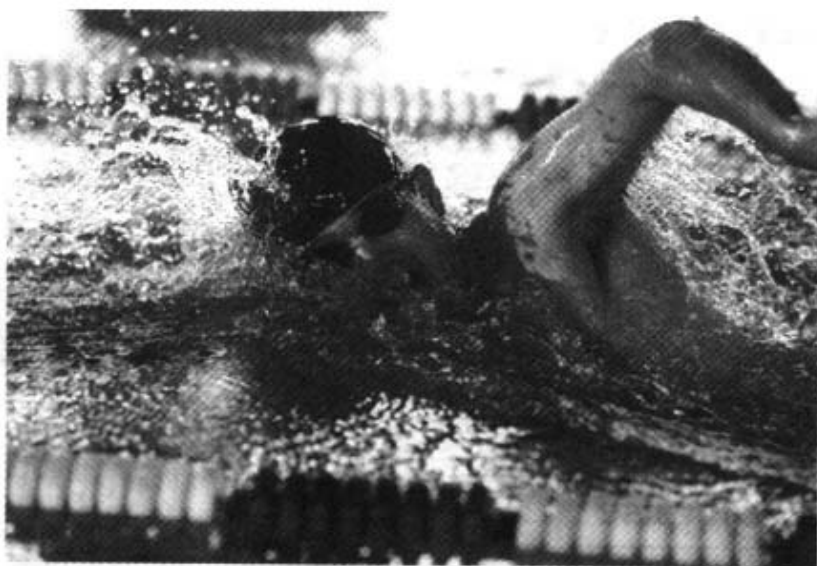
◆ 我决不会让这种事再次发生。

◆ 我永远不会放他走。

◆ 我再也不回来了。

Chapter Seven Sports

第七章 运动



Sports are very popular in the U.S.. The top three sports are baseball, football and basketball. Tennis is also very popular. Professional sports players are one of the best-paid occupations in the U.S.. They could earn millions of dollars a year. There are a lot more sports other than the ones listed above. We would introduce related words and phrases of some of the sports in this chapter.

体育运动在美国很流行。最流行的三项要数棒球、橄榄球和篮球。网球也很流行。运动员是美国赚钱最多的职业之一，每年可高达几百万美元。除了上面列举的运动以外，还有很多其他的运动。在这章里，我们来介绍一下与运动相关的单词和短语。

Topic 1 Baseball

第一题 棒球

Baseball is very popular in the U.S.. Many excellent baseball players are from Cuba. Because of the huge profit, there are professional brokers who bring Cuban players to the U.S.. and get them legal status to make money. The players make millions of dollars a year, but would have to pay the brokers significant amount of what they make.

棒球在美国很流行。很多优秀的棒球运动员都来自古巴。由于暴利,出现了一些职业的经纪人。他们把古巴的球员弄到美国,帮他们搞到合法身份,然后赚钱。这些运动员一年可赚几百万美元,其中很大一部分给了经纪人。

Scene

场景

Amy went to a baseball game with Brian. It was the Boston Red Sox against the Detroit Lions. The Boston team had been doing very well in this season, but they got a strong rival this time.

艾米和布莱恩去看棒球赛。这场比赛是波士顿红袜队对底特律雄狮队。波士顿队这个赛季成绩不错,可是这场球他们碰到了强劲对手。

Dialogue

对话

Amy: How do they play this game?

Brian: The game has nine innings.

Each inning means each team gets a chance to pitch and bat.

Amy: So how do they count?

Brian: There are three bases in the field. They count the number of times a team can run



艾米: 棒球比赛怎么个玩法?

布莱恩: 一场比赛有九局。每局里每个队有一次机会投球和击球。

艾米: 那他们怎么计算?

布莱恩: 在场里有三个垒。他们计算每个队的球员跑过所有垒的次数。次数多的赢

- through the bases. Whoever with the higher number wins.
- Amy: The pitcher throws the ball, and the batter hits the ball, right?
- Brian: You are so smart. After the batter hits the ball, if the other team in the field catches the ball, the batter is out.
- Amy: What if the ball was not caught?
- Brian: The batter can try to run the bases. The best would be running through all the bases.
- Amy: What is a strike?
- Brian: A strike means the batter fails to hit a good ball the pitcher throws, or he swings but is not able to hit the ball.
- Amy: If the batter gets three strikes, he is also out, right?
- Brian: Yes. If the pitcher gets three balls, he is out.
- Amy: What is a ball?
- Brian: A ball means the pitcher throws a ball that is not at the right area in relation with the batter.
- Amy: What is a homerun?
- Brian: That's when the batter hits the ball to the outside of the fence, and the ball can't be caught. He can run through the bases easily.
- Amy: I like the homerun.
- Brian: Yes. It's sensational.
- 球。
- 艾米: 投球手投球, 击球手打球, 对吧?
- 布莱恩: 你真聪明。在击球手打到球以后, 如果球被对方球员接到, 击球手就出局了。
- 艾米: 要是没接到球呢?
- 布莱恩: 击球手可以努力跑垒, 最好跑一圈儿。
- 艾米: 什么是正球?
- 布莱恩: 正球是击球手没打中投出的好球。或者不管是投的什么球, 击球手挥棒但没打中。
- 艾米: 如果击球手得了三个正球, 他就出局了, 是吗?
- 布莱恩: 对。要是投球手得了三个偏球, 他也出局了。
- 艾米: 什么是偏球?
- 布莱恩: 偏球表示投球手投的球不在相对于击球手的特定范围内。
- 艾米: 什么是本垒打?
- 布莱恩: 那是当击球手把球打到栅栏外, 对方无法接到球时, 击球手在垒上的同队球员就可以轻松地跑完所有的垒。
- 艾米: 我愿意看本垒打。
- 布莱恩: 是啊, 很激动人心。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Baseball games are in a huge stadium. During a game, the audience is quite involved with the game, shouting, yelling and waving. There are people in the audience painted their bodies in color to try to get on the TV. The audience often make waves by standing up in sequence. Food and drinks are sold in the stadium.

棒球比赛是在一个巨大的体育场里举行。在比赛期间,观众很投入,呼喊,大叫,挥手。还有的人把自己身体涂成彩色,企图吸引电视台摄影记者的注意力。观众还会有次序地此起彼伏,形成人体波浪。体育场里有饮料和食物出售。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

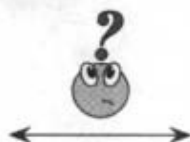
- ① inning: 棒球中的一局, 一个回合
- ② strike: 正球。投球手投出的好球, 但是击球手没打。或者不管是什么样的投球, 击球手挥棒但没打中
- ③ ball: 投球手投出的坏球, 偏球
- ④ homerun: 本垒打
- ⑤ base: 垒。棒球也叫垒球
- ⑥ bat: 球棒
- ⑦ batter: 击球手
- ⑧ pitcher: 投球手
- ⑨ make a pitch: 投球, 讲演

Patterns

句型

◆ If ... he ...

◆ What is a(n) ...



◆ 如果 他就

◆ 是什么?

Substitute Exercise

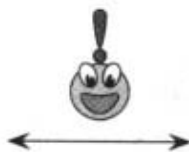
替换练习

- ◆ If he passes this exam, he won't fail this subject.
- ◆ If he got an "A" this time, he would be a straight A student.
- ◆ If he gets home early, he cooks the dinner.
- ◆ If he wants me to attend the meeting, he needs to give me a call.



- ◆ 如果他通过了这次考试, 他这门课就能及格。
- ◆ 如果他这次得 A, 他就是全优生了。
- ◆ 如果他回家早些, 他就做晚饭。
- ◆ 他要是想让我参加会议, 他就必须得打个电话告诉我。

- ◆ What is an inning?
- ◆ What is a catcher?
- ◆ What is a sleeping bag?
- ◆ What is an engineer?



- ◆ 什么是(棒球的)一局?
- ◆ 什么是捕球手?
- ◆ 什么是睡袋?
- ◆ 什么是工程师?

Topic 2 Football

第二题 橄榄球

Football is a special game. The game is nothing like soccer except that both games have gates. The players of the football do not really use their feet to kick the ball all the time. They actually carry the ball to run through the field. One team offends, and the other defends. The offense team tries to get the ball into the other side of the field. If they get to the other side, they would have a chance to kick the ball into the gate to get an additional point.

橄榄球(美式足球)是很特殊的运动。这种运动除了有门以外,和足球再无二致。运动员并不总用脚踢球,他们实际上用手抱着球跑过球场。一个队进攻,另一个队防守。进攻的队力争把球带到球场的另一端。如果他们能跑到头,他们会有一次踢球进门的机会。如果进了,就能再得一分。

Scene


场景

Jim, Amy and Brian went to the football game by Pittsburgh Steelers and the San Francisco 49ers. Amy had a lot of questions on the game.

吉姆,艾米和布莱恩一起去看橄榄球赛,这场比赛是匹茨堡铁人队对旧金山四九人队。艾米对橄榄球赛问题多多。

Dialogue

对话

- Jim: Amy, which team is your favorite?  吉姆: 艾米,你喜欢哪个队?
- Amy: To tell you the truth, I don't quite understand the game. 艾米: 说实话,我不太懂这种运动。
- Jim: It's time for a football lesson. Each team has a group of players for offense, and a 吉姆: 那该给你上上橄榄球课了。每个队有一组进攻球员,还有一组防守球员。

group for defense.

Amy: Say when it's the team for offense, how do they start?

Jim: The defense team kicks the ball, and the members of the offense team catch it and try to run as far as possible.

Amy: I saw the offense guy with the ball got pushed down on the ground.

Brian: Yes. The members of the defense team want to stop him.

Amy: Well, how far does he need to go?

Brian: Each time the offense team has four chances to go, and they have to advance ten feet, or they lose the turn to offense.

Amy: Who is the quarterback?

Brian: The quarterback is the guy who always throws the ball.

Amy: I see. How do they decide who wins?

Brian: When a team runs through the field, or gets a touchdown, they get six points. Then they have a chance to kick the ball into the gate. If the ball is in, they get one more point.

Amy: They sometimes get three points, what happens there?

Brian: That's when you think you can't get a touchdown or get

艾米: 比如说是这个队进攻,他们怎么开始?

吉姆: 防守球队开场踢球,进攻队队员接到球就尽量往前跑,越远越好。

艾米: 我看到带球的进攻运动员被推倒在地。

布莱恩: 是。防守队队员要阻止他前进。

艾米: 可是,他需要前进多远?

布莱恩: 每次进攻队有四次机会前进,他们必须一共前进十码,不然他们就失去进攻的机会了。

艾米: 谁是四分卫?

布莱恩: 四分卫是那个掷球的家伙。

艾米: 我懂了。怎么样来决定胜负呢?

布莱恩: 要是是一个队跑过全场,也叫底线得分,他们得六分。然后他们有一次机会射门,要是球进了,再加一分。

艾米: 他们有时得三分,那是怎么回事儿?

布莱恩: 那是当你认为没办法跑完全场或前进十码,你可

Chapter Seven

以射门。如果进了,你就得三分。

the 10 yards; you can kick the ball into the gate. If you do get the ball in, you get three points.

Amy: Whoever gets more points at the end of the game wins.

Brian: Right.

艾米: 最后得分最多的队胜。

布莱恩: 对了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Winning the football game is very much dependent on the strength of the players. It also shows the importance of the strategy. A good game can be very exciting. It is also very physical, sometimes violent.

橄榄球比赛的输赢很大程度上取决于队员的体魄,战略部署也很重要。一场好的球赛十分激动人心。这种运动会有很多肢体接触,有时很粗暴。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

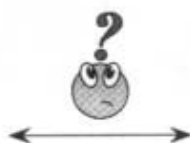
- ① offense: 进攻
- ② defense: 防守
- ③ quarterback: 四分卫。在比赛中担任掷球的重要角色
- ④ yard: 码, 三英尺
- ⑤ go: 冲。观众助威时的呐喊
- ⑥ touchdown: 底线得分。需要带球跑到球场终点, 或者在球场终点接到球

Patterns

句型

◆ Say ... how ...

◆ Whoever ...



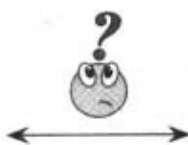
◆ 比如说 怎么

◆ 无论谁

Substitute Exercise

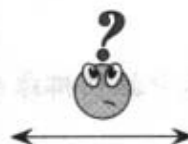
替换练习

- ◆ Say there are seven apples for four people, how do you divide them?
- ◆ Say we run for exercise, how do you know when we have enough exercise?
- ◆ Say I am going to Beijing, how do I buy a train ticket?
- ◆ Say he wants to stay with me, how can I refuse?



- ◆ 比如说有七个苹果，四个人分。你怎么分？
- ◆ 比如说我们去跑步，你会怎样判断我们的运动量够不够？
- ◆ 比如说我要去北京的话，我该怎么买火车票？
- ◆ 比如说他要和我搬到一起住，我该怎么拒绝他呢？

- ◆ Whoever gets the ball has to run.
- ◆ Whoever likes her will be hurt.
- ◆ Whoever gets up the earliest would cook the breakfast.
- ◆ Whoever wants to beat Jordan would be disappointed.



- ◆ 无论谁得到球，都必须跑。
- ◆ 无论谁喜欢上她，都会受伤。
- ◆ 无论谁最早起来，他都得做早餐。
- ◆ 无论谁要打败乔丹，他都不会成功。

Topic 3 Basketball

第三题 篮球

Basketball is popular in both the U.S. and China. NBA changed the whole style of the game. When talking about basketball, we have to mention Michael Jordan. He is the most famous and influential player in the world. He is a model sports player, without attitude and bad habits.

篮球在美国和中国都很流行。美国职业篮球联赛改变了这项运动的整个风格。说起篮球,我们必然提到迈克尔·乔丹。他是世界上最有名的,也是最有影响力的运动员。他是个模范运动员,没有不良的态度和习惯。

Scene

场景

Lamar and Dan are watching the NBA game on the TV. It was the Chicago Bulls against the Detroit Piston.

乐玛和丹在看美国职业篮球联赛的电视转播,比赛是由芝加哥公牛队对底特律活塞队。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: I like the NBA very much.



丹: 我很喜欢美国职业篮球联赛。

Lamar: Did you watch NBA games before you came to the U.S.?

乐玛: 你来美国之前看过美国职业篮球联赛吗?

Dan: Yes. It was on the TV sometimes.

丹: 看过。有时电视上会播。

Lamar: This giant Yao Ming is pretty good.

乐玛: 那个巨人姚明,打得挺好的。

Dan: He must have made millions of dollars.

丹: 他一定赚了几百万美元了。

Lamar: For sure. He did a lot of commercials as well.

乐玛: 那是一定了。他还做了不少广告。

American Interpersonal

English

Dan: The income from the commercials may be higher than that from the games.

Lamar: I know. Who do you like the best of the NBA players?

Dan: Michael Jordan.

Lamar: He made the history of basketball, a legend.

Dan: Yes. He quit so many times, but I guess basketball is his life.

Lamar: I don't think he can get away from the game.

Dan: Me too.

丹: 做广告赚的钱可能比打球还多。

乐玛: 是啊。职业篮球联赛的运动员里你最喜欢谁?

丹: 迈克尔·乔丹。

乐玛: 他书写了篮球历史, 是个传奇式的人物。

丹: 是啊。他好几次退役, 但是我猜测篮球是他的生命。

乐玛: 我觉得他不会脱离篮球运动。

丹: 我也这样想。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The basketball players in the U.S. are mostly black. They are good at running and jumping. Most black kids start playing basketball at very young age, hoping to become a star some day. There are a lot of indoor basketball courts in the U.S., which make the game much more enjoyable.

美国的篮球运动员大多数是黑人, 他们善于跑跳。大多数黑人小孩子很小就开始打篮球, 希望有一天能成为明星。在美国有很多室内篮球场, 使篮球运动更好玩儿。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① NBA: National Basketball Association, 美国篮球协会组织的篮球联赛
- ② Chicago Bulls: 芝加哥公牛队, 迈克·乔丹曾多年在该队服役, 带领该队多次夺得 NBA 冠军
- ③ Detroit Piston: 底特律活塞队
- ④ commercial: 广告, 尤指电视广告
- ⑤ Yao Ming: 姚明, 在 NBA 打球的中国球员
- ⑥ legend: 传奇, 传奇式的人物

Patterns

句型

◆ For sure ...

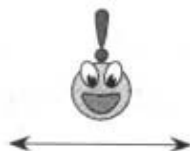


◆ 当然 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ For sure he will come back.
- ◆ For sure we will win.
- ◆ For sure he made a mistake.
- ◆ For sure they didn't know.



- ◆ 他当然会回来。
- ◆ 我们当然会赢。
- ◆ 他确实犯了错误。
- ◆ 他们当然不知道。

Topic 4 Tennis

第四题 网球

Tennis is a great game. In the U.S., there are a lot of tennis courts: in the schools, community health centers, and health clubs. Some of them are indoor courts; some are outside but lighted so you can play at night. Most of the outdoor tennis courts are free of charge, so you have plenty of opportunities to practice.

网球是一项很好的运动。在美国有很多网球场,分布在学校、社区锻炼中心和健身俱乐部。有些是室内的,有些是室外的,但是有灯光供夜间打球。大多数室外网球场都是免费的,所以人们有很多练习的机会。

Scene 1

场景 1

Amy would like to learn to play tennis. She asked Brian to teach her.
艾米想要学打网球,她请布莱恩教她。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

- | | | | |
|--------|--|------|-------------------------------|
| Amy: | Brian, playing tennis seems very interesting. | 艾米: | 布莱恩,打网球好像很好玩儿。 |
| Brian: | Would you like to learn? | 布莱恩: | 想学吗? |
| Amy: | Yes. How do you play? | 艾米: | 想啊,怎么个打法儿? |
| Brian: | Tennis can be single or double. The outside lines are for double, and the inside lines are for single. | 布莱恩: | 网球有单打和双打。外面的边线是双打的,里面的边线是单打的。 |
| Amy: | How do you decide who starts serving? | 艾米: | 怎么决定谁发球? |
| Brian: | Well, you can flip a coin to decide. Whoever wins chooses | 布莱恩: | 可以抛硬币决定啊,赢了的选择发球权或者 |

Chapter Seven

场地。

Sports

either to serve or the side of the court.

Amy: How do you count the score?

Brian: At the beginning, the score would be LOVE LOVE.

Amy: LOVE means 0?

Brian: You got it. It then counts to 15, 30, and 40. If you get to 40 and win again, you win the game.

Amy: The opponent starts serving then?

Brian: Right. See. You know how to play now.

Amy: Let's try it sometime.

Brian: Sure!

艾米：怎么计分？

布莱恩：开始是 LOVE 比 LOVE。

艾米：LOVE 代表 0？

布莱恩：对了。然后数到 15, 30, 40。你的分数如果已经到 40 了，要是再赢了，就赢这一局了。

艾米：然后换发球？

布莱恩：是的。看，你知道怎样打了。

艾米：什么时候咱们打打试试。

布莱恩：好啊！



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Tennis is a very interesting and great exercise. It can be played regularly with a group. Double matches are even more fun than singles.

打网球很有意思，也是很好的运动，可以有组织的定期地打。双打比单打更有趣。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① serve: 发球

② flip coin: 抛硬币，双方约定谁要硬币的哪一面，由落下硬币的结果决定输赢

③ volley: 网前截击

④ racket: 球拍

⑤ net: 网球

⑥ LOVE: 比分 0，是网球中独特的记分方式

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Would you like to ...
- ◆ How do you ...



- ◆ 你想要
- ◆ 你怎么

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Would you like to try?
- ◆ Would you like to go with us?
- ◆ Would you like to teach me?
- ◆ Would you like to have something?



- ◆ 你想要试试吗?
- ◆ 你想要和我们一起去走吗?
- ◆ 你能教我吗?
- ◆ 你想吃点儿什么吗?

- ◆ How do you learn English?
- ◆ How do you go to work?
- ◆ How do you order food?
- ◆ How do you teach your children?



- ◆ 你怎么学习英语?
- ◆ 你怎么去上班?
- ◆ 你怎么点菜?
- ◆ 你怎么教你的孩子?

Scene 2

场景 2

Brian and Amy decided to try playing tennis. They came to the tennis court of the school with a whole basket of tennis balls. Amy brought the racket she bought with ten bucks in the WalMart.

布莱恩和艾米决定试着打网球。他们来到学校的网球场,带了一筐网球。艾米带的球拍是在沃尔玛花十美元买的。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Amy: I want to serve first.

Brian: Go ahead.

Amy: Wow, I hit the net.

Brian: You can try again. Net doesn't count. You have two chances to serve.

Amy: Okay. Hey, it's a good serve!

Brian: Good! Back to you! Hope you can return my ball.

Amy: Why not!

Brian: You're pretty good. Tennis isn't easy to learn.

Amy: I'm talented. Don't you know?

Brian: I know.



艾米: 我要先发球。

布莱恩: 发吧。

艾米: 哇,擦网球。

布莱恩: 再来,擦网球不算。你有两次发球机会。

艾米: 嘿,这次发的好球!

布莱恩: 好!回去了!希望你能再打回来。

艾米: 怎么不能!

布莱恩: 你不错,网球是不容易学的。

艾米: 我是天才,你不知道吗?



布莱恩: 我知道。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Tennis is not easy to learn. In the cities in U.S., there are many tennis classes for different level of players, the beginners, the intermediate level players, and the pro's. Health clubs and local community centers offer those classes. They are priced quite reasonably as well. If you are really interested to learn, you should join the classes.

网球不是很好学的运动,在美国,各地都有很多不同层次的学习班:对初学者的、中级的、还有面向职业运动员的。健身俱乐部和社区健康中心举办这些学习班,价格也非常合理。如果你真想学的话,你应该参加这些学习班。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① net: 擦网球

② return the ball: 回球

- ③ talented: 天才的
④ gifted: 有天赋的
⑤ health Club: 健身俱乐部
⑥ pro's: 高水平的, 职业的

句型

Patterns

- ◆ Wow, I ...
◆ I'm ... Don't you know?



- ◆ 哇, 我
◆ 我是 , 你不知道吗?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Wow, I got it in!
◆ Wow, I got it all wrong!
◆ Wow, I am stunned.
◆ Wow, I am pretty good.



- ◆ 哇, 我成功了!
◆ 哇, 我全做错了!
◆ 哇, 我太震惊了。
◆ 哇, 我挺不错的嘛。

- ◆ I'm stupid. Don't you know?
◆ I'm hooked. Don't you know?
◆ I'm a professional. Don't you know?
◆ I'm terrible at sports. Don't you know?



- ◆ 我很笨, 你不知道?
◆ 我陷进去了, 你不知道吗?
◆ 我是职业干这行儿的, 你不知道吗?
◆ 我体育方面一塌糊涂, 你不知道吗?

Topic 5 Golf

第五题 高尔夫球

Golf is very expensive in China, but it is quite cheap in the U.S. One round of eighteen-hole golf costs only about \$40-\$50 in the U.S. Michigan and Indiana have many golf courses. Playing golf is also a good way to meet friends, especially the high level executives.

打高尔夫球在中国非常贵,但是在美国却很便宜。打一次十八个洞的高尔夫球在美国只需四十到五十美元。密歇根和印地安那州都有很多高尔夫球场。打高尔夫球也是结识朋友,特别是公司高层执行官员的好方法。

Scene 1

场景 1

Amy wants to learn to play golf. She came to Brian, as always, to ask Brian to teach her.

艾米想要学打高尔夫球,她像以往一样,找到布莱恩,请他教她。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| Amy: Hey, Brian, I want to learn to play golf. | 艾米: 嗨, 布莱恩, 我要学打高尔夫球。 |
| Brian: You're really sporty! | 布莱恩: 你真是运动迷! |
| Amy: I want to try every sport I can. | 艾米: 能干的运动我都想干。 |
| Brian: Do you have clubs? | 布莱恩: 有球杆吗? |
| Amy: No. Can I rent clubs? | 艾米: 没有。能租吗? |
| Brian: There're clubs for beginners. It's cheaper to buy those than renting a few times. | 布莱恩: 有初学者球杆, 不贵, 租几次的钱就买下来了。 |
| Amy: What kind of clubs? | 艾米: 哪一种球杆? |
| Brian: Like the seven-piece set. It's only \$120. | 布莱恩: 有一种七个一套的, 只有 120 元。 |

Amy: I'll buy a set. But you have to teach me.

艾米: 那我就买一套,可是你要教我。

Brian: Okay, deal!

布莱恩: 好的,说好了!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

There are golf stores that sell everything related to golf, such as the clubs, the balls, practice balls (cheaper than real balls but lighter), golf shoes, gloves, club bags, club carts, and many other items.

有些高尔夫球运动专卖店,卖和高尔夫球有关的所有东西,包括球杆、球、练习球(比真球便宜但比较轻)、高尔夫球鞋、手套、球杆桶、小车、还有其他很多东西。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① club: 高尔夫球杆
- ② wood: 第一号到第三号球杆
- ③ iron: 四号以上的球杆
- ④ putt: 最后把球打进洞的动作和所用的球杆

Patterns

句型

◆ I want to ...



◆ 我想要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I want to go.
- ◆ I want to have seafood.
- ◆ I want to play basketball.
- ◆ I want to drive you crazy.



- ◆ 我要走了。
- ◆ 我要吃海鲜。
- ◆ 我要打篮球。
- ◆ 我要气死你。

Scene 2

场景 2

Amy and Brian came to the golf course. It was one afternoon in July around 2 o'clock, very hot. But Brian thought there were fewer players at that time, so it was a good time for Amy to learn.

艾米和布莱恩来到高尔夫球场。这是七月的一个下午,大约两点多钟,天很热。但是布莱恩认为这时候人少,正是艾米学习的好时机。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: This little wood stick is called tee.

布莱恩: 这个小木棍叫梯。

Amy: What is that for?

艾米: 干什么用的?

Brian: For the first drive, put the golf ball on the tee, and push the tee into the ground.

布莱恩: 打第一杆时,把球和梯放在一起,插到地上。

Amy: Okay.

艾米: 好吧。

Brian: Pick a wood and hold it like this, with right hand in front of left hand, and the little finger of the right hand interlocking the index finger of your left hand.

布莱恩: 选一个大头杆,这么握着,右手在前左手在后,右手小拇指勾住左手食指。

Amy: Okay.

艾米: 好的。

Brian: Stand like this, swing the club, watch the ball, and hit it as hard as you can.

布莱恩: 这样站好,抡起球杆,盯着球,使劲打。

Amy: Hey!

艾米: 嗨!

Brian: Not too bad. The goal is to get the ball into the hole with the least number of hits.

布莱恩: 不错,尽量用最少的杆数把球打进洞。

Amy: Got you.

艾米: 懂了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Golf is a relatively expensive sport. You need special shoes, golf clubs, and golf balls. The green fee for playing each time can be easily \$40-\$50

per person, not including renting the cart. However, compared to China, it is much cheaper here.

打高尔夫球是一项比较高消费的运动。你要有特殊的鞋、球杆和球。场地费一次要每人四十到五十美元,还不包括租小车。不过和中国比起来,这里还是便宜得多了。

Related Words and Phrases

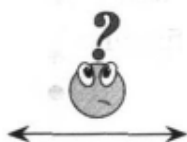
相关词语

- ① tee: 打第一杆时支撑球的小木棍
- ② tee time: 打高尔夫球的时间
- ③ green: 高尔夫球场,尤指球洞附近
- ④ driving range: 高尔夫球练习场
- ⑤ tee off: 开始打球
- ⑥ slice: 球打偏了
- ⑦ par: 标准杆数。每一个洞有规定的标准杆数。高尔夫球的成绩就是用比标准杆数高还是低来衡量的

Patterns

句型

◆ Pick ... and ...



◆ 选择 然后

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Pick a goal and stick to it.
- ◆ Pick a task and do your best.
- ◆ Pick a slow student and try to help him.
- ◆ Pick a job and get it done well.



- ◆ 选择一个目标,然后坚持不懈。
- ◆ 选择一个任务,尽最大的努力去做。
- ◆ 选择一个差学生,试着帮助他。
- ◆ 选择一项工作,把它做得很好。

Topic 6 Bowling

第六题 保龄球

In recent years, bowling became popular in most cities of China. However, people may not be familiar with the English terms in bowling. Let's use these terms in the following dialogue.

最近几年来,保龄球在中国的多数城市里流行起来。然而,人们也许不很熟悉保龄球中的英语词语。让我们在下面的对话中学习这些词语。

Scene

场景 1

Gary went for bowling with Tim and Amy. Amy was not familiar with bowling and asked a lot of questions.

盖瑞和提姆,艾米一起去打保龄球。艾米不熟悉保龄球,提了很多问题。

Dialogue

对话 1

Amy: Why am I getting the 0's all the time?



艾米:我怎么老打零分呢?

Gary: You need to aim at the center of the pins and put the ball straight. Don't bend your arm when letting the ball go.

盖瑞:你要瞄准球的中心,直线地把球打出去。在球掷出去时,胳膊不要弯。

Amy: I think I don't have enough strength.

艾米:我想我的力度不够。

Gary: Work on the accuracy first and then the strength.

盖瑞:先练打准,再练力度。

Amy: Okay. Let me try.

艾米:好吧,我来试试。

Tim: Yes! You got a strike!

提姆:好球!你打了个全倒!

Amy: Oh, you call that a strike?

艾米:噢,你叫这个全倒?

Tim: Yes. When you get all the pins down at the first time.

提姆:是啊,就是你第一次掷球,就把所有的球打倒。

Amy: What if you get all the pins

艾米:如果你用两次掷球才把球

- the second time?
- Tim: It's called a spare.
- Amy: Okay. Why do I have an S sometimes?
- Gary: It means the rest of the pins have a large opening between them.
- Amy: If you get a strike, how many points are added to your score?
- Gary: The total score of the two bowls of your next round.
- Amy: What if I get a spare?
- Tim: The score of the first bowl of your next round would be added.
- Amy: Now it's a little bit clearer to me.
- 全打倒呢?
- 提姆: 那叫补中。
- 艾米: 噢。为什么有时出来一个 S?
- 盖瑞: 那表示剩下的棒中间有个大空。
- 艾米: 如果你打了个全倒, 给你加多少分?
- 盖瑞: 你下两次掷球打倒的所有分数。
- 艾米: 要是补中呢?
- 提姆: 你下一次掷球打倒的分数会加上。
- 艾米: 现在我多少明白一些了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., a lot of bowlers join a league and bowl regularly (every week). It can also be a company, school or family activity. For small kids, the bowling place can set up bumpers on both sides of the lane, and the ball can always hit the pins.

在美国, 很多保龄球爱好者加入球队, 定期(每周)比赛。保龄球也可以是公司, 学校和家庭活动。对于小孩子, 保龄球场可以在球道两边树起栏杆, 那样小孩儿总能打到球棒。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

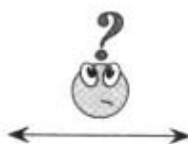
- ① strike: 全倒。
- ② spare: 补中。
- ③ split: 分隔, 分离。
- ④ bowl: 打保龄球。

- 5 score: 分数
- 6 pin: 保龄球棒
- 7 lane: 球道
- 8 make sense: 有道理
- 9 big deal: 重要的事

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Why am I ...
- ◆ Now it ...

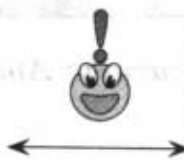


- ◆ 我为什么
- ◆ 现在事情

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Why am I so ugly?
- ◆ Why am I so easy to get mad?
- ◆ Why am I so stupid?
- ◆ Why am I with you?



- ◆ 我为什么这么丑?
- ◆ 我为什么这么容易发火?
- ◆ 我为什么这么愚蠢?
- ◆ 我为什么和你在一起

- ◆ Now it starts making sense.
- ◆ Now it's not a problem.
- ◆ Now it happens all the time.
- ◆ Now it's no big deal.



- ◆ 现在事情听起来有些道理了。
- ◆ 现在这种事情不是问题了。
- ◆ 现在这种事情经常发生。
- ◆ 现在这种事情不算什么了。

Topic 7 PingPong

第七题 乒乓球

往
的地道口语

PingPong is the national game of China. Chinese players are all over the world playing Championships, representing different countries. It is one of the most popular games in China. You may also have a chance to play in the U.S.. Most of the Chinese families in the U.S. have a PingPong table in their basement. American and foreign students may also be curious to see how good you are at PingPong.

乒乓球是中国的国球。中国选手在世界各地,代表不同的国家参加锦标赛。乒乓球是中国最流行的运动之一,你在美国也许会有机会打乒乓球。在美国的多数中国家庭的地下室里都有一张乒乓球台。美国学生和其他外国学生也会对你乒乓球打得怎样很好奇。

Scene

场景

Brian is one of these curious American Chinese students. He wanted to play with Amy.

布莱恩就是这种好奇的美国出生的中国学生之一,他想要和艾米打一场。

Dialogue

对话

Brian: Hey, Amy, want to play Ping Pong?

布莱恩: 嗨, 艾米, 想打乒乓吗?

Amy: Sure, are you good?

艾米: 想啊, 你厉害吧?

Brian: I'm OK. Haven't played for years.

布莱恩: 还行, 好几年没打了。

Amy: Me too.

艾米: 我也是。

Brian: Do you play well? It's popular in China, right?

布莱恩: 你打得挺好吧? 乒乓在中国很流行, 是吧?

Amy: Yes, I think I'm pretty good.

艾米: 是, 我打得不错。

Brian: Wow, I'd better be careful.

布莱恩: 喔, 我要小心了。

Chapter Seven

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

You may think you are pretty good at Ping Pong, but some of the European or Indian students may beat you.

也许你觉得自己乒乓球打得不错，可是有些欧洲和印度的学生也许会打得过你。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① ping Pong: 乒乓球
- ② basement: 地下室

Patterns

句型

◆ ... haven't ...



◆ 还没有

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I haven't finished it yet.
- ◆ He hasn't got any competition.
- ◆ We haven't tried it.
- ◆ I haven't been there.



- ◆ 我还没有干完。
- ◆ 他还没有遇到过挑战。
- ◆ 我们还没有试过。
- ◆ 我没有去过那里。

Topic 8 Swimming

第八题 游泳

One of the differences between the Chinese kids and American kids is that most American kids swim, but most Chinese kids don't, especially in the North of China. It is partly because that China does not have many swimming pools, but it also reflects the way of Chinese parenting. The Chinese parents do not want the children to learn swimming. They are afraid something bad may happen. In the U.S., there are so many swimming classes, and the classes are well organized. Learning swimming is much safer.

中国小孩和美国小孩的区别之一就是大多数美国小孩会游泳,而大多数中国小孩不会,特别是在中国北部。部分的原因是中国没有很多游泳池,但是也反映了中国人教育孩子的方法问题。中国父母都不想让孩子去学游泳,害怕出事儿。在美国,有很多游泳学习班,组织得很好,学游泳也安全得多。

Scene

场景

Amy, like most Chinese students, does not swim. She wants to learn swimming very much. Again, she is asking Brian to be her coach.

艾米和大多数中国学生一样,也不会游泳。她很想学游泳。她再一次找到布莱恩做她的教练。

Dialogue

对话

Amy: Hey Brian, you got to teach me swimming.

Brian: Sure. I'm pretty good at it.

Amy: What style?

Brian: I can do front crawl or free style. I can also do frog. And a little butterfly.

艾米: 嗨,布莱恩,你得教我游泳。

布莱恩: 好啊,我游泳还行。

艾米: 会什么式的?

布莱恩: 我会前爬,也叫自由式。还会蛙泳。蝶泳会一点儿。

Chapter Seven

- Amy: Wow, you're really good. I can't wait to learn.
- Brian: Can you put your head into the water?
- Amy: Yes, I can, but not for long.
- Brian: That's OK. Do you know how to breathe?
- Amy: No. If I do, I can swim, right?
- Brian: Right. It's not as hard as you think. If you're willing to try, I can guarantee you to swim in a month.
- Amy: Really? I can't wait to get started.
- Brian: Let's go tonight.
- Amy: Yes!
- 艾米: 喔,你真行。我好想学哟。
- 布莱恩: 你能把头放水里吗?
- 艾米: 能,但是时间不长。
- 布莱恩: 没关系。会换气吗?
- 艾米: 不会,要是会的话,就能游了,是吧?
- 布莱恩: 说得对。事实上并不像你想像的那么难。要是你愿意学,我保证一个月让你会游泳。
- 艾米: 真的?我现在就想开始。
- 布莱恩: 我们今晚儿去吧。
- 艾米: 太好了!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

There are many swimming pools in the U.S., such as in high schools, universities, YMCA, and community centers. Most students in the swimming classes are from China and India.

美国有很多游泳馆,高中,大学,青年基督教协会和社区中心都有。学游泳的大多数是中国人和印度人。

Related Words and Phrases

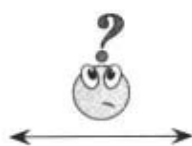
相关词语

- ① front crawl: 自由式,也叫 free style
- ② frog: 蛙泳
- ③ butter fly: 蝶泳
- ④ backstroke: 仰泳
- ⑤ YMCA: Youth Man Christian Association, 男青年基督教协会
- ⑥ YWCA: Youth Woman Christian Association, 女青年基督教协会

Patterns

句型

◆ It's not as ...

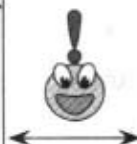


◆ 不像

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It's not as good as you promised.
- ◆ It's not as hard as I thought.
- ◆ It's not as fast as you told me.
- ◆ It's not as easy as it looks.



- ◆ 不像你答应过的那么好。
- ◆ 不像我想像的那么难。
- ◆ 不像你和我说的那么快。
- ◆ 不像看起来那么容易。

Chapter Eight Boy Friend and Girl Friend

第八章 男女朋友



Boy friend and girl friend are always of interest to people. Chinese is also curious about this aspect in American life. Americans have very different views from those of Chinese on this subject. They don't really care how many boy friends or girl friends one has, but they do not encourage more than one boy or girl friend at the same time. They view that as cheating as well. After marriage, they are quite serious about family and relationships. But if they feel the marriage is broken, they would divorce without hesitation. The rate of divorce is as high as 50% in the U.S..

男女朋友总是让人们感兴趣。中国人也对美国生活的这个方面比较好奇。美国人在这方面的观点和中国人大不相同。他们不太在乎一个人有过多少男女朋友,但是他们不赞成同时拥有多个男女朋友。他们认为这也是欺骗。结婚以后,他们对于家庭和夫妻关系也是比较重视的。但是如果感到过不下去时,他们也会果断离婚。美国人的离婚率达到百分之五十。

Topic 1 Going Out

第一题 约会

Dating is common in high schools in the U.S.. Usually it is the boy who asks the girl out. Dating activities include going to movies, having dinner, going out for a walk, and go dancing. Dating may or may not involve sex. But there is a legal age for young men and women to have sex. Having sex with youth under 17 is a crime.

约会在美国的高中里就很普遍了。通常都是男孩儿邀请女孩儿约会。约会时，他们会去看电影，吃饭，散步，还有跳舞。约会时也可能有性方面的活动。但是性事有法定的年龄，十七岁以下有性事是违法的。

Scene

场景

John and Lily are in the same high school. John likes Lily very much. He wanted to ask Lily out on a Friday night. During lunchtime, he approached Lily and tried to ask her out.

约翰和丽莉上同一个高中。约翰很喜欢丽莉。他想要在星期五晚上约丽莉出去。吃午饭的时候，他走近丽莉，试着邀请丽莉出去。

Dialogue

对话

John: Hi, Lily.

Lily: Hello, John. What's up?

John: It's Friday finally.

Lily: I know. So much work this week.

John: Yes. Any plans tonight?

Lily: Not really. You?

John: I was hoping that I could invite you for dinner tonight.

Lily: That would be lovely.

约翰：你好，丽莉。

丽莉：你好，约翰。怎么样？

约翰：终于到星期五了。

丽莉：是啊，这周功课真多。

约翰：是啊。今晚儿有安排吗？

丽莉：没什么安排。你呢？

约翰：我想今天晚上请你吃晚饭。

丽莉：那很好啊。

Chapter Eight

John: Great! I'm so glad that you
can go out with me.

Lily: My pleasure.

John: How about I pick you up at
seven o'clock?

Lily: That's good. You know where
my house is.

John: Yes. See you tonight.

Lily: See you.

约翰: 太好了! 你能和我出去玩儿
我真高兴。

丽莉: 我很愿意去。

约翰: 我七点钟接你怎么样?

丽莉: 好的。你知道我家住哪儿。

约翰: 知道。今晚儿见。

丽莉: 再见。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It was the first time that John asked Lily out. He approached her and started the conversation carefully. By asking Lily first if she had any plans, he naturally expressed his wish to ask her out. He finally fixed the date by confirming time and place to pick her up.

这是约翰第一次约会丽莉。他很小心地接近她,请她出去玩。他先问她有没有安排,就已经暗示了他想约会她。最后,他约定了接她的时间和地点,完成了整个约会的安排。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① dating: 约会
- ② pick up: (开车)接
- ③ pleasure: 高兴,愉快
- ④ have plans: 有安排
- ⑤ close call: 很危险的,差点儿出事的决定或行动

Patterns

句型

◆ Any ... ?

◆ That would be ...



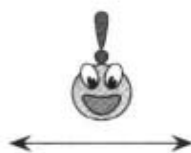
◆ 有 吗?

◆ 那将是

Substitute Exercise

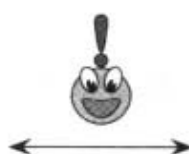
替换练习

- ◆ Any favorites?
- ◆ Any friends?
- ◆ Any recommendation?
- ◆ Any advice?



- ◆ 有喜欢的吗?
- ◆ 有朋友吗?
- ◆ 有要推荐的吗?
- ◆ 有好建议吗?

- ◆ That would be a smart move.
- ◆ That would be wonderful!
- ◆ That would be a close call.
- ◆ That would be great!



- ◆ 那将是聪明的一招儿。
- ◆ 那太妙了!
- ◆ 那将是个险招儿。
- ◆ 那太好了!

Topic 2 Going to Dinner

第二题 请吃饭

Going to dinner is one of the best ways to get close to your date. Dining together makes a close atmosphere like a family. It also provides an opportunity to have a dialogue in a relaxed environment. The first date almost always involves dinner.

吃饭是最好的亲近你的约会伙伴儿的方法之一，在一起吃饭营造出一种像家庭一样的亲密气氛，同时也提供了一个在轻松的环境里对话的机会。第一次约会几乎总是少不了吃饭。

Scene

场景

John picked Lily up, and they plan to go somewhere for dinner.

约翰开车接了丽莉，他们计划到什么地方去吃饭。

Dialogue

对话

John: Lily, you look so beautiful.

Lily: Thank you very much.

John: Where should we go for dinner?

Lily: How about the Italian Oven?

John: Good. I like that place.

Lily: Let's go.

John: All right!



约翰：丽莉，你真漂亮。

丽莉：非常感谢。

约翰：我们该到哪里去吃饭？

丽莉：去“意大利炉灶”怎么样？

约翰：好。我喜欢那个餐馆。

丽莉：我们去吧。

约翰：走！

(They drove to the Italian Oven, and followed the receptionist to the table.
他们开车到“意大利炉灶”，跟随迎宾员来到桌前坐下。)

Waitress: My name is Tracy. I will
be your server tonight.
Would you like some
drinks?

服务员：我叫翠西，我今晚儿为你们服务。你们想喝点儿什么？

American Interpersonal

English

Lily: I would have some water please.

Waitress: How about you?

John: I'll have a sprite. Lily, would you like some juice?

Lily: No. Water is fine.

Waitress: Are you ready to order?

Lily: Yes. I would have the seafood pasta.

Waitress: And you?

John: Great choice. I'll have the same.

Lily: Why don't you have something else and we can share.

John: Great idea. How about the grilled salmon?

Lily: Good choice. You were reading my mind.

John: Great minds think alike.

Waitress: Okay, seafood pasta and grilled salmon. I would bring your drinks right over.

丽莉: 我要点儿水吧。

服务员: 您呢?

约翰: 我要个雪碧。丽莉, 你要果汁吗?

丽莉: 不要。水就够了。

服务员: 你们选好菜了吗?

丽莉: 选好了。我要意大利海鲜面。

服务员: 您呢?

约翰: 选得很好。我也要一份儿同样的。

丽莉: 你怎么不要点儿别的, 我们可以一起吃。

约翰: 好主意, 烤三文鱼怎么样?

丽莉: 很好的选择, 你好像知道我心里在想什么。

约翰: 英雄所见略同。

服务员: 好的, 海鲜面, 烤三文鱼。我马上把你们的饮料送来。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

During a date, the boy should compliment the girl. John started with how beautiful Lily was, which made Lily feel good. He also asked Lily to pick the restaurant. When ordering, he let Lily order first. He also ordered the same dish to show that they like the same food. He changed when Lily suggested something different.

约会时, 男孩儿要赞美女孩儿。约翰在约会刚开始时就说丽莉多么漂亮, 让丽

Chapter Eight

莉感到很舒服。他还请丽莉选餐馆。当点菜时,他让丽莉先点。他还点了和丽莉一样的菜,来显示他们喜欢同样的食物。当丽莉建议他点别的菜时,他就改点了。

Related Words and Phrases

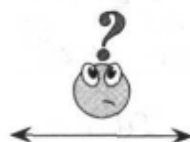
相关词语

- ① date: 日期, 约会
- ② seafood pasta: 意大利海鲜面
- ③ grilled salmon: 三文鱼, 即大马哈鱼
- ④ Italian oven: “意大利炉灶”, 美国宾夕法尼亚州的一家意大利连锁餐馆
- ⑤ kick somebody's ass: 教训某人

Patterns

句型

◆ Why don't you ...



◆ 你怎么不 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Why don't you go with me?
- ◆ Why don't you kick his ass?
- ◆ Why don't you fight back?
- ◆ Why don't you come here?



- ◆ 你跟我走好吧?
- ◆ 你怎么不教训他?
- ◆ 你怎么不反抗?
- ◆ 你来这里好不好?

Topic 3 Going to Movies

第三题 看电影

When dating, Americans like going to movies. They usually go to movies after having dinner. They would buy some soft drinks and popcorn when watching a movie. The movie tickets are not cheap, typically \$6-\$8 each.

美国人搞对象时,喜欢看电影。他们通常吃晚饭后去电影院。看电影时,他们会买些饮料和爆米花。电影票不便宜,一般要六到八块钱。

Scene 1

场景 1

John and Lily went to see "Titanic". It was a love story based on a true event. The Titanic was the fastest and largest ocean passenger ship built at that time. It hit an ice burger when traveling from Europe to the U.S.. Most passengers died in the incident. It was a dramatic movie.

约翰和丽莉去看“坦泰尼克号”,这是一个基于真实事件的爱情故事。坦泰尼克号是当时建造的一艘最快最大的远洋客轮,这艘客轮在从欧洲前往美国途中撞上浮冰,大多数旅客死于非命。电影很壮观。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

John: Lily, how do you like to go for a movie?

约翰:丽莉,想去看电影吗?

Lily: Great idea. I heard the Titanic was on.

丽莉:妙主意。我听说“坦泰尼克号”正在上演。

John: Let's go.

约翰:我们去吧。

Lily: Okay.

丽莉:好的。

(They came to the movie theater. John bought the tickets, two soft drinks and one big bucket of popcorn. They came into the room for Titanic. Each movie theater has 6 to 12 rooms for different movies. The movie

Chapter Eight

started after a few minutes. 他们来到电影院。约翰买了票,两杯饮料还有一大桶爆米花。他们到了“坦泰尼克号”的放映室。每个电影院有六到十二个放映室,上演不同的电影。过了几分钟,电影就开演了。)

John: I like Jack. He is cool.

约翰:我喜欢杰克。他很酷。

Lily: Yes. But I'm scared.

丽莉:是。可是我怪害怕的。

John: It's not real. Relax.

约翰:这不是真的,别紧张。

(*Lily grabbed John's hands.* 丽莉抓住了约翰的手。)

Lily: It's so scary.

丽莉:真可怕。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., movies are rated as different classes: G, PG, PG-13, R, XXX, and Un-rated. G means General Public, suitable for the whole family. PG means Parent Guidance, indicating that children need to be accompanied and guided by the parents for watching the movie. PG-13 means the same as PG, but the children watching the movie must be 13 years old and above. R means Restricted and for adults only. XXX are adult movies for people of 22 years and older and are only shown in adult theaters. Un-rated movies may contain more adult contents than movies rated R, and are not allowed to show in the movie theaters. They are usually rented as videotapes.

在美国,电影分为不同的等级:G,PG,PG-13,R,XXX和无级。G代表大众,一家人可以一起看。PG表示家长引导,即家长要和孩子一起看并加以引导。PG-13和PG一样,但是看电影的孩子要13岁以上。R是限制级,是只给成人看的电影。XXX是给22岁以上的成人看的电影,并且只在成人电影院上演。无级的影片可能有比R级影片更多的成人内容,是不允许在电影院上演的,通常作为录相带出租。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

① Titanic: 坦泰尼克号

② grab: 抓住,抓紧

③ scary: 吓人,恐怖

④ scared: 吓坏了

5 XXX Rated Movie: XXX 级电影

6 rating: 分级

7 relax: 放松, 别紧张

交

往

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

◆ ... is cool.



◆ 很酷。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ The zoo is cool.
- ◆ The party was cool.
- ◆ The wedding was cool.
- ◆ Your dad is cool.



- ◆ 动物园很酷。
- ◆ 派对很酷。
- ◆ 婚礼很酷。
- ◆ 你爸爸很酷。

Scene 2

场景 2

Mathew has two girl friends. He told Dan his secret.

迈休有两个女朋友。他告诉了丹他的秘密。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Mathew: Dan, do you have a girl friend? 迈休: 丹, 你有女朋友吗?

Dan: No. How about you? 丹: 没有。你呢?

Mathew: I have two. 迈休: 我有两个。

Dan: What? You have two girl friends? 丹: 什么? 你有两个女朋友?

Mathew: Yes. 迈休: 是啊。

Dan: Can I borrow one from you? 丹: 我借一个行不行?

Mathew: Ha-ha. No. 迈休: 哈哈, 不行。

Dan: You are not generous at all. 丹: 你一点儿也不大方。

Chapter Eight

Mathew: I can be generous on other things, but not my girl friends and my car.

Dan: I was just kidding. I perfectly understand you.

Mathew: But don't tell other people that I have two girl friends.

Dan: Why not? Do they mind?

Mathew: They do. Some guys don't even have one girl friend, and I have two. They'd be jealous of me.

Dan: I see. The guys like me.

Mathew: Actually, it may not be a good thing. I get into a lot of trouble.

Dan: What kind of trouble?

Mathew: We go to movies a lot. Sometimes, when we watch TV, I may say: "Oh, we have seen this movie." She would say: "We've never seen this movie. Did you go out with somebody else?"

Dan: It is really a problem. You should remember you went out for which movie with which girl friend.

Mathew: I don't have a memory that good.

Dan: Then, it's time for you to lend your girl friend to me. My offer is still good.

Mathew: In your dreams.

迈休: 别的东西可以大方点儿,但是我的女朋友和车不能大方。

丹: 我也就是开个玩笑,我很理解你。

迈休: 可是别告诉别人我有两个女朋友。

丹: 为什么? 别人会在意吗?

迈休: 会的。有些人一个女朋友也没有,我却有两个,他们会嫉妒的。

丹: 明白了,比如像我。

迈休: 实际上这不是什么好事,我也是麻烦多多。

丹: 什么麻烦?

迈休: 我们总去看电影。有时我们看电视时,我会说:啊,这是我们看过的电影。她会说:“我们从来没看过这个电影,你和别人看的吧?”

丹: 那真是有问题,你要记住和哪个女朋友看过哪个电影。

迈休: 我的记忆力没那么好。

丹: 那你真是该把你女朋友借给我。我的提议还没过期。

迈休: 做梦去吧。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交

As mentioned above, Americans may not be as free as most Chinese thought. Having more than one girl friend is not justified in the society. That is why Mathew made it a secret. You can have many girl friends, but one at a time.

如前所示,美国人并不像大多数中国人想像的那么随便,有多于一个女朋友在社会上也是不认同的,这也是为什么迈休把它当作一个秘密。你可以有很多女朋友,但是不能同时有几个。

往

的地道口语

Related Words and Phrases

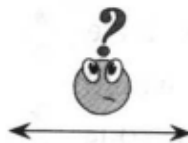
相关词语

- ① girl friend: 女朋友
- ② generous: 慷慨, 大方
- ③ perfectly: 完全, 非常
- ④ in your dreams: 做你的梦吧

Patterns

句型

- ◆ We ... a lot.
- ◆ It's time to ...

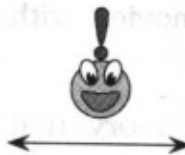


- ◆ 我们经常 ……。
- ◆ 是 …… 的时候了。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ We play basketball a lot.
- ◆ We went to the parks a lot.
- ◆ We travel a lot.
- ◆ We argue a lot.



- ◆ 我们经常打篮球。
- ◆ 我们经常去公园。
- ◆ 我们经常旅行。
- ◆ 我们经常吵架。

- ◆ It's time to find a new job.
- ◆ It's time to check in.
- ◆ It's time to go to dinner.
- ◆ It's time to call my mom.



- ◆ 该找个新工作了。
- ◆ 该办登机手续了。
- ◆ 该去吃晚饭了。
- ◆ 该给我妈妈打个电话了。

Topic 4 Taking a Trip

第四题 出游

Taking a trip with your girl friend is a nice thing to do. It is an opportunity to build up relationship. Usually, it would be the boy to arrange everything. In the U.S., people go on trips either driving or flying. Very few people take the train. The railroad in the U.S. got beat up by the highways long time ago, and never recovered because of the slow speed for long trips.

和女朋友出去旅行很惬意,这也是增进感情的好机会。通常,男孩子要安排各项事宜。在美国,大家开车或者乘飞机旅行,很少有人坐火车。美国的铁路很久以前就被高速公路打败了。由于速度慢,不宜长途旅行,铁路一直没有恢复元气。

Scene


场景

Sean is taking Joyce to a scenery mountain called The White Head in New Hampshire. They decided to drive from Boston. Joyce prepared some food like sausages, breads, and hams just in case. In general, Americans do not take much food when traveling. They like to sit down in a restaurant to have a nice dinner or have some fast food if they are in a hurry. Around 8:00 in the morning, Sean and Joyce got on the way.

尚要带乔伊斯去新汉布史尔的白头山风景区,他们决定从波士顿开车去。娇易思准备了香肠,面包,和火腿肉以防万一。通常,美国人旅行不带很多食物,他们喜欢在餐馆坐下来好好吃一顿或者没时间就吃快餐。八点钟左右,尚和娇易思出发了。

Dialogue

对话

Joyce: How long does it take to get there?  乔伊斯: 要多长时间能到?

Sean: Not too long, just two hours. 尚: 不长,只有两个小时。

Joyce: Good. Let me know if you 乔伊斯: 很好,要是开车需要帮

- need help driving.
- Sean: Are you kidding? I have no problem driving for eight hours.
- Joyce: You don't have to impress me. I'm your girl friend already.
- Sean: Well, I want to be attractive to you. Plus, you keep me on my toes.
- Joyce: That is good, isn't it?
- Sean: Sure. I love it.
- Joyce: You said that sarcastically.
- Sean: No, no, no. Not at all.
- Joyce: All right. Look! There is an amusement park ahead! Can we go and have some fun?
- Sean: Why not?
- Joyce: Great!
- 忙, 尽管说话。
- 尚: 开玩笑吧? 我开八个小时也没问题。
- 乔伊斯: 你不用再和我吹牛, 我已经是你的女朋友了。
- 尚: 啊, 我还是想对你有吸引力。再说了, 你总是让我没安全感。
- 乔伊斯: 那不是很好吗?
- 尚: 是是是, 我喜欢这样。
- 乔伊斯: 你说那话时好像有讽刺意味。
- 尚: 没有, 没有, 没有。一点儿也没有。
- 乔伊斯: 好吧。看, 前面有一个游乐场! 我们能去那儿玩儿吗?
- 尚: 为什么不去?
- 乔伊斯: 太好了!

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Needless to say, when going out with a girl friend, the boy does most of the work. It is also true in the U.S.. You can have fun on the trip, but one thing you never want to do is drunk driving.

不用说, 和女朋友出去, 大多要男孩子干事, 这在美国也是一样。出去玩儿可以尽兴, 但是有一件事不要做, 那就是醉酒驾车。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① keep one on his toes: 让某人小心翼翼
- ② amusement park: 游乐场
- ③ factory outlet: 工厂外销店

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Let me know if you need help ...
- ◆ Look! There is a ... ahead!



- ◆ 如果你需要帮忙 就告诉我。
- ◆ 看! 前面有个

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Let me know if you need help finding an apartment.
- ◆ Let me know if you need help registering.
- ◆ Let me know if you need help doing your homework.
- ◆ Let me know if you need help buying textbooks.



- ◆ 如果你需要帮忙找公寓就告诉我。
- ◆ 如果你需要帮忙注册就告诉我。
- ◆ 如果你需要帮忙做作业就告诉我。
- ◆ 如果你需要帮忙买课本就告诉我。

- ◆ Look! There is a deer ahead!
- ◆ Look! There is a factory outlet ahead!
- ◆ Look! There is a water park ahead!
- ◆ Look! There is a tunnel ahead!



- ◆ 看! 前面有头鹿!
- ◆ 看! 前面有个工厂外销店!
- ◆ 看! 前面有个水上游乐场!
- ◆ 看! 前面有个山洞!

Topic 5 Love at First Sight

第五题 一见钟情

Love at first sight does happen. It happens at different occasions. A man may meet his princess at the supermarket. A girl may run into her Mr. Right at a professional conference. It happens all the time, all occasions, and to anybody.

一见钟情在生活中确实发生,会发生在不同的场合。有的男人会在超市里遇见他的公主,有的女人会在专业会议上遇见她的白马王子。这种事情可能发生在任何人身上,任何时间和场合。

Scene

场景

John went to a workshop on Public Speaking. In the class, the instructor told everyone that the most important thing for public speaking was VEG. "V" represents "voice." "E" indicates "eye contact." "G" means "gesture." Then he wanted the students to practice in groups by telling a story of personal experience, focusing on VEG. John was with a group of people he just met. One of them was a girl who kept looking at John. John later found out her name was Cressida.

约翰去参加一个公众讲演的学习班。在课堂上,老师告诉大家公众讲演最重要的是 VEG。“V”是声调,“E”是目光接触,“G”是手势。然后老师让大家分组练习,讲一个自己的故事,注重 VEG。约翰在一个组里,大家都刚刚认识。其中有个女孩儿一直看着约翰。后来约翰知道了她的名字叫克蕊西妲。

Dialogue

对话

- | | | | |
|---------------|--|-----|--------------------|
| John: | Let me tell a story of my own. | 约翰: | 我来讲一个自己的故事。 |
| Group Leader: | Okay. | 组长: | 好的。 |
| John: | It was the summer of last year. I was applying for the Law | 约翰: | 那是去年的夏天。我在申请哈佛法学院。 |

Chapter Eight

School of Harvard.

Cressida: You must be very smart.

John: Thanks. I called the graduate school and knew I was admitted.

Cressida: Wow, great job!

John: But the admission letter got lost twice. I wanted to have this letter so badly, so I paid a courier to get the letter for me. Finally, I got the letter. And guess what?

Cressida: What was it?

John: The dean of the Graduate School did not sign the letter.

Cressida: Poor boy. But it was an interesting story.

John: Thanks for your attention.

Cressida: You are welcome. Does anyone want to go to dinner together (looking at John)?

John: Sure. I'll go.

Cressida: What kind of food do you like?

John: Anything. I'm quite open.

Cressida: How about Chinese?

John: Fine. I like Chinese.

Cressida: Great!

克慕西妲：你一定很聪明。

约翰：谢谢。我给研究生院打了电话，知道我被录取了。

克慕西妲：哇，好样的！

约翰：可是录取通知书邮丢了两次。我很想尽早拿到通知书，所以我雇了个快递公司去取通知书。最后我到底拿到了，你们猜怎么了？

克慕西妲：怎么了？

约翰：研究生院院长没在通知书上签名。

克慕西妲：可怜的孩子。可是你的故事很有意思。

约翰：谢谢你们倾听。

克慕西妲：不客气。有没有人想一起去吃晚饭（看着约翰）？

约翰：当然，我去。

克慕西妲：你喜欢什么风味的菜？

约翰：什么都行，我不挑。

克慕西妲：中国菜怎么样？

约翰：很好，我喜欢中国菜。

克慕西妲：太好了！

(John and Cressida had dinner together, and they got to know each other better over the dinner. After the dinner ...约翰和克蕊西姐一起吃了晚饭,其间他们互相增进了了解。吃完饭……)

Cressida: John, I need to practice with my presentation tomorrow. I always have some problem at one point. Would you come to my hotel room and help me?

John: Sure. I can be a good listener.

Cressida: No. I need you to be an advisor.

John: I will try my best.

Cressida: Thank you so much. Let's go.

克蕊西姐: 约翰, 我需要练习一下明天的讲演, 有个地方总是出毛病。你能到我旅馆房间里来帮帮我吗?

约翰: 当然可以。我是个很好的听众。

克蕊西姐: 不是, 我要你给我提建议。

约翰: 我会尽量做好。

克蕊西姐: 太谢谢你了。我们走吧。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Cressida and John met at the workshop. They liked each other. It seemed Cressida was taking the first move. It does not matter in the U.S. who is taking the first step. Cressida wanted to go to dinner with John, but she did not say it directly. She looked like asking everybody in the group, but she was only looking at John. John knew that she wanted to go to dinner with him, and he also liked Cressida, so he said yes. How it developed after the dinner would all depend on the feelings of the two people.

克蕊西姐和约翰在学习班里相遇, 他们都喜欢对方, 看上去克蕊西姐是主动的。在美国, 谁先主动没什么关系。克蕊西姐想要和约翰一起去吃饭, 但是她没有直接说出来。她看上去好像是在问组里的每一个人, 但是她看着约翰。约翰知道她想和他一起吃饭, 并且他也喜欢克蕊西姐, 所以他就答应了。在晚饭后再怎么发展就要看两个人的感觉了。

Related Words and Phrases

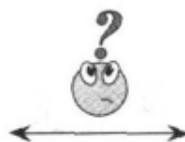
相关词语

- ① workshop: 学习班, 讲座
- ② Public Speaking: 公众讲演
- ③ admission letter: 录取通知书
- ④ courier: 快取快递公司
- ⑤ advisor: 顾问

Patterns

句型

◆ ... Guess what?



◆ 猜怎么样?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I got the grade report from school. Guess what?
- ◆ I went to register for three courses. Guess what?
- ◆ I called home today. Guess what?
- ◆ I met the Queen of our class. Guess what?



- ◆ 我拿到了成绩单, 猜怎么样?
- ◆ 我去要注册三门课, 你猜怎么样?
- ◆ 我今天给家里打了电话, 猜怎么样?
- ◆ 我今天见到我们班的女皇了, 猜怎么样?

Topic 6 Men and Women

第六题 男人女人

The relationship of men and women is one of the topics of curiosity. There are also a lot of slangs related to men and women. It is better to know some of the words than to be fooled by people.

男女之间是很多人好奇的话题之一,还有很多这方面的俚语。最好是知道这些词,免遭愚弄。

Scene 1

场景 1

Ming is a Chinese student who just came to the U.S. not long ago. This evening, he was reading the textbook in the graduate student office. Cressida and Joe were sitting next to him. He could not help hearing Cressida and Joe's talk.

明是不久前来到美国的中国留学生。这天晚上,他在研究生办公室看书。克蕊西姐和乔坐在他旁边。他不可避免地听到他们的谈话。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Joe: Some people are shy, and they don't have sex.

乔: 有些人很害羞,他们没有性行为。

Cressida: I know. I can't imagine that they don't have sex just because they are shy.

克蕊西姐: 我知道。我想像不出因为害羞就没有性。

Cressida: Do you know that Professor Smith does not want people to call him "Dick?"

克蕊西姐: 你知道史密斯教授不愿意让人叫他“迪克”吗?

Joe: Yes, I know. His first name is Richard, and he wants people to call him "Rick."

乔: 是,我知道。他的名是理查德,他愿意别人叫他“瑞克。”

Chapter Eight

Cressida: Right. "Dick" is fine with some people, but not with him.

Joe: I went to Tom's house the other day. Guess what, he wanted his girl friend to show me her "hooters."

Cressida: Really? You lucky guy.

Joe: Not so lucky. She refused, said we were asking the wrong person.

Cressida: Really?

Joe: Yes. Do you know Sherry?

Cressida: Yes, I do. Do you know her?

Joe: I know her very well.

Cressida: I know what you mean. Is she good?

Joe: She is very good.

Cressida: Why don't you go steady with her?

Joe: There are a lot of fish in the sea.

Cressida: You are bad.

Joe: Ming, are you listening to us?

Ming: No. I'm reading the book.

克蕊西妲: 对,对有些人“迪克”没什么,但他不行。

乔: 我那天去汤姆家了。你猜怎么样? 他让他女朋友给我看她的“呼特。”

克蕊西妲: 真的? 你挺运气啊。

乔: 没什么运气。她拒绝了,说我们找错人了。

克蕊西妲: 是吗?

乔: 是。你认识谢瑞吗?

克蕊西妲: 是,我认识。你认识她?

乔: 我和她很熟。

克蕊西妲: 我知道你什么意思。她好吗?

乔: 她很好。

克蕊西妲: 你为什么不和她固定下来?

乔: 海里有很多鱼。

克蕊西妲: 你挺坏的。

乔: 明,你在听我们说话吗?

明: 没有。我在看书。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

From late high school to college and graduate school, students date a lot. Theoretically, they should not have more than one partner at one time. But some people may experiment with different things. It is very dangerous because of STD.

从高中高年级到大学和研究生院,学生们交朋友。理论上,在一个时期只能有一个。但是有些人会实验不同的行为。由于性病,这是很危险的。

交往

的地道口语

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① hooters: (女性的) 胸
- ② go steady: 建立稳定的男女朋友关系
- ③ STD: Sexually transmitted disease. 性病

Patterns

句型

◆ Are you going to ...



◆ 你要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ Are you going to mess with me?

◆ Are you going to hate me?

◆ Are you going to go to school?

◆ Are you going to have lunch?



◆ 你要和我找麻烦吗?

◆ 你会恨我吗?

◆ 你会去学校吗?

◆ 你要去吃午饭吗?

Scene 2

场景 2

Ming has been very curious about the homosexuality in the western world. He asked Joe some questions.

明对西方世界的同性恋很好奇,他问了乔一些问题。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Ming: How do people here treat homos?



明: 这里人怎么对待同性恋者?

Joe: It depends. Some people tolerate them. Some view them no different than ordinary people. And some hate them.

乔: 不一定。有些人能容忍他们, 有些人认为他们和别人并无二致, 还有些人恨他们。

Ming: Does the law protect them?

明: 同性恋者受法律保护吗?

Joe: Yes. It's definitely not a crime. But only some of the states allow legal homosexual couples and provide the same benefits.

乔: 受法律保护。这当然不是犯罪, 但是只有几个州承认同性恋夫妻, 并给予他们合法待遇。

Ming: Have you seen homosexual people?

明: 你见过同性恋者吗?

Joe: You probably don't know. You can see them every day.

乔: 你可能不知道, 你天天能见到他们。

Ming: You mean in our department?

明: 你是说我们系里就有?

Joe: Yes. I once also ran into a big homosexual parade in DC. A lot of couples, man and man, woman and woman.

乔: 是啊。我还有一次在华盛顿碰到一个同性恋大游行。很多对恋人, 男的和男的, 女的和女的。

Ming: Let me get this straight. Man and man are called "gay," and woman and woman are called "lesbian," right?

明: 让我把这一点弄清楚, 男的和男的叫“盖”, 女的和女的叫“来子宾”, 对吗?

Joe: Right.



乔: 对。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

One of the best things in the U.S. is that people have different opinions. They like to think independently. Not everyone can come up with good ideas, but it does help to open up minds. That is why there were so many

inventions and innovations in the U.S.. Chinese may hold back their opinion if they are in doubt. But Americans would speak out. No idea is a stupid idea. No question is a stupid question.

在美国最好的一点就是人们可以有不同的观点,他们愿意独立思考。不是每个人都有好的想法,但是开阔思路没有坏处。这也是为什么美国有这么多发明和革新。中国人如果自己的想法不成熟的话,就可能不说出来,但美国人就会说出来。没有什么想法是愚蠢的想法,也没有什么是愚蠢的问题。

Even for the matter of homosexuality, people have their own opinions. Homosexuality at one time caused a lot of problems in the U.S. Army. President Clinton set up a rule: Don't ask, don't tell. It was still the best solution up till now.

即使是对同性恋,人们也都有自己的看法。同性恋有一时期在美国陆军中引起过很多问题。克林顿总统提出了一个原则:不要问,也不要说。至今为止,这还是最好的解决方法。

Related Words and Phrases

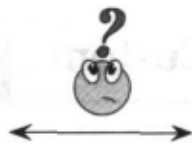
相关词语

- ① homosexuality: 同性恋, 名词
- ② homosexual: 同性恋, 形容词
- ③ gay: 男同性恋
- ④ lesbian: 女同性恋
- ⑤ homo: 同性恋, 名词简称
- ⑥ benefits: 待遇, 利益
- ⑦ get something straight: 弄明白某事, 把某事做对

Patterns

句型

- ◆ How do people here ...
- ◆ I once ...

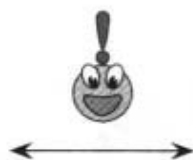


- ◆ 这里的人怎么
- ◆ 我有次

Substitute Exercise

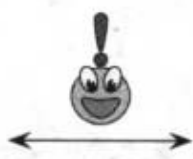
替换练习

- ◆ How do people here like China?
- ◆ How do people here have vacation?
- ◆ How do people here spend their leisure time?
- ◆ How do people here find jobs?



- ◆ 这里的人喜欢中国吗?
- ◆ 这里的人怎么度假?
- ◆ 这里的人怎么消闲?
- ◆ 这里的人怎么找工作?

- ◆ I once hit a deer.
- ◆ I once had a beautiful girl friend.
- ◆ I once lived in Shanghai.
- ◆ I once got my teacher surprised.



- ◆ 我有次撞了一只鹿。
- ◆ 我有过一个漂亮的女朋友。
- ◆ 我曾在上海住过。
- ◆ 我有次让老师吃了一惊。

交往

的地道口语

Chapter Nine Go to Movies and Shows

第九章 看电影看剧



Going to movie is a big thing in the U.S.. It is popular for every category of people, old and young, men and women, rich and poor, noble and humble. However, going to concert or opera is a different story. Only classic people go. In this chapter, let's introduce you to the entertainment life of Americans.

在美国看电影很流行。各个阶层的人都去,不管是男女老少,贫贱富贵。但是,去音乐会和歌剧院就是两回事了。只有上层人士会去。在这章里,我们来向您介绍美国人的娱乐生活。

Topic 1 Free Movies

第一题 免费电影

There is an American saying: Nothing is better than free. Free movies are getting more and more popular in the U.S.. On weekends, movie theaters offer some free old movies to attract more people to the theaters. Most of the time, it is the kids who go for these free movies. The parents get dragged to the theaters as well. Sometimes, the kids can watch one free children movie in one show room, and the parents would go to another movie in the same theater that is not free. But if the kids are underage (under 13), you can not leave them alone.

美国有个说法:最好是免费。免费电影在美国越来越流行了。周末时,电影院上映免费老电影来吸引顾客。大多数时是儿童要去看免费电影,家长也被拉着一起去。有时,小孩子在一个放映室看免费电影,大人在同一影院的另一个放映室看别的收费电影。但是小孩太小(13岁以下),必须有大人照看。

Scene

场景

John was taking his kids to the free movie on Sunday. Ming would like to go as well. Although the movie was old, it was new for Ming since he just came from China not long ago. So Ming went with John's family.

约翰要在星期天带他的小孩子去看免费电影。明也想一起去。尽管电影是老电影,对于明来说还是新的,因为他刚来美国不久。明就和约翰一家一起去了。

Dialogue

对话

Ming: Why do they have free movie?

John: It is a good way to bring the kids to the theater. The more the kids go to the theater, the more they want to go. It is



明: 为什么他们放免费电影?

约翰: 这是吸引小孩子看电影的好办法,小孩子越去越想去。这也是做广告的好机会。

also a good opportunity for commercials.

Ming: I see. Some of the movies have been on for long time. Do kids still like watching them?

John: You know kids. They can watch them a thousand times, over and over.

Ming: That's true. I was like that just a few years back.

John: You are a big kid.

Ming: How did you find out there were free movies here?

John: They send out flyers. It's also on the local newspaper.

Ming: Good. It's a good opportunity for learning English.

John: Yes. Try to listen. It takes long time to get used to the different accents.

Ming: That's for sure. By the way, would you like some popcorn or drinks?

John: See, that's another benefit for the theater to have free movies. They can sell a lot more popcorn and drinks. But I'm okay. I got them for the kids.

Ming: Theaters don't allow you to bring your own drinks, right?

John: You got that right. That's one way to make money.

明: 明白了。可是有些电影已经放好长时间了, 小孩子还要看吗?

约翰: 你知道小孩子, 他们一个电影能反复看, 看上一千遍。

明: 也是。我几年前也那样。

约翰: 你是个大孩子。

明: 你怎么知道这儿有免费电影?

约翰: 他们送广告, 当地的报纸上也登。

明: 挺好, 是学英语的好机会。

约翰: 是, 试着听。想要适应不同的口音要花很长时间。

明: 没错儿。对了, 想吃爆米花和喝饮料吗?

约翰: 看, 这是电影院放免费电影的另一个好处, 他们可以卖很多爆米花和饮料。但我不需要, 我给孩子们也买过了。

明: 电影院不许自带饮料, 是吧?

约翰: 猜对了, 那是赚钱的一个方法。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., you can see that if there is a way to make money, somebody must be working on it. In recent years, Chinese has learnt a lot of ways of doing business from the western world. There are also free shows in China just for commercial purposes.

在美国,你能看到如果有赚钱的方法,就一定会有人去做。最近,中国人也从西方世界学到了不少生意经,在中国也有一些商业性质的免费演出。

Related Words and Phrases

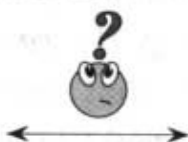
相关词语

- ① underage: 不够年龄的孩子,对不同的事情有不同的规定。比如 13 岁以下必须有大人照看,17 岁以下不能有性行为,21 岁以下不能喝酒等等。
- ② flyers: 传单式广告
- ③ accent: 口音
- ④ commercial: 名词: 广告。形容词: 商业的

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Try to ...
- ◆ See, ...

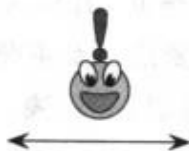


- ◆ 试着, 努力 ……
- ◆ 看, ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Try to get the job done.
- ◆ Try to extend the visa.
- ◆ Try to go to Shanghai.
- ◆ Try to focus on the details.



- ◆ 争取把活儿干完了。
- ◆ 试着延签证。
- ◆ 试图去上海。
- ◆ 争取在细节上下工夫。

- ◆ See, I told you.
- ◆ See, it's not easy.
- ◆ See, it's a fine day.
- ◆ See, you are glad you came along, right?



- ◆ 看,我早就和你说过。
- ◆ 看,这不太容易。
- ◆ 看,今天天气很好。
- ◆ 看,你跟我们来了很愉快吧? 对不对?

Topic 2 Old Movies

第二题 老电影

There are theaters for just old movies. Old movies are much cheaper than the new ones, costing one or two dollars. There are also old movie clubs that you can join. The more movies you see, the cheaper the tickets are. For people just come from China, the old movies are all new. It is not a bad idea to join those clubs. It certainly helps your English, and it is an entertainment at the same time.

有专门演老电影的电影院。老电影比新的便宜多了,只花一两块钱就可以了。还有老电影影迷俱乐部可以加入。看得越多,票价越便宜。对于刚从中国的人来说,老电影也都是新的。加入这种俱乐部也许是个不坏的主意。这当然会对你的英语有帮助,同时也会起到娱乐作用。

Scene

场景

Dan just got to the U.S. not long ago. One night, his roommate Hui wanted to go to an old movie with him. Dan went along. The movie was "Mask". It was about an ugly boy. He was so ugly that people thought he was wearing a mask when they first met him. However, his mother still loved him very much. It was starred by Cher, a famous Hollywood star. When they got to the theater, Hui bought two tickets with his club card. It was one dollar each.

丹不久前刚到美国。一天晚上,他的室友辉要和他去看老电影,丹去了。那天的电影是“面具”。是讲一个丑男孩儿,丑到人家第一次见到他时,都以为他带了一个面具。但是他的妈妈还是非常爱他。女主角是雪儿,很有名的好莱坞影星。他们到电影院时,辉用会员卡买了两张票,一元钱一张。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: The tickets are quite cheap.

丹:票挺便宜的。

Hui: Yes, because it's an old movie.

辉:是,因为是老电影,这里旧的东

Here anything old is cheap.

西都便宜。

Chapter Nine

Dan: I know, even if it is used only once.

Hui: I once saw a movie. The hero in the movie said everything of his was used. Used car, used house, and used wife.

Dan: He's funny. Do you always need the club card to go to old movies?

Hui: Not at all. Actually most old movie theaters don't require membership cards.

Dan: I see. Then why did you get a card?

Hui: I can accumulate points and get free movies after a while.

Dan: That's even better.

Hui: Yes. The more movies you go, the more savings you get, and the more money you spend.

Dan: That's how the market economy works. But it's the same in China now.

Hui: Yes. They learned pretty fast.

Dan: How did you like the movie today?

Hui: I like it, a striking story.

Dan: I like the way the boy drank the orange juice, right from the big one gallon bottle.

Hui: Right, like a man. We should try that too.

Dan: Must feel a good thirsty quench.

Hui: Guess so!

丹:我知道,即使是只用过一次。

辉:我有次看过一个电影,里面有个家伙说他的东西都是二手的。二手的车,二手的房子,还有二手的老婆。

丹:他挺逗的。看老电影总是需要用俱乐部卡吗?

辉:不是,实际上大多数放映老电影的电影院都不要买会员卡。

丹:我知道了,可是那你为什么弄了个卡?

辉:我可以积累分数,过一段时间会得到免费电影票。

丹:那更好了。

辉:是啊,电影看得越多,就越省钱,花的钱也就越多。

丹:这就是市场经济的方式。可是现在中国也是一样了。

辉:是啊,他们学得很快。

丹:你喜欢今天的电影吗?

辉:我喜欢。一个动人的故事。

丹:我喜欢那孩子喝橙汁的方式,直接从大桶里喝。

辉:是,挺有男人气的,我们也该试试。

丹:一定很解渴。

辉:我猜是!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交往

的地道口语

Some of the old movie theaters are also called Dollar-Theater. Hui and Dan enjoyed the old movie. Inside the theaters, people don't talk much. If you definitely need to talk, you can whisper to your party.

有些老电影院也叫“一元钱影院”。辉和丹都觉得他们看的老电影挺好看。在影院里,很少有人讲话,如果你必须说话,可以对同伴耳语。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

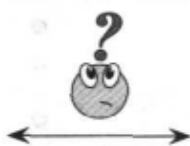
- ① used car: 二手车
- ② used house: 旧房子
- ③ mask: 面罩, 面具
- ④ membership card: 会员卡
- ⑤ Cher: 雪儿, 好莱坞的明星, 近来拍的电影不多了
- ⑥ striking: 动人的, 感人的
- ⑦ market economy: 市场经济
- ⑧ pretty: 副词: 很。形容词: 漂亮

Patterns

句型

◆ The more ..., the ...

◆ That's pretty ...



◆ 越 越

◆ 那很

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ The more you do, the more chances you can make mistakes.

◆ The more the merrier.

◆ The more you practice, the easier it gets.

◆ The more you look, the harder to pick.



◆ 你做得越多, 犯错误的机会也越多。

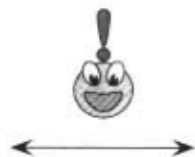
◆ 人越多越快乐。

◆ 越练习, 就越容易。

◆ 越挑越花眼。

Chapter Nine

- ◆ That's pretty funny.
- ◆ That's pretty good.
- ◆ That's pretty interesting.
- ◆ That's pretty scary.



- ◆ 那很滑稽。
- ◆ 那很好。
- ◆ 那很有意思。
- ◆ 那很吓人。

Topic 3 New Shows

第三题 新电影

New movies are quite expensive in the U.S., about \$8 per person. There are discounts for kids, and senior citizens. However, it is also becoming expensive in China. To watch a new movie in Shanghai or Beijing may cost as much as in the U.S..

新电影在美国很贵,大概八块钱一张票。小孩儿和老人可以买减价票。可是现在中国电影票也不便宜,在上海或北京看一场电影和在美国差不多。

Scene


场景

This time, Hui and Dan went to a new movie. It was a Harry Potter movie.

这次,辉和丹去看新电影,是个哈利·波特电影。

Dialogue

对话

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------|
| Dan: Hui, why did you want to watch a new movie this time? |  | 丹: 辉,这次为什么看新电影了? |
| Hui: This Harry Potter movie is on the commercial for so long. Everybody is talking about it. | | 辉: 这个哈利·波特电影做了好长时间广告,每个人都在谈论它。 |
| Dan: So you got interested. | | 丹: 所以你感兴趣了。 |
| Hui: Right. Although it costs eight bucks, I think it's worth it. | | 辉: 是。虽然要花八块钱,我想值得。 |
| Dan: Absolutely. I want to see it too. | | 丹: 当然,我也想看。 |
| Hui: Did you notice there are a lot of young couples? | | 辉: 你注意到了吗? 有很多年轻伴侣。 |
| Dan: Yes, I did. Seems like they | | 丹: 是,我注意到了。看起来他们像 |

Chapter Nine

are dating.
 Hui: Looks like. We should have brought a couple of girls.
 Dan: We need to work on it. Don't we?
 Hui: You are perfectly right.
 Dan: Did you know that the lady who wrote the Harry Potter books made millions?
 Hui: How could I not know? This is such a legendary success story.
 Dan: Right. I hope it happens to me.
 Hui: Keep dreaming.

在谈恋爱。
 辉: 看着像。我们应该带两个女孩儿来。
 丹: 我们要努力了, 是吧?
 辉: 你说得很对。
 丹: 你知道写哈利·波特的女士成了百万富翁了?
 辉: 我咋能不知道呢? 这是个如此传奇的成功范例。
 丹: 是啊, 希望我也有那么一天。
 辉: 继续做梦吧。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Before a new movie comes out, there are a lot of commercials about it. The new movie usually comes out on a Friday to attract more people. People dating go to new movies, which is more enjoyable. A British lady named J.K. Rowling wrote the Harry Potter books. She had been very poor, and became very rich by publishing the books.

在一个新电影上映之前,总是有很多广告。新电影通常在周五上映来多吸引一些观众。谈朋友的人都是去看新电影,更有趣一些。哈利·波特书是一个英国女士叫杰·凯·柔玲写的。在此之前她很穷,出书后变得非常富有。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Harry Potter: 哈利·波特, 是杰·凯·柔玲所著书中的主人公。
- ② bucks: 美元, Dollar 的俚语叫法。
- ③ legendary: 传奇式的
- ④ absolutely: 绝对地
- ⑤ perfectly right: 完全正确
- ⑥ caught up: 赶上进度

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Did you notice that ...
- ◆ How can I ...
- ◆ I hope ...



- ◆ 你注意到 ……
- ◆ 我怎样才能 ……
- ◆ 我希望 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Did you notice that Cathy changed her hairstyle?
- ◆ Did you notice that Jane was not coming to the class any more?
- ◆ Did you notice that Jack was late this morning?
- ◆ Did you notice that our office space got smaller?



- ◆ 你注意到凯西改变了发型吗?
- ◆ 你注意到珍不再来上课了吗?
- ◆ 你注意到杰克今天早晨迟到了吗?
- ◆ 你注意到我们的办公空间变小了吗?

- ◆ How can I forget?
- ◆ How can I remember so many things?
- ◆ How can I have this done so quickly?
- ◆ How can I achieve the impossible?



- ◆ 我怎么能忘呢?
- ◆ 我怎么能记住这么多事儿?
- ◆ 我怎么能尽快干完这件事儿呢?
- ◆ 我怎么能实现这不可能的事呢?

- ◆ I hope you are satisfied now.
- ◆ I hope you got enough to do.
- ◆ I hope everything is caught up.
- ◆ I hope there is no regret.



- ◆ 我希望你现在满意了。
- ◆ 我希望你有足够的事情做。
- ◆ 我希望一切都赶上进度了。
- ◆ 我希望不会后悔。

Topic 4 Rent a Tape

第四题 租录像带

Renting tapes is a good alternative to going to movies. It is much cheaper and you can enjoy them at home. The only inconvenience is that you have to return them afterwards. Renting an old movie is just one or two dollars. New movie (released as tapes after being shown in the theaters for a while) is a little more expensive.

租录像带是代替去影院的一种方法。这样便宜多了,又可以在家享用。惟一的不便是过后要还带子。租旧电影录像带只要一两块钱,新电影(要在影院上映一段时间以后才有)录像带稍微贵一点儿。

Scene

场景

Dan decided to rent some tapes for the weekend. He came to Family Video.

丹决定周末租一些录像带。他来到“家庭录像”店。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: Can we get a membership card?



丹: 我能办个会员卡吗?

Clerk: Sure. Just fill out this form with your name, telephone number and address.

店员: 当然。只要在这张表上填上你的姓名、电话号码和住址。

Dan: Thanks. Do I need to have some deposit?

丹: 谢谢,需要交押金吗?

Clerk: No.

店员: 不要。

Dan: How much is it to rent a

丹: 租录像带多少钱?

American Interpersonal

English

tape?

Clerk: One dollar for old movies for two nights, and two dollars for new movies for two nights.

Dan: How do you count the nights?

Clerk: Before midnight.

Dan: How do I return at night?

Clerk: There is a drop box outside, and you can always return the tapes there.

Dan: Thanks a lot.

Clerk: You are welcome.

店员: 旧电影一块钱两晚上, 新电影两块钱两晚上。

丹: 几晚上是怎么算的?

店员: 午夜之前。

丹: 夜间我怎么还带子?

店员: 外面有个信箱, 你可以还到那里。

丹: 非常感谢。

店员: 不客气。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., there are big international video store chains like Blockbuster. They have large selections, but they are expensive. Smaller local chains like Family Video have much lower prices and some free movies. You can also go to the community or university libraries to rent free videotapes.

在美国, 有很大的录像带连锁店像“伯劳克巴斯特”。它们有很多选择, 但是很贵。小录像带连锁店像“家庭录像”店就便宜多了, 还有免费录像带。你也可以去社区和大学图书馆借免费录像带。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Family Video: “家庭录像”, 一家美国较小的录像带连锁店。
- ② Blockbuster: “伯劳克巴斯特”, 一家美国很大的录像带连锁店。
- ③ fill out the form: 填表
- ④ drop Box: 信箱, 回收箱

Patterns

句型

◆ Can I get a ...

◆ May I ...



◆ 我可以得到一个

◆ 我可以

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ Can I get a ticket?

◆ Can I get a hot dog?

◆ Can I get a napkin?

◆ Can I get a business card of yours?



◆ 我能买张票吗?

◆ 我能买个热狗吗?

◆ 我能要张餐巾纸吗?

◆ 和你要张名片好吗?

◆ May I ask when we are boarding?

◆ May I borrow your telephone?

◆ May I use the restroom?

◆ May I ask your permission for vacation?



◆ 我可以问一下我们什么时候登机吗?

◆ 我可以借用一下你的电话吗?

◆ 可以用一下洗手间吗?

◆ 我可以请求你的批准去度假吗?

Topic 5 Symphony Concert

第五题 交响乐

Going to symphonies is definitely something for highclass people. It costs \$30-\$50 for each ticket. Some people buy season tickets that allow them to go to a series of performance for the year. The conductor is usually a famous guy. He talks inbetween each music chapter, telling jokes or personal stories. One thing to be careful is that once the music starts, you are not allowed to go to your seat until the next break. There are drinks and wines available in the lounge.

去听交响乐无疑是上层人士的娱乐。一张票要 30 到 50 美元。有些人购买季票,这一年的系列表演他们都可以去看。乐队指挥通常是由名人担当,在每一乐章之间他会讲一些笑话或者亲身的经历。要注意的是,一旦音乐响起来了,就不准再入席了,要等到中间休息时才能再进去。在大厅里有酒水供应。

Scene

场景

John went to a concert with his girl friend Cathy. It was a performance by the Detroit Orchestra.

约翰和他的女朋友凯西去听音乐会,是底特律交响乐团演出的。

Dialogue

对话

John: Would you like some drinks?

约翰: 你想喝点儿什么吗?

Cathy: A glass of white wine would be great.

凯西: 有一杯白葡萄酒就太好了。

John: I will be right back.

约翰: 我马上就回来。

(John bought some drinks and returned to Cathy. 约翰买了饮料回到凯西身边。)

Chapter Nine

John: Here you go.

Cathy: Thanks. Have you been to any of the Detroit Orchestra performances?

John: No. This is the first time.

Cathy: Oh. Is the conductor good?

John: I heard he was pretty good. We will find out soon.

Cathy: Yes. Let's go.

约翰: 给你。

凯西: 谢谢, 你以前看过底特律交响乐团的演出吗?

约翰: 没有, 这是第一次。

凯西: 噢, 这个指挥好吗?

约翰: 听说挺行的, 一会儿我们就知道了。

凯西: 是啊, 走吧。

(They finished their drinks and found their seats. There was a program sheet handed to them by the clerk. The performance began. After the performance, they continued their conversation. 他们喝完了酒, 找到了自己的座位。服务员给了他们一张节目单。演出开始了。演出结束后, 他们又聊了起来。)

John: How did you like it?

Cathy: The classical chapters were fine, but the one composed by him was not quite in harmony.

John: I thought so too. He might be a good conductor, but not a good composer yet.

Cathy: Right.

约翰: 你觉得怎么样?

凯西: 古典音乐演奏得挺好的, 但是他自己写的那个曲子不太和谐。

约翰: 我也有同感。他也许是个好指挥, 但不是个好作曲家。

凯西: 是。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Going to the symphony concert, you need to dress up a little bit. There should be absolutely no chatting during the performance. Don't be late to return to your seat. If the performance already started, the service clerk may stop you from going back to your seat.

去交响乐音乐会, 要在衣着上打扮一下。演出时绝对不能说话, 入席不要迟到。要是演出开始了, 服务员会禁止你入席。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交往的地道口语

- ① symphony: 交响乐
- ② orchestra: 交响乐团
- ③ conductor: 指挥
- ④ composer: 作曲家
- ⑤ classical music: 古典音乐
- ⑥ concert: 音乐会
- ⑦ nerd: 神经兮兮的人

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Would you like some ...
- ◆ I heard that he ...



- ◆ 您想来点儿 ……
- ◆ 听说他 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Would you like some cake?
- ◆ Would you like some coffee?
- ◆ Would you like some beer?
- ◆ Would you like some wine?



- ◆ 您想要点儿蛋糕吗?
- ◆ 您想来点儿咖啡吗?
- ◆ 您想来点儿啤酒吗?
- ◆ 您想来点儿葡萄酒吗?

- ◆ I heard that he worked hard.
- ◆ I heard that he was a great writer.
- ◆ I heard that he was not bad.
- ◆ I heard that he was a nerd.



- ◆ 听说他工作很努力。
- ◆ 听说他是个很好的作家。
- ◆ 听说他不错。
- ◆ 听说他神经兮兮的。

Topic 6 Las Vegas Shows

第六题 拉斯维加斯表演

Las Vegas is the largest of the three major casino cities in the U.S.. The other two are Atlantic City and Reno. All three cities have shows in the hotels. There are various kinds of shows. Some are for adult only, including nudity. Some are for family entertainment. But even the ones for family, they could have some nudity involved. Some of the entertainers may wear bikinis, or may even be topless.

拉斯维加斯是美国三大赌城之首,另外两个是大西洋赌城和雷诺。三个赌城都在酒店赌场里有表演。表演多种多样,有些是仅供成人的,比较暴露,有些是给合家观赏的。但是即使是给合家观赏的,也可能有裸体的情形。有些表演者身着比基尼泳装,或者甚至上身裸露。

Scene 1

场景 1

John went to Las Vegas on a bus trip from Los Angeles. On the bus, he asked the tour guide how he could go to the shows.

约翰从洛杉矶乘大客车到了拉斯维加斯。在车上,他问导游怎样去看表演。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

John: Hello.

Tour Guide: Hi. How can I help you?

John: I would like to go to a show in Vegas.

Tour Guide: What kind of show?

John: Well, you know, that kind of show.

Tour Guide: Oh, I see. I can have



约翰: 您好。

导游: 您好,需要帮忙吗?

约翰: 我想在维加斯看看表演。

导游: 哪一种表演?

约翰: 噢,你知道,那种表演。

导游: 哦,我懂了。我会让大客车

American Interpersonal

English

	the bus stop at the hotel for that kind of shows, and you can buy the ticket yourself		停在有那种表演的酒店前, 你可以自己买票。
John:	Good.		约翰: 好的。
Tour Guide:	If I'm not mistaken, you are not from LA.		导游: 要是我没搞错的话, 您不是洛杉矶本地人。
John:	Right.		约翰: 对了。
Tour Guide:	Would you like to have a tour of the Grand Canyon? I can send you by a helicopter.		导游: 你想去大峡谷看看吗? 我可以 用直升机送你去。
John:	No. I don't want to go there.		约翰: 不, 我不想去哪儿。
Tour Guide:	Okay. That's fine. I'll take you to the show.		导游: 好的, 没关系。我带你到表演的地方去。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The Tour Guide was good at seeking for business. He offered John to go on the Grand Canyon tour.

导游很会找生意, 他建议带约翰去大峡谷旅游。

Related Words and Phrases

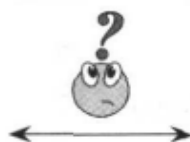
相关词语

- ① show: 表演
- ② Vegas: 维加斯, 拉斯维加斯的简称

Patterns

句型

◆ If I'm not mistaken,

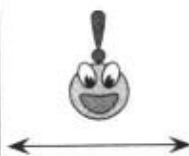


◆ 要是我没搞错的话,

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ If I'm not mistaken, you are John Smith.
- ◆ If I'm not mistaken, you are over six feet.
- ◆ If I'm not mistaken, Steven quit the school.
- ◆ If I'm not mistaken, our sales went over sixteen billion dollars last year.



- ◆ 要是我没搞错的话，你是约翰·史密斯。
- ◆ 要是我没搞错的话，你有六英尺多高。
- ◆ 要是我没搞错的话，斯蒂文退学了。
- ◆ 要是我没搞错的话，我们的销售去年超过了一百六十亿美元。

Scene 2

场景 2

The Betty family went to a family show in Las Vegas. She was with Jim and the two kids. However, the show was not quite for small family members. In the middle of the show, a group of topless girls got on the stage. Betty covered the kids' eyes with her hands, and was mad at Jim.

贝蒂全家在拉斯维加斯看一个合家观赏的表演，她和吉姆以及两个孩子都去了。但是，那个表演不太适合儿童。表演中，一群上身裸露的姑娘上了台。贝蒂用双手蒙住孩子们的眼睛，对吉姆大发脾气。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Betty: Did you say this was a family show?

Jim: Yes. That's what I was told.

Betty: What a family show is this?

Jim: I don't know. We don't have to watch it.



贝蒂：你不是说这是适合于家庭的表演吗？

吉姆：是啊，他们是这么告诉我的。

贝蒂：这是什么适合于家庭的表演？

吉姆：我不知道，我们不必看这个。

Betty: We'd better go.

Jim: Come on, kids. Let's go.

Kids: Okay.



贝蒂: 我们最好离开。

吉姆: 快点儿, 孩子。我们走。

孩子们: 好吧。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

American families are worried about the kids who get bad influence. There are many reasons to worry because of the temptation of money, sex and drugs.

美国家庭顾虑孩子们会受不良影响。这种顾虑不是杞人忧天, 因为钱、性和毒品都有很大的诱惑力。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① family show: 适合于家庭的表演
- ② temptation: 诱惑
- ③ drugs: 毒品

Patterns

句型

◆ I was told that ...



◆ 有人告诉我

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I was told that we would leave here at 8:00 tomorrow morning.
- ◆ I was told that Professor Lee would no longer teach Social Studies.
- ◆ I was told that John joined our team.
- ◆ I was told that tomorrow would be the grand opening of the new Wal Mart.



- ◆ 有人告诉我明天早晨八点我们离开这里。
- ◆ 有人告诉我李教授不再教“社会研究”了。
- ◆ 有人告诉我约翰加入我们组了。
- ◆ 有人告诉我明天是新沃尔玛隆重开张。

Chapter Ten Go to Weddings and Funerals

第十章 红白喜事



Weddings and funerals are the emotional events. If you need to attend those, you'd better get familiar with the American customs. It is actually one major aspect of life. This chapter is an important lesson for interpersonal English.

婚事和丧事都是动感情的时候。如果你需要参与这种场合的话,最好是搞清楚美国人的习惯。这实际上是生活中很重要的一面。这章是和美国人交往的重要一课。

交

Topic 1 Invited to a Wedding

第一题 受邀参加婚礼

往

的地道口语

In the U.S., it is the bride's family who need to host the wedding. It is just opposite of the Chinese custom. The parents of the bride need to prepare everything for the wedding, spending huge amount of money if they want to get a decent wedding. If you have a daughter, you'd better get her married in China instead of in the U.S.. It is also the responsibility of the bride's side to send out invitations to the guests.

在美国,新娘一方要主办婚礼。这和中国习俗正相反,新娘的父母要准备婚礼的各项事宜。要是他们想要一个像样儿的婚礼,就要花费巨资。如果你有女儿的话,你最好让她在中国而不是在美国结婚。给宾客发送请柬也是新娘方面的事。

Scene

场景

Dan was invited to the wedding of one of his colleagues. He was not quite sure what to do. He found Lamar and tried to get some answers.

丹的一个同事请他去参加婚礼,他不太清楚要做什么。他找到乐玛来问问。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: Hey, Lamar.

Lamar: Hello, Dan. What's up?

Dan: Sam asked me to attend his wedding.

Lamar: Good for you. I'm jealous.

Dan: Why?

Lamar: He didn't ask me. I'm not his good friend.

Dan: No. It's nothing like that. But I do have a few



丹: 嗨,乐玛。

乐玛: 你好,丹,有什么事?

丹: 山姆请我去参加他的婚礼。

乐玛: 好事儿啊,我嫉妒了。

丹: 为什么?

乐玛: 他没请我,我不是他的好朋友。

丹: 不是那么回事儿。可是我确实有些问题不明白。

Chapter Ten

questions.

Lamar: Shoot.

Dan: What should I buy for a gift?

Lamar: You need to ask him what they need.

Dan: Is it okay if I ask him?

Lamar: That's perfectly fine.

Dan: What should I wear on the wedding?

Lamar: A suit would be fine, with dress shoes.

Dan: Do I need to bring a partner?

Lamar: No. The number of people invited is fixed. And you should not bring somebody else unless being asked to do so.

Dan: Okay. Now I'm clearer on this wedding stuff. Thanks a lot.

Lamar: You are welcome.

乐玛: 说吧。

丹: 我该买什么样的礼物呢?

乐玛: 你应该问问他, 他们需要什
么。

丹: 我直接问他好吗?

乐玛: 没问题。

丹: 去婚礼我该穿什么衣服啊?

乐玛: 西服就可以了, 要穿皮鞋。

丹: 我要带个伴儿吗?

乐玛: 不需要。参加婚礼的总人数
是定了的, 如果没有请你带
人去的话, 就不应该带。

丹: 好的, 现在我对婚礼的事儿
清楚了一些, 非常感谢。

乐玛: 不客气。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The wedding is usually planned and executed by the wedding company. The wedding is charged based on the headcount. So the number of people attending is fixed before the wedding.

婚礼通常是婚礼公司计划和举办的, 婚礼的费用是按人头计算的, 所以参加的人数是在婚礼前就确定了的。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

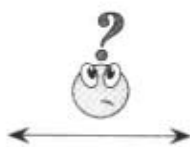
① headcount: 人头数

② partner: 伴, 伙伴

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Sam asked me to ...
- ◆ What should I ...
- ◆ You need to ...



- ◆ 山姆请我去
- ◆ 我应该 什么?
- ◆ 你需要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Sam asked me to give him a ride.
- ◆ Sam asked me to attend the meeting.
- ◆ Sam asked me to give you a call.
- ◆ Sam asked me to talk it over with you.



- ◆ 山姆要搭我的车。
- ◆ 山姆请我去参加会议。
- ◆ 山姆让我给你打个电话。
- ◆ 山姆让我和你讨论一下这件事儿。

- ◆ What should I do?
- ◆ What should I buy him?
- ◆ What should I wear?
- ◆ What should I tell him?



- ◆ 我应该做什么?
- ◆ 我应该给他买点儿什么?
- ◆ 我应该穿什么?
- ◆ 我应该告诉他什么?

- ◆ You need to talk to him.
- ◆ You need to get this fixed.
- ◆ You need to give him some advice.
- ◆ You need to buy him a gift.



- ◆ 你需要和他说说。
- ◆ 你要把这个修好。
- ◆ 你需要给他一些忠告。
- ◆ 你要给他买个礼物。

Topic 2 Buying Gifts

第二题 买礼物

Buying a gift for a wedding is actually much easier than most of us thought. The bride and the groom would set up an account with a department store. They would list what they want for gifts, and you can just go there and pick the one you think appropriate.

给结婚的人买礼物实际上比我们大多数人想像的要容易。新娘和新郎会在一个商场开一个账户,把自己想要的东西列在那里。你可以到那个商场挑选一件你认为合适的礼物。

Scene

场景

Dan was still thinking about the gift he wanted to buy for Sam's wedding. So he went to ask Sam.

丹还在考虑要给山姆买结婚礼物的事儿,所以他去问山姆。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: Hello, Sam.

Sam: Hi, Dan.

Dan: Thanks for the invitation to your wedding.

Sam: Sure. You are one of my best friends. Hope you can make it.

Dan: Yes. I want to buy you a gift. What do you guys need?

Sam: Oh, thank you. We opened an account with Sears. You can pick one of the items on the list.



丹: 你好,山姆。

山姆: 你好,丹。

丹: 谢谢你请我参加你的婚礼。

山姆: 不客气。你是我最好的朋友之一,希望你能来。

丹: 当然。我想给你买个礼物,你们需要什么?

山姆: 噢,谢谢你。我们在西洱姿开了个账户,你可以在单子上选一个。

American Interpersonal

English

Dan: I just need to mention your name, and they would know, right?

Sam: Right. It's very simple.

Dan: Thanks a lot. It's much easier than I thought.

Sam: We are lazy. This is one way to save time and effort.

Dan: Right. I'll see you at the wedding.

Sam: Thanks. Bye!

Dan: Bye-bye!

丹: 我提你们的名字,他们就知道,对吧?

山姆: 对,非常简单。

丹: 谢谢,比我想像的要容易多了。

山姆: 我们很懒,这是个省时省力的办法。

丹: 对。我们婚礼上见。

山姆: 谢谢,再见!

丹: 再见!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Sears is one of the large department store chains in the U.S.. Sears and other stores put the business information into their touch screen computer system. You can get the list of items needed by the marrying couple yourself.

西洱姿是美国的一个大连锁百货商场之一。西洱姿和其他一些商场都把商务信息储存到指按屏幕计算机里,你可以直接看到要结婚的人需要的物品清单。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① bride: 新娘
- ② groom: 新郎
- ③ mall: 购物中心

Patterns

句型

- ◆ You just need to ...
- ◆ I'll see you at ...



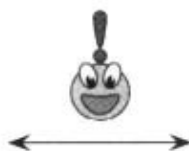
- ◆ 你只要
- ◆ 见

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

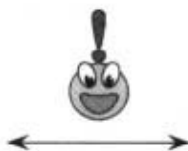


- ◆ You just need to get rid of him.
- ◆ You just need to be happy.
- ◆ You just need to relax.
- ◆ You just need to give it a shot.



- ◆ 你只需要把他甩掉。
- ◆ 你只需要高兴一点儿。
- ◆ 你只需要放松下来。
- ◆ 你只需要试着干一把。

- ◆ I'll see you at work.
- ◆ I'll see you at school.
- ◆ I'll see you at the restaurant.
- ◆ I'll see you at the mall.



- ◆ 咱们班儿上见。
- ◆ 咱们学校见。
- ◆ 咱们餐馆见。
- ◆ 咱们购物中心见。

Topic 3 Attending a Wedding

第三题 参加婚礼

Wedding is a big deal in everybody's life. In the U.S., wedding is usually held in a church. A reception and a dinner then follow. A dancing party is held after the dinner. Then the newly weds would head for their honeymoon.

结婚是人生的大事。在美国,婚礼通常是在教堂里举行的,然后有招待会和婚宴,婚宴后还有舞会,然后新婚夫妇就去度蜜月了。

Scene

场景

As mentioned above, Dan was invited to Sam's wedding. He arrived at the church as indicated on the wedding invitation. Some of the colleagues were already there. One of them is Mike. Dan started chatting with Mike.

如上所述,丹应邀参加山姆的婚礼。他按请柬上指定的时间到达了教堂,有些同事已经早到了。其中有一个是迈克,丹和迈克聊了起来。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: Hi, Mike.

Mike: Hello, Dan.

Dan: Have you seen Sam?

Mike: No, not yet.

Dan: He must be busy.

Mike: I guess. Actually the bride should be busier.

Dan: Oh. What does she have to do?

Mike: She needed to go somewhere



丹: 你好,迈克。

迈克: 你好,丹。

丹: 你见到山姆了吗?

迈克: 还没有。

丹: 他一定很忙。

迈克: 我猜是,实际上新娘应该更忙。

丹: 噢。她要做什么?

迈克: 虽然他们已经住在一起了,

Chapter Ten

但是她昨天要在别的地方住。山姆在婚礼前不能见她。

to sleep yesterday though they had lived together already. Sam is not supposed to see her before the wedding.

Dan: Why?

丹：为什么？

Mike: Some sort of bad luck if he sees her.

迈克：要是山姆见到她有点儿运气不好。

Dan: Really? Who are those people?

丹：真的？这些人是谁？

Mike: The best man, the maid of honor, the flower girls, the ring barrier, and the priest.

迈克：伴郎、伴娘、花童、戒指人、还有牧师。

Dan: What do they do?

丹：他们做什么？

Mike: The best man accompanies the groom, and the maid of honor accompanies the bride.

迈克：伴郎陪伴新郎，伴娘陪伴新娘。

Dan: The flower girls hold flowers, and the ring barrier holds the ring.

丹：花童撒花，戒指人拿戒指。

Mike: Yes. The flower girls will walk in front of the bride and throw flowers on the way to the altar.

迈克：对了。花童在新娘前面走，在走向典礼台时撒花。

Dan: The priest will host the ceremony, right?

丹：牧师会主持典礼，对吗？

Mike: Right. Let's take our seat.

迈克：对。我们入座吧。

(Sam appeared before the altar. The wedding music started. The bride, holding the arm of her father, went down the aisle. 山姆出现在典礼台前，婚礼进行曲响了起来。新娘挽着父亲的胳膊，走下走道。)

Dan: It feels wonderful.

丹：感觉真好。

Mike: Yes. It's the occasion of lifetime.

迈克：是。一生的重大时刻。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交往

的地道口语

At the reception, the best man usually raises the topics. The attendees may ask the newly weds to tell their love stories. After dinner, the father of the bride would have the first dance with the bride.

在招待会上,伴郎要提话题,来宾可能会让新婚夫妇讲他们的爱情故事。婚宴后,新娘的父亲和新娘跳第一支舞。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① best man: 伴郎
- ② maid of honor: 伴娘
- ③ flower girl: 花童
- ④ ring barrier: 戒指人
- ⑤ priest: 牧师
- ⑥ altar: 典礼台
- ⑦ aisle: 走道
- ⑧ some sort of: 某种

Patterns

句型

◆ Have you ... ?

◆ He must be ...



◆ 你 了吗?

◆ 他一定是

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ Have you told Mark?

◆ Have you got the ball rolling?

◆ Have you found your purse?

◆ Have you been back to Beijing?



◆ 你告诉马克了吗?

◆ 你开始行动了吗?

◆ 你找到钱包了吗?

◆ 你回过北京了吗?

Chapter Ten

Go to Weddings and Funerals

- ◆ He must be mad.
- ◆ He must be hungry.
- ◆ He must be starved.
- ◆ He must be hurt.



- ◆ 他一定是疯了。
- ◆ 他一定是饿了。
- ◆ 他一定饿死了。
- ◆ 他一定受伤了。

Topic 4 Attending a Funeral

第四题 参加葬礼

Funeral is the time for sorrows, memories and condolences. It is sad that people die. However, funeral provides an opportunity for us to pay respects to the person passed away. It helps us express our feelings.

葬礼是悲伤、怀念和抚慰的时刻。悲哀的是人总是要死的。但是，葬礼为我们提供了向逝者致哀的机会，让我们表达自己的感情。

Scene

场景

One of the colleagues of John, Phillip, died in a car accident. An email was sent by the Human Resources Department with the location of the funeral home, time for viewing and ceremony. John came to the funeral and met Phillip's wife Brandy and their kids Henry and Chelsea.

约翰的一个同事，菲利浦，在车祸中去世了。人事部发了个依妹儿，告诉大家殡仪馆的地址、瞻仰遗容和葬礼的时间。约翰来参加葬礼，和菲利浦的太太白兰地、他们的孩子亨利和切尔西见了面。

Dialogue

对话

John: Hello. My name is John.
I'm in the same group as
Phil.

Brandy: Hi, John. I heard of you
from Phil.

John: Please accept my deepest
condolences.

Brandy: Thank you.

John: Phil is a good man, a
nice fellow.

Brandy: Yes. Who would have

约翰：您好，我是约翰。我和菲尔
同组。

白兰地：你好。菲尔提起过你。

约翰：请接受我最深的悼念和安
慰。

白兰地：谢谢你。

约翰：菲尔是个好人，很善良的
伙伴。

白兰地：嗯。谁能想到这车祸呢？

Chapter Ten

thought of the accident?
John: Right. So soon, couldn't imagine.

Brandy: A huge blow to our family.
We miss him so much.

John: We all miss him very much.

Brandy: Wish all the peaces with him in the Heaven.

John: God bless him.

Brandy: Thank you.

约翰: 是啊。这么快,不可想像。

白兰地:对我们是个沉重的打击,我们太怀念他了。

约翰:我们都很怀念他。

白兰地:但愿他在天国能享受安宁。

约翰:上帝保佑他。

白兰地:谢谢你。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

After the viewing, there is a ceremony held by the priest. A few relatives and close friends may also speak on their memories and express their sorrows.

瞻仰遗容以后,牧师会主持葬礼。几位亲属和亲密朋友会讲话,表达他们的怀念和哀悼。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① sorrows: 悲哀
- ② condolences: 悼念, 安慰
- ③ Phil: 菲尔, Philip 的爱称
- ④ Heaven: 天堂, 天国
- ⑤ bless: 保佑

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Who would have thought of the ...
- ◆ Wish all the ...



- ◆ 谁能想到这
- ◆ 祝愿

Substitute Exercise

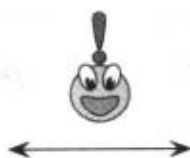
替换练习

- ◆ Who would have thought of the fire?
- ◆ Who would have thought of the loss?
- ◆ Who would have thought of the incident?
- ◆ Who would have thought of the changes?



- ◆ 谁能想到这大火呢?
- ◆ 谁能想到这损失呢?
- ◆ 谁能想到这事件呢?
- ◆ 谁能想到这变化呢?

- ◆ Wish all the successes to you.
- ◆ Wish all the best for you.
- ◆ Wish all the worst is gone.
- ◆ Wish all the home runs in your project.



- ◆ 祝你马到成功。
- ◆ 祝你好运。
- ◆ 希望最坏时期已经过去。
- ◆ 祝你的项目步步圆满。

Chapter Eleven Tours and Vacations

第十一章 旅游和度假



Vacation is a big deal in American life. It is also a great opportunity to make friends. Traveling with friends can really get to know them. In this chapter, we are going to take you on several tourist routes. Each route forms one topic.

在美国人的生活中,度假是很重要的。这也是交朋友的好机会。和朋友一起旅行能很好地了解对方。这章里,我们会带你去几条旅游路线。每一个路线组成一个话题。

Topic 1 Taking Vacations

第一题 度假

In the U.S., the vacation season starts from the Memorial Day, the last Monday in May, to the Labor Day, the first Monday in September. The colleges start summer vacation at the end of May and the new semester at the end of August. For college students, summer vacation may not be vacation time. Many of them would go to work in companies as interns.

在美国,度假时节从阵亡将士纪念日开始,也就是五月份的最后一个星期一,到劳动节,即九月份的第一个星期一。大学暑假是五月末开始,新学期在八月末开始。对于大学生,暑假也许不是假期,很多大学生要到公司里实习。

Scene 1

场景 1

Valery is a new employee in an automotive company. She wondered how to take vacation in the company. She talked to the secretary Mary.

蔚乐瑞是一家汽车公司的新员工。她想知道公司里度假是怎样的程序,她来问秘书玛丽。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Valery: Hi, Mary. It's almost summer time. How do we take vacations?

Mary: As a new employee, you have two weeks of paid vacation a year.

Valery: How can I take a vacation?

Mary: You need to fill out a vacation request form and give it to me.



蔚乐瑞: 你好, 玛丽。马上要到夏天了, 我们怎么度假?

玛丽: 作为新员工, 你一年有两周带薪假期。

蔚乐瑞: 我怎么请假呢?

玛丽: 你要填一张请假单, 把它交给我。

Chapter Eleven

Valery: Okay. Does my boss need to approve it?

Mary: Yes. I will give the form to him for signature.

Valery: Does he usually approve it?

Mary: He usually approves it unless there is a conflict with some urgent work.

Valery: Thanks Mary.

Mary: You are welcome.

蔚乐瑞: 好的,我老板要批准吗?

玛丽: 要,我会把表格给他签字。

蔚乐瑞: 他通常会批吗?

玛丽: 要是和紧要工作没冲突的话,他通常会批。

蔚乐瑞: 谢谢你,玛丽。

玛丽: 不客气。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Each company may have their own rules for vacation. Some like employees to take long but fewer vacations, so they can plan work better. Some like employees to take short vacations so it keeps the continuity of work. Most companies have two weeks of paid vacations a year for new employees up to 3 to 5 years. The vacation time increases as you work for more years.

每个公司有自己的休假规定,有些公司希望员工每次休长一点儿假期,但是每年少休几次。有的公司愿意让员工休短假期来保证工作的连续性。大多数公司的新雇员在三到五年之内都是只有两周带薪假,带薪假期长短随工作年限增加。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① paid vacation: 带薪假
- ② summer vacation: 夏天休假
- ③ approve: 批准, 动词
- ④ approval: 批准, 名词
- ⑤ signature: 签字
- ⑥ skip: 跳过, 免掉, 不做
- ⑦ call back: 回电话

交往

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

- ◆ As a new ... , you ...
- ◆ He usually ...



- ◆ 作为新, 你
- ◆ 他通常

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ As a new graduate student, you need to report to the Department first.
- ◆ As a new patient, you need to fill out this form.
- ◆ As a new teacher, you'd better plan ahead.
- ◆ As a new employee, you need to get the insurance.



- ◆ 作为新研究生, 你要先到系里报到。
- ◆ 作为新病人, 你要填这张表格。
- ◆ 作为新教师, 你最好提前做好计划。
- ◆ 作为新雇员, 你需要买保险。

- ◆ He usually comes in at 7:00.
- ◆ He usually holds effective meetings.
- ◆ He usually calls me back within the day.
- ◆ He usually skips lunches.



- ◆ 他通常七点钟来。
- ◆ 他通常开高效率会议。
- ◆ 他通常当天给我回电话。
- ◆ 他通常不吃午饭。

Scene 2

场景 2

Brian and Amy are also planning their summer vacation. One day, they met each other and started to talk about their summer plans.

布来恩和艾米都在计划他们的夏天休假。一天, 他们遇见了, 聊起各自的夏天休假计划。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: Hello, Amy.

Amy: Hi, Brian.

Brian: It's almost summer time.

What's your plan?

Amy: I got an internship from Microsoft.

Brian: Great! I'll work for my professor for two months.

Amy: That's good. You'll get a lot of your research done.

Brian: Yeah. I plan to use the other month for vacation.

Amy: Me too. I'll also take August off.

Brian: Where do you plan to go?

Amy: There are so many places I want to go. DC, New York, Niagara Falls, California, ... The list goes on and on.

Brian: I know. I want to go to those places too. Maybe we can go together.

Amy: Sure. I'd love to.

Brian: Let's make up a plan when August gets closer. You know how to find me.

Amy: Yes. I'll leave you my cell phone number, so you can find me in Seattle.

Brian: Great!

布莱恩：你好，艾米。

艾米：你好，布莱恩

布莱恩：马上要到夏天了，你是怎么计划的？

艾米：我在微软拿到了一个实习生的工作。

布莱恩：太棒了！我会帮教授干两个月。

艾米：那挺好的，你能做很多自己的科研。

布莱恩：是，我计划另外一个月度假。

艾米：我也是，我要八月份度假。

布莱恩：你要去哪里？

艾米：我想去很多地方。华盛顿、纽约、尼亚加拉大瀑布、加州……要去的地方数不过来。

布莱恩：我知道。我也想去这些地方，也许我们可以一起去。

艾米：当然可以，我很想一起去。

布莱恩：八月快到的时候，我们来做个计划。你知道怎么能找到我。

艾米：我知道。我把我的手机号留给你，你就能在西雅图找到我。

布莱恩：太好了！

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

交往

的地道口语

College students usually work most of the time in the summer. They may take two weeks or a month off. Some of them will go to foreign countries for summer vacation. Microsoft's headquarters is in Seattle.

大学生暑假时大多时间在工作,他们可能休两周到一个月的假,有些人会到国外旅游。微软的总部在西雅图。

Related Words and Phrases

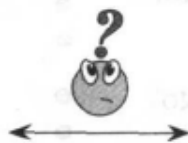
相关词语

- ① internship: 实习生工作
- ② take ... off: 在 时间休假

Patterns

句型

◆ I plan to ...



◆ 我计划

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I plan to get this project done by the end of May.
- ◆ I plan to find a new teacher for Amy.
- ◆ I plan to get my degree in three years.
- ◆ I plan to hire five more engineers.



- ◆ 我计划五月末把这个项目做完。
- ◆ 我打算给艾米找个新老师。
- ◆ 我想在三年内拿到学位。
- ◆ 我打算再雇五个工程师。

Topic 2 Boston, New York, Atlantic City and Washington D.C.

第二题 波士顿, 纽约, 大西洋赌城, 华盛顿·哥伦比亚特区

Amy and Brian started their tour of the United States. They followed Route One we designed: Boston, New York, Atlantic City and Washington D.C.. Those cities are in the east coast of U.S.A.. They represent the early history of America.

艾米和布莱恩开始了他们在美国的旅行。他们走的是我们设计的第一条路线: 波士顿、纽约、大西洋赌城和华盛顿。这些城市都在美国的东岸, 它们代表美国的早期历史。

Scene 1

场景 1

The first city they toured was Boston. Amy and Brian drove around in the city.

第一个旅游的城市是波士顿, 艾米和布莱恩在城里开车逛了一圈儿。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Amy: How do you describe Boston?

Brian: Boston is a cultural city. It has the two most famous universities in the U.S..

Amy: Harvard and MIT.

Brian: Right. They are both on Massachusetts Avenue in Cambridge. The renowned Kennedy Library is also in Boston.



艾米: 你怎样描述波士顿?

布莱恩: 波士顿是个文化城, 这里有美国最有名的两所大学。

艾米: 哈佛和麻省理工。

布莱恩: 对, 它们都在剑桥镇的麻省大街上。著名的肯尼迪图书馆也在波士顿。

Amy: Did the early immigrants come to Boston?

Brian: They actually came to the small town near Boston called Plymouth on the ship May Flower.

Amy: Oh yes. I heard of the May Flower.

Brian: Boston also had numerous historic events.

Amy: What's the best way to get to know these events?

Brian: There is a building in downtown called John Hancock Observatory. It's the highest vantage point in New England. You can see the historic presentations there.

Amy: What are we waiting for? Let's get up there.

Brian: Okay. But don't forget Charles River and Chinatown.

Amy: What's good there?

Brian: Standing by the river, you can see the beautiful blue river decorated with white sailing boats. MIT is just by the river. The Chinatown has many good restaurants if you long for authentic Chinese food.

Amy: Don't worry. I'll be there.

Brian: Let's go to MIT, Charles River and Harvard after the

艾米: 早期的移民就是来到波士顿的吧?

布莱恩: 他们实际上是来到波士顿旁边的一个叫普利茅斯的小镇。他们乘的船是五月花。

艾米: 哦,对。我听说过五月花。

布莱恩: 波士顿还发生过很多历史事件。

艾米: 怎样才是了解这些事件的最好方法?

布莱恩: 市中心有个叫约翰·韩考克观望台的大楼,是新英格兰的最高的观望点。你在那里可以看到历史事件讲演。

艾米: 那我们还等什么? 快去上那个高楼。

布莱恩: 好的,但是不要忘了查尔斯河和中国城。

艾米: 那里有什么特色?

布莱恩: 站在查尔斯河边,你能看到美丽的白帆点缀的蓝色河流。麻省理工学院就在河边。要是你馋正宗中国菜的话,中国城有许多好餐馆。

艾米: 别担心,我一定会去。

布莱恩: 我们去约翰·韩考克大楼后再去麻省理工学院、

Chapter Eleven

查尔斯河和哈佛大学。

Hancock Building.
Amy: Yes. And have lunch in the Chinatown.

艾米: 好的,然后到中国城吃午饭。

Brian: After that, let's go to the New England Aquarium that is just on the city's waterfront, not far from the Quincy Market.

布莱恩: 吃完午饭,我们去城市海边的新英格兰水族馆,离昆西市场不远。

Amy: What can you see in the Aquarium?

艾米: 水族馆里都有什么可看的?

Brian: Dolphin shows. You can even go out the Harbor to see the whales.

布莱恩: 海豚表演,你也可以出海看鲸鱼。

Amy: I'm so excited.

艾米: 我真兴奋。

Brian: And a seafood dinner at a waterfront restaurant wouldn't be a bad idea.

布莱恩: 然后在海边吃一顿海鲜也不坏。

Amy: You really know how to enjoy!

艾米: 你可真知道享受!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Boston is not a large city, but it is the most famous cultural city in the U.S.. Any foreigners with higher education would like to see Boston. The rich culture of this city attracts both tourists and scholars. The Kennedy family has many ties with this city.

波士顿不是一个很大的城市,但它是美国最有名的文化名城,任何受过高等教育的外国人都会想看看波士顿,城市的丰富文化吸引着游客和学者。肯尼迪家族和这座城市有着千丝万缕的联系。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Cambridge: 剑桥镇,波士顿的一个地区
- ② Kennedy: 肯尼迪,美国的一个著名总统

交

往

的地道口语

- ③ Charles River: 查尔斯河
- ④ authentic: 正宗的
- ⑤ Chinatown: 中国城, 唐人街
- ⑥ Quincy Market: 昆西市场, 是波士顿的一个著名购物广场, 有很漂亮的街灯。
- ⑦ John Hancock (Signature): 约翰·韩考克, 是签署独立宣言的领导人物之一。所以“约翰·韩考克”在美国英语里也有签名的意思。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ How do you describe ...
- ◆ What's the best way to ...



- ◆ 你怎样描述 ……
- ◆ 怎样才是 …… 的最好方法?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ How do you describe our school?
- ◆ How do you describe the St. John Church?
- ◆ How do you describe our teacher?
- ◆ How do you describe your home?



- ◆ 你怎样描述我们学校?
- ◆ 你怎样描述圣约翰教堂?
- ◆ 你怎样描述我们老师?
- ◆ 你怎样描述你的家?

- ◆ What's the best way to learn English?
- ◆ What's the best way to get the job done?
- ◆ What's the best way to go to Holland?
- ◆ What's the best way to treat our customers?



- ◆ 怎样才是学英语的最好方法?
- ◆ 怎样才是干这项工作的最好方法?
- ◆ 怎样才是去荷兰的最佳途径?
- ◆ 怎样才是对待我们客户的最好方式?

Scene 2

场景 2

The second stop for Amy and Brian was New York City. They drove from Boston to New York, which took about four hours. They took the Highway 95, which runs along the east coast. On the way to New York, they passed by New Haven, where the famous Yale University is located.

艾米和布莱恩的第二站是纽约市。他们从波士顿开到纽约，花了大约四个小时。他们走的是 95 号高速公路，这条路贯通东海岸。在去纽约的路上，他们经过了新港，也是著名的耶鲁大学的所在地。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Amy: Where do we want to go in New York?



艾米：在纽约我们想到哪儿去玩儿啊？

Brian: Let's first go to the Liberty Park. We can take a boat to get to the Statue of Liberty.

布莱恩：先去自由公园，咱们可以坐船去自由女神像。

Amy: That should be fun. Do you want to climb up the Statue?

艾米：那会很好玩儿。你想爬到像上去吗？

Brian: If I'm not tired by then.

布莱恩：要是我那时不累的话。

Amy: I know. Driving for four hours is really tiring. Do you want me to help driving?

艾米：我知道，开四个小时车够累的了。你要我帮忙开车吗？

Brian: No. Not in New York City.

布莱恩：不用，在纽约可不行。

Amy: I'm also a little bit scared by the traffic.

艾米：我也有点儿怕这儿的交通。

Brian: You know, the Liberty Park is not far from the World Trade Center.

布莱恩：你知道，自由公园离世贸中心不远。

Amy: The twin towers?

艾米：姊妹楼？

Brian: The former twin towers.

布莱恩：以前的姊妹楼。

Amy: Right. Then it's not far from Wall Street either.

艾米：是，那也离华尔街不远。

Brian: Right. The Wall Street is actually a small street.

布莱恩：对，华尔街实际上是个小街道。

Amy: Small but famous.

艾米：小，但是很有名。

Brian: Like Deng Xiaoping?

布莱恩：就像邓小平？

Amy: No. Not comparable. A street and a person.

艾米：不是，那不可比较，一条街和一个人。

Brian: What else do you want to see?

布莱恩：你还想看什么？

Amy: I want to see the United Nations Headquarters, the Empire State Building, the Broadway and the Chinatown.

艾米：我想看看联合国总部、帝国大厦、百老汇和中国城。

Brian: The United Nations is fine. Hope the terrorists won't show up when we are up the Empire State Building. But be careful in the Chinatown.

布莱恩：联合国可以，我们上帝国大厦时希望恐怖分子不要出现，但是中国城要小心。

Amy: It's not safe?

艾米：不安全？

Brian: It's OK. Just watch out for yourself.

布莱恩：还可以，就是要小心点儿。

Amy: I see.

艾米：明白了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

When people mention New York, they probably are referring to New York City. However, New York City is only a city in New York State, and is not even the capital of the state. The capital of New York State is Albany, a much smaller city than New York City. Often times in the U.S., a state capital is not the largest city in the state. New York City is the largest city in the U.S. with more than twenty million people. Considering the entire Canada is only more than twenty million people, New York is really big in terms of population.

Chapter Eleven

当人们谈到纽约时,大多是指纽约市。可是,纽约市只是纽约州的一个城市,还不是纽约州的首府。纽约州的首府是奥伯尼,比纽约市小很多。在美国,通常州的首府不是州里的最大城市。纽约市是美国的最大城市,有两千多万人口。想一想整个加拿大只有两千多万人口,纽约市真是很大。

The best university in New York City is Columbia University. Princeton University is also in the adjacent New Jersey State, where Einstein taught Physics.

纽约市的最好的大学是哥伦比亚大学,普林斯顿大学也在邻近的新泽西州,爱因斯坦曾在那里教过物理。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① highway 95: 95号高速公路
- ② the Statue of Liberty: 自由女神像
- ③ traffic: 交通
- ④ World Trade Center: 世贸中心
- ⑤ Wall Street: 华尔街
- ⑥ United Nations Headquarters: 联合国总部
- ⑦ Empire State Building: 帝国大厦
- ⑧ Broadway: 百老汇

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Where do we want to ...
- ◆ I was a little bit scared by ...



- ◆ 我们到哪儿
- ◆ 我有点儿怕

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Where do we want to put up the statue?
- ◆ Where do we want to go for fun?
- ◆ Where do we want to stop and shop?
- ◆ Where do we want to go in Boston?



- ◆ 我们把塑像放在哪儿?
- ◆ 我们到哪儿去找乐子?
- ◆ 我们在哪儿停下买东西?
- ◆ 在波士顿我们到哪儿去玩儿啊?

- ◆ I was a little bit scared by the teacher.
- ◆ I was a little bit scared by the train.
- ◆ I was a little bit scared by the big truck.
- ◆ I was a little bit scared by the dog.



- ◆ 我有点儿怕这个老师。
- ◆ 我有点儿怕那火车。
- ◆ 我有点儿怕那辆大卡车。
- ◆ 我有点儿怕那只狗。

Scene 3

场景 3

After the tour of New York City, Amy and Brian headed for Atlantic City. The unique feature of Atlantic City is its beautiful white sand beach.

游完纽约市,艾米和布莱恩向大西洋赌城出发。大西洋赌城的特点是它有着美丽的白色海滩。

Dialogue 3

对话 3

Amy: Are we going to gamble?

Brian: Sure. That's why we are coming here.

Amy: No. That's not why we are here. We are here to tour the city, not to gamble.

Brian: I know. Just for fun. I limit myself to \$20. Once the \$20 is gone, I stop.

Amy: Good. Self-control. I heard you could get free parking with the Casinos.

Brian: You can get free everything



艾米: 我们要不要赌钱?

布莱恩: 当然要,那就是我们来这儿的目地。

艾米: 不,那不是我们来这儿的目地。我们是来旅游的,不是来赌博的。

布莱恩: 我知道,就是找点儿乐趣。我给自己限制到20元,一旦输光了就不赌了。

艾米: 好的,自我控制。我听说在赌场里有免费停车待遇。

布莱恩: 你要是常来的话,什么都

Chapter Eleven

是免费的。

if you come here all the time.

Amy: I have better things to do. What if we get lucky and win a lot of money?

Brian: We'll go to the best restaurant and have a nice dinner.

Amy: You are so into eating.

Brian: My rules are: don't save on meals and books.

Amy: I like that.

艾米: 我有更有意义的事要做。要是我们赢了很多钱咋办?

布莱恩: 我们去一个最好的餐馆吃一顿。

艾米: 你就知道吃。

布莱恩: 我的原则是: 不要在吃饭和买书上省钱。

艾米: 这一点我喜欢。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Atlantic City is actually in the state of New Jersey. A long highway was built just for going to the city. On the way to the city, you see a lot of limousines carrying rich or famous people. There are also buses leaving from New York, Jersey City and Philadelphia daily to the city.

大西洋赌城实际上在新泽西州,一条专门建造的很长的高速公路直通赌城。在去赌城的路上,你会看到很多加长轿车,载着富人或者名人,直驶赌城。还有大客车,每天从纽约、泽西城和费城开往赌城。

The famous universities nearby are University of Pennsylvania and University of Delaware.

附近的著名大学有宾州大学和达拉威尔大学。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① gamble: 赌博
- ② casino: 赌场
- ③ Atlantic City: 大西洋赌城。
- ④ Philadelphia: 费城。
- ⑤ limousine: 加长轿车

Patterns

句型

◆ That's why ...



◆ 那就是……的原因。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ That's why he won.

◆ That's why I got the job.

◆ That's why I love him.

◆ That's why I didn't rent the car.



◆ 那就是他赢了的原因。

◆ 那就是我为什么得到了这份工作的原因。

◆ 那就是我爱他的原故。

◆ 那就是为什么我没有租那辆车的原因。

Scene 4

场景 4

The last stop for Amy and Brian was Washington DC. They could have stopped in Philadelphia, Baltimore, and Annapolis. But time did not allow them to do so because they were going on to the second route of sight seeing: Niagara Falls, Toronto, Ottawa and Montreal.

艾米和布莱恩的最后一站是华盛顿哥伦比亚特区。他们也可以在费城、巴尔的摩和安那泊里斯停留,但是时间不允许了。他们还要走第二条旅游路线:尼加拉大瀑布,多伦多,渥太华,蒙特利尔。

Philadelphia is the place where the Declaration of Independence was adopted. Baltimore is a famous harbor city in Maryland, which hosts the best medical school, John Hopkins University. Annapolis is the capital of Maryland, a very nice small coastal city where the U.S. Navy has its undergraduate school. Another nice spot they missed is the West Point, the famous U.S. Army's military school in New York State.

费城是《独立宣言》发布的地方。巴尔的摩是马里兰州的一个著名港口,美国最好的医科大学,约翰霍普金斯大学,就在那里。安那泊里斯是马里兰州的首府,是个临海的美丽小城,美国海军学院就座落在那里。另一个他们错过的旅游点儿是西点,在纽约州,那里有著名的美国陆军军校。

Dialogue 4

对话 4

Amy: We passed by a lot of famous sites on our way.

Brian: I know. But we need to get on our second route soon.

Amy: Okay. Let's make sure that we have a good tour of DC.

Brian: That's for sure. We need to get up early tomorrow.

Amy: Why?

Brian: We want to go to the White House first. There'll be a long line waiting for tickets. The tickets are free, but the number of tickets for each day is limited.

Amy: Oh. It's good that you knew that.

Brian: After getting the tickets while waiting for the tour, we should get up the Washington Monument.

Amy: What's up there?

Brian: You can see the White House, the Capital, Lincoln Memorial, and Jefferson Memorial on the four sides of the Monument.

Amy: Are we going to the Capital?

Brian: For sure. It's such a glorious building on the hill up there.

艾米: 我们在路上错过了好多著名的旅游景点。

布莱恩: 我知道,但是我们要尽快赶到第二条旅游路线。

艾米: 好吧,我们要保证玩儿好华盛顿。

布莱恩: 那是一定。我们明天要早点儿起来。

艾米: 为什么?

布莱恩: 我们要先去白宫,排很长的队,票是免费的,但每天发的票是有数的,晚了就没了。

艾米: 哦,多亏你知道。

布莱恩: 拿到票以后,在等着进白宫的时候,我们可以上华盛顿纪念碑。

艾米: 那上面有什么?

布莱恩: 你可以从四面看见白宫、国会、林肯纪念堂、还有杰斐逊纪念堂。

艾米: 那我们去国会吗?

布莱恩: 当然。国会大厦很辉煌,耸立在山坡上,里面有很

American Interpersonal

English

- A lot of paintings are inside for the historical events and the leaders of the past.
- Amy: DC reminds me of Beijing, wide streets, huge buildings and tourists everywhere.
- Brian: There are also lots of museums that are free to visit.
- Amy: I want to go to the Aerospace Museum, the Art Museum, and the Museum of Nature.
- Brian: We need to stay for a couple of days.
- Amy: Sure.
- 多历史事件和领袖人物的油画。
- 艾米: 华盛顿让我想起北京, 街道宽阔, 建筑宏伟, 到处是游客。
- 布莱恩: 有很多免费的博物馆。
- 艾米: 我想去航天博物馆、艺术博物馆、还有自然博物馆。
- 布莱恩: 我们得呆两天了。
- 艾米: 当然了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

DC is the capital of the U.S.. It was built inbetween the North and the South for equal access from both sides. There are many more attractions other than the ones mentioned above. For all travels within the United States and Canada, readers can refer to the Tour Books published by the AAA of U.S. or CAA of Canada for information on tourist sites, hotels and motels, and restaurants.

华盛顿是美国的首都。它建在南方和北方的中间,是为了使两边都能有同等的距离。除了上面提到的旅游景点以外,还有很多可看的地方。在美国和加拿大旅游时,可以参考美国或者加拿大汽车协会出版的旅游手册,里面有旅游景点、酒店和饭店的详细介绍。

The famous universities in DC and Virginia would be Georgetown University and University of Virginia.

在华盛顿和弗吉尼亚的著名大学是乔治城大学和弗吉尼亚大学。

Related Words and Phrases

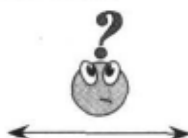
相关词语

- ① DC: District of Columbia, 哥伦比亚特区。一般指华盛顿, 用来区别于华盛顿州。
- ② White House: 白宫, 美国总统生活和办公的地方
- ③ the Capital: 美国国会
- ④ AAA: The American Automobile Association, 美国汽车协会。
- ⑤ CAA: The Canadian Automobile Association, 加拿大汽车协会

Patterns

句型

◆ We need to ...



◆ 我们要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ We need to have lunch outside today.
- ◆ We need to go on a field trip next Friday.
- ◆ We need to find an alternative.
- ◆ We need to wait for a while.



- ◆ 我们今天要在外面吃午饭。
- ◆ 我们下星期五要出去参观。
- ◆ 我们要找到个替代的方法。
- ◆ 我们要等一阵了。

Topic 3 Niagara Falls, Toronto, Ottawa and Montreal

第三题 尼亚加拉大瀑布, 多伦多, 渥太华, 蒙特利尔

This is the second tourist route we designed. Niagara Falls is on the border of U.S. and Canada, between New York State and Ontario Province. The Falls can be seen from either side. From there, it is an easy one-hour drive to Toronto. Ottawa and Montreal are a bit far from the Falls, but it is durable to visit these cities by car.

这是我们设计的第二条旅游路线。尼亚加拉大瀑布在美国和加拿大的边境上, 在纽约州和安大略省之间。两边都能看到大瀑布。从那里, 开车只要一小时就到了多伦多。渥太华和蒙特利尔距大瀑布要远一些, 但是开车去这些城市旅游也是可行的。

Scene 1

场景 1

Amy and Brian finished the first route of tour. They came back to Boston. After a few days of rest, they got on the journey following the second route.

艾米和布莱恩走完了第一条旅游路线, 回到了波士顿。休息了几天以后, 他们又沿着第二条路线出发了。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Amy: We are like travel maniacs.

Brian: Yeah. We are trying to see the whole North America within one month. It's like we have no tomorrow.

Amy: Yeah. How many hours is it from Boston to Niagara



艾米: 我们像两个旅游狂。

布莱恩: 是啊, 我们试图在一个月
内看完北美, 就像没有
明天似的。

艾米: 可不是。从波士顿到尼亚
加拉大瀑布要开几个小

Chapter Eleven

Falls?

Brian: About eight hours.

Amy: Wow. I can help you with driving. This is not as scary as in New York City.

Brian: Thanks. I'll let you know when I am getting tired.

Amy: I heard Niagara Falls was the largest falls in the world. You can hear the roaring water even before you reach it.

Brian: I believe so.

Amy: I heard the views were even better at night.

Brian: Yes, they cast colorful beams on the Falls, which is beautiful.

Amy: You can see the Falls from either American side or Canadian side. Which side is better?

Brian: The American Falls and the Canadian Falls are different. From the American side, you see the side of the Falls. From the Canadian side, you see the front of the Falls. The Canadian Falls looks wider.

Amy: Can we get down to the Falls?

Brian: Yes. You can take a boat and pass directly in front of the Falls. The boat is called The

时?

布莱恩: 大概八个小时吧。

艾米: 哇,我可以帮你开车。这儿开车不像纽约市那么疯狂。

布莱恩: 谢谢。我要是累了会叫你帮忙。

艾米: 听说尼亚加拉大瀑布是世界上最大的瀑布。人还没到跟前儿就听见水吼叫的声音了。

布莱恩: 这我相信。

艾米: 我听说晚上更好看。

布莱恩: 是啊。晚上有五颜六色的灯光打在瀑布上,那样更漂亮。

艾米: 在美国和加拿大两边都能看到瀑布,哪一边更好?

布莱恩: 美国瀑布和加拿大瀑布不一样。从美国那边,你看到的是瀑布的侧面。从加拿大那边,看到的是瀑布的正面。加拿大瀑布看起来宽一些。

艾米: 能下到瀑布下面吗?

布莱恩: 能。可以乘船在瀑布下面直接通过。船名是“雾女”,你乘船必须穿雨衣。

American Interpersonal

English

- Maid of Mist. You got to wear raincoat for that.
- Amy: That sounds like fun.
- Brian: Do you want to try camping?
- Amy: By the Falls? We will be soaked in the mist.
- Brian: That would be fun too.
- Amy: You are crazy.
- 艾米: 听起来挺有意思。
- 布莱恩: 你想试试露营吗?
- 艾米: 在瀑布旁边? 我们都得泡在雾里。
- 布莱恩: 那也好玩儿啊。
- 艾米: 你真疯。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Niagara Falls is a world-class tourist site. There are also other attractions other than the Falls over there, such as the Wax Museum, the Observation Center, the State Park and the garden.

尼亚加拉大瀑布是世界级的旅游胜地,那儿除了瀑布也有其他景点,诸如蜡像馆、观景中心、州立公园和植物园。

Related Words and Phrases

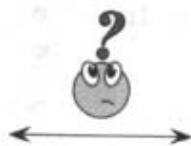
相关词语

- ① maniac: 疯子, 狂人
- ② falls: 瀑布
- ③ raincoat: 雨衣
- ④ attractions: 景点

Patterns

句型

- ◆ We are like ...
- ◆ That sounds ...



- ◆ 我们像
- ◆ 听起来

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ We are like brother and sister.
- ◆ We are like twins.
- ◆ We are like brothers.
- ◆ We are like thieves.



- ◆ 我们像兄妹。
- ◆ 我们像双胞胎。
- ◆ 我们像哥俩。
- ◆ 我们像小偷儿。

- ◆ That sounds wonderful.
- ◆ That sounds like a true story.
- ◆ That sounds terrible.
- ◆ That sounds good.



- ◆ 听起来太妙了。
- ◆ 听起来像是真事儿。
- ◆ 那听起来太糟糕了。
- ◆ 这听起来挺好。

Scene 2

场景 2

After Niagara Falls, Amy and Brian drove to Toronto. The British influence was evident when they drove on the QEW (Queens Express Way). It took less than an hour to get to Toronto. Brian could be speeding.

游完尼亚加拉大瀑布, 艾米和布莱恩开车前往多伦多。当他们驾驶在(英国)女皇高速公路上时, 他们会清楚地感受到英国(对加拿大)的影响。从大瀑布到多伦多还不到一小时, 也许布莱恩超速了。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: That was an easy drive.

Amy: You didn't need my help this time.

Brian: Not at all. We are approaching the CN Tower. Want to stop by?

Amy: Sure. CN Tower is what we got to see. I heard there was



布莱恩: 这段路开起来挺容易的。

艾米: 这次没用我帮忙。

布莱恩: 根本不用。我们快到 CN 塔了, 想停停吗?

艾米: 当然, CN 塔是必看的。我

a revolving restaurant on the top of the tower.

Brian: If you eat at the restaurant, the lift to the top is free.

Amy: So we'd better eat there.

Brian: Take our time to look around.

Amy: Yes. I bet we can see Lake Ontario, the huge lake like a sea.

Brian: Of course. After lunch, let's go to Ontario Place.

Amy: What is that?

Brian: A show place for the province of Ontario and the nation.

Amy: What do they have?

Brian: All kinds of stuff: shops, show places, play ground, lakes and ponds, and many more.

Amy: Very interesting. Where do we have dinner today?

Brian: Now you sounded like me, always looking for good food. Let's head for Chinatown for dinner if it's okay with you.

Amy: Why?

Brian: In other cities, the Chinatown has a few good restaurants. In the Chinatown of Toronto, almost every Chinese restaurant is good.

Amy: Really? I won't miss this

听说上面有个旋转餐厅。

布莱恩：如果你在那个餐厅吃饭，上塔坐电梯就免费。

艾米：那我们最好在那儿吃。

布莱恩：有时间观赏周围景色。

艾米：是啊。我猜能看到安大略湖，像海一样大。

布莱恩：当然能看到。吃完饭，我们去安大略公园。

艾米：那里是什么？

布莱恩：是安大略省和加拿大全国的展示公园。

艾米：那里有什么呢？

布莱恩：五花八门的，有商店、展示厅、游戏场、湖泊池塘，还有很多别的。

艾米：很有意思。今天我们在哪儿吃晚饭？

布莱恩：现在你听起来有点儿像我，总是找好吃的。你要是同意的话，我们晚上去中国城吃晚饭吧。

艾米：为什么？

布莱恩：在其它城市里，中国城会有几家好餐馆。在多伦多的中国城，几乎每家餐馆都很好。

艾米：真的啊？我可不想失去这

Chapter Eleven

样的好机会。

opportunity.

Brian: Yes. Let's go.



布莱恩：是啊。我们走吧。

Canadian Culture and Custom

加拿大文化和习惯

Toronto is the largest city in Canada. There are also a lot of Chinese people in the city, about six hundred thousand. The city has close ties with Hong Kong because of their relations with Great Britain in the past. The Governor of Canada is actually a Chinese lady from Hong Kong. The city spreads along the lake, and is quite beautiful.

多伦多是加拿大的最大城市。市里中国人也很多,大概有六十多万。这座城市和香港有着密切的联系,因为他们过去都和英国有着密切的关系。加拿大的总督实际上是个祖籍香港的女士。多伦多市区沿湖展开去,很漂亮。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① speeding: 超速
- ② revolving: 旋转
- ③ Ontario: 安大略省
- ④ Lake Ontario: 安大略湖
- ⑤ Great Lakes: 五大湖: Lake Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, and Superior. 五大湖的字头组成 HOMES.

Patterns

句型

◆ You sounded like ...

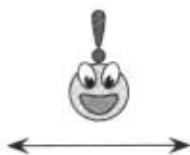


◇ 你听起来像

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ You sounded like an old man.
- ◆ You sounded like you were sick.
- ◆ You sounded like you knew something.
- ◆ You sounded like there was no tomorrow.



- ◇ 你听起来像个老头儿。
- ◇ 你听起来像是病了。
- ◇ 你听起来好像知道一些原委。
- ◇ 你听起来像没有明天了。

Scene 3

场景 3

The next stop for Amy and Brian was Ottawa. Ottawa is about four to five hours drive from Toronto. As the capital of Canada, chosen by Queen Victoria, Ottawa is a colorful city decorated by tulips.

艾米和布莱恩的下一站是渥太华。从多伦多到渥太华大概要四到五个小时的车程。作为维多利亚女皇选定的加拿大首都,渥太华是个郁金香点缀的五彩缤纷的城市。

Dialogue 3

对话 3

Brian: Have you been to Ottawa?

Amy: No. I heard it's a very clean city.

Brian: I lived in this city for a few months, and I did not see a single fly.

Amy: Then it's really clean or you were here in the winter?

Brian: It was in the winter. In any case, I like the city.



布莱恩: 你来过渥太华吗?

艾米: 没有。我听说这城市很干净。

布莱恩: 我在这里住过几个月,都没见过一个苍蝇。

艾米: 那可真是干净,或者你是冬天来的吧?

布莱恩: 确实是在冬天。不管怎么说,我喜欢这个城市。

Chapter Eleven

Amy: What are the major attractions?

Brian: The Parliament Buildings, the Parade of the Guards, the Governor's Mansion, Rideau Canal and many museums.

Amy: I remember the museums are free. Who are those Guards?

Brian: They are actually college students, and this is their summer job to make some money.

Amy: That's nice. I heard people skated to work and school in the winter on the Canal.

Brian: Yes. And you will find a lot of tunnels between the buildings for people to walk in the winter.

Amy: What a concept! I like the idea very much.

Brian: The best time is the July First.

Amy: Why? Because it's the birthday of the Chinese Communist Party?

Brian: Maybe. Canadians like Chinese very much.

Amy: You must be kidding me.

Brian: Actually, it's the Canadian National Day. At that time, the Governor comes out to shake hands with everybody. She

艾米: 有些什么主要的风景点呢?

布莱恩: 国会大楼、皇家警卫游行、总督府、瑞都运河和很多博物馆。

艾米: 我记得这些博物馆是免费的。皇家警卫是些什么人啊?

布莱恩: 他们实际上是些大学生, 这只是他们暑假打工的工作。

艾米: 那不错啊。我听说人们冬天的时候在运河上滑冰去上学或者上班。

布莱恩: 是。在楼房之间, 还有许多地下通道, 供人们在冬天行走。

艾米: 多好的主意啊! 我很喜欢这一点。

布莱恩: 最好的时节是七月一号。

艾米: 为什么? 因为是中国共产党的生日吗?

布莱恩: 也许。加拿大人很喜欢中国人。

艾米: 你在开玩笑吧?

布莱恩: 实际上是加拿大的国庆节。那时候, 总督会出来和每个人握手, 还邀请每个人来参加招待会。

also invites everyone to a reception party.

Amy: How nice!

Brian: On that day, everybody is greeting to anybody he meets, "happy birthday!"

Amy: It's the birthday of the country. I like that very much.

Brian: This is a nice country.

艾米：真好！

布莱恩：那一天，每个人都和他见到的人打招呼：“生日快乐！”

艾米：那是国家的生日，我很喜欢这种场合。

布莱恩：这是个友善的国家。

Canadian Culture and Custom

加拿大文化和习惯

Ottawa is covered with tulips in the spring. There is a touching story behind this. In the World War II, the queen of Holland stayed in Ottawa. During her stay, she had a baby prince. She appreciated the kindness of Canadian people. After the war, Holland flies tulips to Ottawa every year to decorate the city.

在春天时，渥太华被郁金香覆盖着。这里有一个感人的故事。在第二次世界大战期间，荷兰的皇后在渥太华避难。在她避难期间，生了个王子。她感谢加拿大人民对她的友谊，战争结束后，荷兰每年都空运郁金香到渥太华来装点这个城市。

Related Words and Phrases

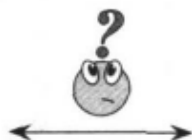
相关词语

- ① canal: 运河
- ② concept: 主意, 概念
- ③ summer job: 暑期打工的工作

Patterns

句型

◆ On that day, ...

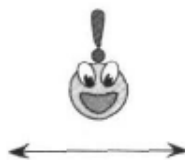


◆ 在那天,

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ On that day, you will go to the U.S.A.
- ◆ On that day, you will get married.
- ◆ On that day, they got divorced.
- ◆ On that day, I left home.



- ◆ 在那天,你会去美国。
- ◆ 在那天,你会结婚。
- ◆ 在那天,他们离婚了。
- ◆ 在那天,我离开了我的家。

Scene 4

场景 4

After staying in Ottawa, Amy and Brian headed for Montreal. It was about a three-hour drive from Ottawa to Montreal. They got into this French city just before lunch.

在渥太华停留以后,艾米和布莱恩向蒙特利尔出发了。从渥太华到蒙特利尔大概要三小时,他们恰好在午饭前抵达了这座法语城市。

Dialogue 4

对话 4

Amy: I noticed all signs were in French.

艾米: 我注意到了所有的标志都是法语的。

Brian: Canada is a bilingual country. Both English and French are official languages.

布莱恩: 加拿大是个双语国家,英语和法语都是官方语言。

Amy: But it seems Montreal likes French better.

艾米: 可是好像蒙特利尔更喜欢法语。

Brian: Sure. Mostly French live in this city. I should say the whole Quebec is like this.

布莱恩: 当然,多数是法裔人居住在这里,应该说整个魁北克都是这样。

Amy: They wanted for independence a few years back, right?

艾米: 几年前,他们在闹独立,是吧?

Brian: They did. The value of the Canadian dollar became quite low before the final outcome. And it went back up rapidly.

Amy: You should've bet on it.

Brian: I wasn't smart enough.

Amy: The Olympic Games was held in this city.

Brian: Yes. It also has the largest church in North America.

Amy: We should go up the mountains and take a look of the city.

Brian: Great idea!

Amy: How are the restaurants here?

Brian: They have great restaurants, both French and Chinese.

Amy: I like the city already.

Brian: I can tell that you've been with me for too long.

Amy: Ha-ha.

布莱恩：是。加拿大元在最后投票表决之前降到过很低，在那之后又迅速回升了。

艾米：你当时应该赌一把。

布莱恩：我那时不够聪明。

艾米：这里举办过奥运会。

布莱恩：是。这里也有北美最大的教堂。

艾米：我们应该到山上去俯瞰这个城市。

布莱恩：好主意！

艾米：这里的餐馆怎么样？

布莱恩：他们有很好的法国餐馆和中国餐馆。

艾米：我已经喜欢上这个城市了。

布莱恩：我能看出来你和我在一起呆太久了。

艾米：哈哈。



Canadian Culture and Custom

加拿大文化和习惯

Montreal is the largest French city and the second largest city in Canada. It may not be as pretty as Quebec City, but it is the political, cultural and economic center of Quebec province. The famous McGill University is located in Montreal. The top university in Canada is University of Toronto. The other famous universities include University of British Columbia, University of Waterloo, McMaster University, and University of Alberta.

蒙特利尔是加拿大最大的法语城市，也是加拿大的第二大城市。它也可能没有

Chapter Eleven

魁北克市那么漂亮,但是它是魁北克省的政治、文化和经济中心。著名的麦吉尔大学就在蒙特利尔。加拿大最好的大学是多伦多大学,其他著名的大学有不列颠哥伦比亚大学、滑铁卢大学、麦克马斯特大学和阿尔伯塔大学。

In general, Canadians kept more European traditions than Americans. They would have afternoon teatime, invite people to dinner by pairs and dress more formally. Americans are more luxury in their lifestyle. They buy tons of food and other stuff.

一般说来,加拿大人比美国人保留了更多的欧洲传统。他们会喝下午茶,邀请人吃晚饭要成对儿,穿戴也更正式。美国人在生活方式上要更铺张一些,买食品或其他物品总是买很多。

Related Words and Phrases

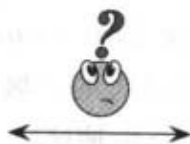
相关词语

- ① bet: 打赌, 赌
- ② Olympic Games: 奥运会

Patterns

句型

◆ I can tell that ...



◆ 我能看出来

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I can tell that he is drunk.
- ◆ I can tell that we are not welcome.
- ◆ I can tell that you want to get home.
- ◆ I can tell that she is crazy about you.



- ◆ 我能看出来他醉了。
- ◆ 我能看出来我们不受欢迎。
- ◆ 我能看出来你想回家。
- ◆ 我能看出来她非常喜欢你。

Topic 4 San Francisco and Reno

第四题 旧金山和雷诺

San Francisco is a beautiful city in Northern California along the west coast of the U.S.. California has warm weather all year around. The grass is always green. Some people like it; others like the clear four seasons. You would never have snowfalls here, but you can see snow on top of the mountains, like those by the Lake Tahoe. California has mountains and oceans, an ideal place for living and retirement. The only bad thing is that earthquakes do occur in California.

旧金山是美国西海岸加利福尼亚州的一个美丽的城市。加利福尼亚全年气候温和,绿草常青。有些人喜欢这样,但也有些人喜欢四季分明。这里从来都看不见下雪,但是像它侯湖一带的高山顶上却存有积雪。加利福尼亚有山有水,是个生活和退休疗养的好地方。惟一的缺点是加利福尼亚州有时会有地震发生。

Reno is a casino city, so called "the largest small town in the world". It is not far from San Francisco. The famous Stanford University and UC Berkeley are also in the San Francisco area.

雷诺是个赌城,号称是“世界上最大的小城市”,离旧金山不远。著名的斯坦福大学和加州大学伯克利分校也在旧金山地区。

Scene 1

场景 1

Dan flew to San Francisco for a conference. His cousin Tony teaches in UC Davis, not far from San Francisco. They spent a day together and had good time.

丹飞到旧金山参加一个会议,他的表哥托尼在加州大学戴维斯分校教书,离旧金山也不远。他们在一起度过了愉快的一天。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Tony: Hello, Dan. So nice to see you here.



托尼: 你好, 在这儿见到你真高兴。

Dan: Nice to see you too. San

丹: 也很高兴见到你。旧金山很

Chapter Eleven

Francisco is so pretty.

Tony: I can't wait to show you around.

Dan: And I'm a gourmet, you know.

Tony: I know. You won't be disappointed. Let's start with the downtown area.

Dan: What's fun there?

Tony: We can go to the Harbor and the Chinatown. There is also a zigzag road up to the hill, that's very interesting.

Dan: I want to see the Golden Gate Bridge.

Tony: Sure. I'll take you there.

Dan: I also heard of the Cable Cars. Are they still running?

Tony: They are. That's one of the traditions of San Francisco. They will run as long as the city exists.

Dan: I'm really hungry. Let's have some oysters first.

Tony: Okay. I'll take you to the best place for oysters.



漂亮。

托尼：我等不急要带你到处转转呢。

丹：还有，你知道我是个美食家。

托尼：我知道，你不会失望的。咱们先从城里开始吧。

丹：那儿有什么好玩的？

托尼：我们可以去港口和中国城，还有一条弯弯曲曲的上山路很好玩。

丹：我想看金门大桥。

托尼：当然，我会带你去的。

丹：我还听说过有轨电车，现在还有吗？

托尼：有。那是旧金山的一个传统，只要这城市存在一天，有轨电车就会运行一天。

丹：我真饿了，咱们先去吃点生蚝。

托尼：好的，我带你去吃生蚝的最好的餐馆。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

California is along the west coast. There are three major cities: San Francisco, Los Angeles and San Diego, from the north to the south. There are various minority people living in California: Mexicans, South Americans, Chinese, Japanese, Koreans, African Americans, Arabs and Europeans. People from Mid and South America speak Spanish. Spanish speaking population in

California is only second to English. To win the race for Governor in California, you have to win the support of Spanish speaking population. Even George W. Bush spoke Spanish when he campaigned for his presidency in California.

加州在西海岸边,从北到南有三个大城市:旧金山、洛杉矶、圣地亚哥。在加州有各种各样的少数民族:墨西哥人、南美人、中国人、日本人、韩国人、非洲黑人、阿拉伯人和欧洲人。从中美和南美洲来的人讲西班牙语,在加州讲西班牙语的人口仅次于英语。要想在加州竞选州长,没有西班牙语人口的支持是不可能的。即使乔治·w·布什在竞选总统时,在加州也要讲西班牙语。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① UC: University of California, 加州大学
- ② gourmet: 美食家
- ③ oyster: 生蚝
- ④ only second to: 仅次于

Patterns

句型

◆ That's one of the ...



◆ 那是 …… 之一

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ That's one of the difficulties he has to take on.
- ◆ That's one of the most advanced tools.
- ◆ That's one of my colleagues.
- ◆ That's one of the hottest areas.



- ◆ 那是他要克服的困难之一。
- ◆ 那是最先进的工具之一。
- ◆ 那是我的一个同事。
- ◆ 那是最热的领域之一。

Scene 2

场景 2

After the tour of San Francisco, Tony took Dan to Reno. On the way to Reno, they passed Sacramento, the capital of California, and Lake Tahoe, a famous tourist site and also a casino place.

游完旧金山,托尼带丹去雷诺。在去雷诺的路上,他们经过了赛克瑞福托,加州的首府,还有它侯湖,一个著名的旅游点儿,也是个赌场所在地。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Tony: Lake Tahoe is gorgeous.

Dan: Yes. The white snow on top of the mountains, the blue sky, the white clouds and the blue water of the lake.

Tony: That should be in a poem.

Dan: Agree. I think we are entering Reno.

Tony: Yes. See the huge sign across the street. The largest small town in the world!

Dan: I like it. Wow, an ambulance!

Tony: They are getting an old man into the ambulance.

Dan: Probably too excited. The Uncle lost too much money.

Tony: You always joke around.

Dan: Is this casino city any different from the others?

Tony: Not really, just smaller.

Dan: The buffet is quite cheap. Let's go there.

Tony: I thought you were a gourmet.



托尼: 它侯湖的风景真美。

丹: 是啊, 高山的白雪, 蓝蓝的天空, 还有白云和蓝色的湖水。

托尼: 如诗如画。

丹: 就是。我们进雷诺了。

托尼: 进了, 看那横街巨幅标语: 世界上最大的小城市!

丹: 我喜欢。哇, 救护车!

托尼: 他们往车上抬一个老头儿。

丹: 可能太激动了吧, 老大爷输太多钱了。

托尼: 你总是开玩笑。

丹: 这个赌城和别的有什么区别吗?

托尼: 没什么, 就是小点儿。

丹: 自助餐真便宜, 我们去吧。

托尼: 我以为你是个美食家。

Dan: Too hungry to care about
that now.



丹: 太饿了, 顾不上那么多了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the casino cities, the food and lodge are usually cheap. Most of the restaurants operate twenty-four hours a day. There are also shows and entertainment in Reno, as in any other casino cities.

在赌城里, 吃住都很便宜, 大多数餐馆 24 小时营业。在雷诺, 和其他赌城一样, 也有表演和娱乐节目。

Related Words and Phrases

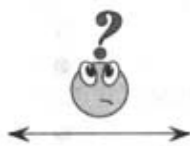
相关词语

- ① gorgeous: 美丽, 漂亮
- ② ambulance: 救护车
- ③ buffet: 自助餐

Patterns

句型

◆ Too ... to ...



◆ 太 不能

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Too busy to care about him.
- ◆ Too much to do.
- ◆ Too big to put into the car.
- ◆ Too hot to eat.



- ◆ 太忙了, 照顾不了他。
- ◆ 太多了, 干不过来。
- ◆ 太大了, 装不进车里去。
- ◆ 太烫了, 没法儿吃。

Topic 5 San Diego, Los Angeles and Las Vegas

第五题 圣地亚哥，洛杉矶，拉斯维加斯

San Diego is located in the southern California on the border of U.S. and Mexico. It is easy to go across the border to visit Mexico from there. San Diego is the city most suitable for living in the U.S.. The temperature changes only a few degrees all year round. From there, you can go up to Los Angeles in two hours. There are buses going to Las Vegas every day from Los Angeles. The buses take about six hours to get to Vegas.

圣地亚哥坐落在美国和墨西哥的边境上，是南加州的一个城市，从那里过境去墨西哥旅游很容易。圣地亚哥是美国最适合居住的地方，全年气温上下不差几度。从那里，北上到洛杉矶只需两小时车程。从洛杉矶到拉斯维加斯，每天都有大客车，大概要六个小时到达维加斯。

Scene 1

场景 1

Dan flew to San Diego for another conference. The relaxing atmosphere in this city impressed him, which reminds him of Hangzhou in China. People are walking slower than other cities. Nothing is in a hurry. Nice hotels and restaurants are along the coast. It is the best location for retirement. A colleague of Dan, Kumar, originally from India, went with Dan to the conference.

丹又飞到圣地亚哥开会这座城市悠闲的气氛给他留下了深刻印象，让他想起中国的杭州。人们的步伐也比其他城市慢，没有着急的事情。高档酒店和餐馆沿海岸而立，真是退休的好去处。丹的一个同事，库玛，是个印度人，也和他一起来开会。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Kumar: Dan, do you want to go for dinner with me?



库玛：丹，想和我一起去吃晚饭吗？

Dan: Sure. Do you know where to go?

Kumar: I asked the front desk. They recommended a restaurant by the beach.

Dan: Sounds great. What's special there?

Kumar: Seafood, especially oysters.

Dan: I like seafood. Let's go.

Kumar: You know, in other cities, you may have choice of a couple different kinds of oysters in a restaurant. Here in San Diego, you can find five or six kinds of oysters in one restaurant.

Dan: Really? That's great. Do they eat them raw?

Kumar: Yes. With cocktail sauce, ketch-up or mustard.

Dan: My mouth is watering.

Kumar: Then, let's go.

丹: 当然,你知道去哪儿好吗?

库玛: 我问了前台,他们推荐一个海边的餐馆。

丹: 听起来蛮好的,那里有什么特色?

库玛: 海鲜,特别是生蚝。

丹: 我愿意吃海鲜,咱们走吧。

库玛: 你可知道,在别的城市,在一家餐馆里可能有一两种生蚝。在圣地亚哥这里,一家餐馆可以有五六种生蚝。

丹: 真的啊?太好了。他们生吃吗?

库玛: 是。佐料有鸡尾酒酱、西红柿酱或者芥末。

丹: 我流口水了。

库玛: 那咱们走吧。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

San Diego features beautiful scenic areas. There are also a lot of bars you can go in the evening. The streets have a lot of Mexico flavors. There are some typical Mexican residences. Sometimes you also feel like in China, with kids running around on the streets, half naked.

圣地亚哥有着美丽的风景,晚上也有很多酒吧可去。街头有着浓郁的墨西哥情调,有些住宅就是典型的墨西哥式的。一些孩子会在街头跑来跑去,光着膀子,有的时候你也会感觉像在中国。

Related Words and Phrases

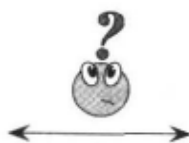
相关词语

- ① front desk: 酒店前台
- ② cocktail source: 鸡尾酒酱, 通常是吃佐酒海鲜用的
- ③ ketch-up: 西红柿酱
- ④ mustard: 芥末

Patterns

句型

◆ Do you ... them ...

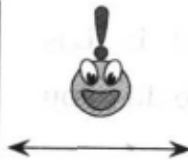


◆ 你 他(它)们

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Do you eat them alive?
- ◆ Do you take them home?
- ◆ Do you clean them every day?
- ◆ Do you let them go wild?



- ◆ 你生吃它们吗?
- ◆ 你送它们回家吗?
- ◆ 你每天都清洗它们吗?
- ◆ 你让它们玩得很野吗?

Scene 2

场景 2

After the conference, Dan and Kumar drove up to Los Angeles.

开完了会, 丹和库玛开车北上洛杉矶。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Kumar: Hey, did you notice all these checking points along the way to Los Angeles?



库玛: 嗨, 你注意到了吗? 往洛杉矶去的路上有很多检查站。

Dan: I did. Do you know what they are for?



丹: 我注意到了, 你知道是干什么的吗?

Kumar: For illegal immigrants?

● 库玛: 检查非法移民?

Dan: You are so smart. There are a lot of people going across the border between Mexico and the U.S. Those checking spots are for them.

● 丹: 你真聪明。在墨西哥和美国边境有很多人偷越,这些检查站就是给他们开的。

Kumar: There is such a long border between the two countries. It's very hard to control.

● 库玛: 这两个国家的边境线太长了,很难控制。

Dan: Tell me about it. I saw it on the TV the other day. Some of the Mexican women would come over to have a child, then go back home. They got an American citizen.

● 丹: 谁说不是呢,我有天在电视上看见,有些墨西哥妇女过来生孩子,生完再回家,生个美国公民。

Kumar: Amazing.

● 库玛: 真不可思议。

Dan: Well. We are almost in Los Angeles. Where would you like to go?

● 丹: 噢,我们到洛杉矶了,想去哪里?

Kumar: Number 1, Disneyland; Number 2, the Chinese Theater; and Number 3, the Universal Studio.

● 库玛: 第一,迪斯尼乐园,第二,中国剧院,第三,环球制片厂。

Dan: Don't you want to go to Hollywood?

● 丹: 你不想去好莱坞吗?

Kumar: It's just a hill. We can drive down the Sunset Boulevard for fun.

● 库玛: 那只是个山坡,我们倒是可以开车逛逛落日大道。

Dan: I want to add one thing. Find a great Chinese restaurant.

● 丹: 我还得加一项,找个中餐馆。

Kumar: Only if they have vegetarian food.

● 库玛: 必须要有素食。

Dan: Oh, yeah. You are a vegetarian. No problem. I'm sure they

● 丹: 哦,对了,你是素食者,没问题,我保证有“清炒素菜”给

Chapter Eleven

have Vegetarian Delight for
you.

Kumar: Okay.



你吃。

库玛: 好的。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

A lot of Chinese people live in Los Angeles. Los Angeles consists of many small towns. Some of them such as Monterey Park, also called Little Taipei, are full of Chinese. Even the policemen on the streets are Chinese. Basically living in such town, you need to speak little English.

很多中国人住在洛杉矶, 洛杉矶是由很多小城组成的, 有些小城像蒙特利公园, 号称“小台北”, 住的都是中国人, 连警察都是中国人, 住在这种地方, 你基本上不用说英语。

Los Angeles is a movie city. It was picked because of its clear weather. There are only a few rainy days in a year. The sky is always clear, making the city ideal for shooting movies.

洛杉矶是个影城, 这个城市被选中拍电影, 是因为它总是晴天, 一年到头也下不了几场雨, 晴朗的天空是它成为拍电影的理想城市。

The Chinese food in Los Angeles is so good, much better than some of the big cities like New York. The famous universities in the Los Angeles area are: Cal Tech, UCLA, and University of Southern California.

洛杉矶的中国餐馆非常好, 比有些像纽约这样的大城市还要好得多。洛杉矶地区著名的大学有: 加州理工学院、加州大学洛杉矶分校和南加州大学。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Check Point: 检查站
- ② illegal immigrants: 非法移民
- ③ Hollywood: 好莱坞
- ④ Sunset Boulevard: 落日大道
- ⑤ vegetarian: 素食者
- ⑥ Vegetarian Delight: 清炒素菜(菜名儿)
- ⑦ give it a shot: 试一下, 做一做试试

Patterns

句型

- ◆ We are almost ...
- ◆ Don't you want to ...



- ◆ 我们几乎
- ◆ 你不想

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ We are almost done with our homework.
- ◆ We are almost adults.
- ◆ We are almost thirsty to death.
- ◆ We are almost desperate.



- ◆ 我们就要做完作业了。
- ◆ 我们就要成年了。
- ◆ 我们要渴死了。
- ◆ 我们几乎绝望了。

- ◆ Don't you want to take a look?
- ◆ Don't you want to justify the spending?
- ◆ Don't you want to fight for justice?
- ◆ Don't you want to give it a shot?



- ◆ 你不想看看吗?
- ◆ 你不想为这笔花销说明理由吗?
- ◆ 你不想为公理而战吗?
- ◆ 你不想试一试吗?

Scene 3

场景 3

Kumar and Dan finally jumped on the buses for Las Vegas. It was a long way to Las Vegas. They had a good nap with the six-hour bus ride.

丹和库玛最后上了开往拉斯维加斯的大客车,到拉斯维加斯的路程很远,在这六个小时的路程中,他们美美地睡了一觉。

Dialogue 3

对话 3

Kumar: Dan, do you think we will have to stay overnight?

Dan: That's for sure. How much money do you plan to spend on the slot machines?

Kumar: What do you mean? I may make some money.

Dan: Good luck.

Kumar: At one time, I won \$200 out of the slot machine. The sound of the money coming out was so cheerful.

Dan: It did not take long for you to put them all back in, right?

Kumar: Right. You just can't stop when you win.

Dan: That's why the casinos can make money.

Kumar: What is unique about Vegas?

Dan: It's in the middle of nowhere.

Kumar: Yeah, and you have nothing to do but gambling.

Dan: The hotels don't even have one single clock and window.

Kumar: They want you not to know the difference of the day and night. Just keep going.



库玛: 丹, 我们是不是要在那里过夜?

丹: 一定要了。你想在吃角子老虎机上花多少钱?

库玛: 你什么意思? 我说不定还会赢钱呢。

丹: 祝你好运。

库玛: 有一次, 我在吃角子老虎机里赢了 200 元, 出钱的声音真让人高兴。

丹: 没多久, 你就把钱都送回去了, 对吧?

库玛: 说对了, 赢的时候你就停不下来。

丹: 这就是为什么赌场能赚钱。

库玛: 那维加斯的特点是什么?

丹: 它建在荒野之中。

库玛: 对, 你除了赌博没别的事儿干。

丹: 酒店里连一个钟、一扇窗户都没有。

库玛: 他们让你不知道白天黑夜, 就是接着赌下去。要是你饿了, 周围 24 小时都有吃的;

American Interpersonal

English

If you are hungry, there is food around 24 hours a day.

If you are thirsty, the pretty girls bring you free drinks.

Dan: Yes. Just keep going.

Kumar: Keep making money for the casinos.

要是你渴了,有美女给你送免费酒水。

丹: 是啊,就接着来吧。

库玛: 继续为赌场赚钱。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Las Vegas is the largest casino city in the U.S.. It is an ever-bright city. The casinos are decorated splendidly. All the lights shining at night make it look even better than during the day.

拉斯维加斯是美国最大的赌城,也是个不夜城,赌场都装饰得金碧辉煌,所有的灯光闪耀在夜里,比白天更好看。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① overnight: 连夜
- ② slot machine: 吃角子老虎机, 赌博机
- ③ niddle of nowhere: 在荒野之中
- ④ ever-bright city: 不夜城

Patterns

句型

◆ You just can't ...

◆ They want you not to ...



◆ 你就是不能 ……

◆ 他们不想让你 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ You just can't resist him.

◆ You just can't get it done.

◆ You just can't do better.

◆ You just can't let me down.



◆ 你就是抵抗不住他。

◆ 你就是做不成这项工作。

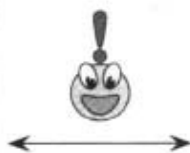
◆ 你就是不能进步。

◆ 你就是不能让我失望。

Chapter Eleven

Tours and Vacations

- ◆ They want you not to know better.
- ◆ They want you not to go home early.
- ◆ They want you not to chat on company time.
- ◆ They want you not to find out.



- ◆ 他们不想让你知道更多。
- ◆ 他们不想让你早点儿回家。
- ◆ 他们不想让你在工作时间聊天。
- ◆ 他们不想让你发现。

Topic 6 Orlando and Disney World

第六题 奥兰多和迪斯尼世界

In the southeast of U.S., the famous cities are: Orlando, Miami, and New Orleans. Disney World is near Orlando. If you want to fly to Disney World, you will have to land at the Orlando airport. We mentioned Disneyland in LA. There is only one Disney World, but there are four Disneyland, located in LA, Tokyo, Paris and Hong Kong. Disney World is larger than Disneyland, and consists of four theme parks: Epcot Center, MGM Studio, Magic Kingdom, and Animal Kingdom. Epcot Center has the exhibitions from many countries. China also has an exhibition there. In addition, China created its own theme park called Splendid China. There is also a Sea World in Orlando.

在美国东南部,著名的城市有:奥兰多、迈阿密和新奥尔良。迪斯尼世界在奥兰多附近,如果你要飞到迪斯尼世界,就要飞到奥兰多机场。我们提到过洛杉矶的迪斯尼乐园,迪斯尼世界只有一个,而迪斯尼乐园有四个,分别在洛杉矶、东京、巴黎和香港。迪斯尼世界比迪斯尼乐园大,有四个主题公园:爱颇考特中心、MGM 制片厂、魔幻王国和动物王国。爱颇考特中心有很多国家的展览馆,中国在那里也有展览馆。另外,中国还建了一个自己的主题公园,叫做锦绣中华。在奥兰多还有一个海洋世界。

Scene 1

场景 1

It's Christmas time. Amy wants to go to Florida to see the Disney World. Brian promised to come along with her. They started to prepare for their trip.

圣诞节的时节到了,艾米要到佛罗里达去迪斯尼世界玩儿,布莱恩答应和她一起去,他们开始准备行程。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Amy: I'm so excited to go to some place warm in the



艾米: 一想到要在这大冬天里到暖和的地方去我就好兴

Chapter Eleven

winter.

Brian: Yes. It's so cold in Boston. Going to Florida makes my winter shorter.

Amy: How are we going to book the tickets to Orlando?

Brian: Don't worry. I got some frequent-flyer's-miles. I think I'll be able to get us free tickets.

Amy: Really? How nice! Thank you for doing this for me.

Brian: Piece of cake. One trip to China can almost get you a free ticket within the continental U.S.

Amy: I didn't know that. I should sign up for the frequent flyer program.

Brian: Yes. You should've long time ago, when you first came to the U.S. You could've earned a lot of miles.

Amy: That's right. I'll get on the case right now.

奋。

布莱恩: 是啊, 波士顿这么冷, 到佛罗里达好像缩短了我的冬天。

艾米: 咱们怎么订去奥兰多的机票?

布莱恩: 别担心, 我有一些常飞旅客里程数, 我想够我们兑现免费机票的了。

艾米: 真的? 太好了! 谢谢你为我这么做。

布莱恩: 易如反掌, 去一趟中国就快够搞到一张美国大陆内免费机票的了。

艾米: 我还不知道这件事儿, 我应该加入常飞旅客俱乐部。

布莱恩: 是啊, 你早就应该加入, 第一次飞美国时就该加入, 你就已经挣了很多里程数了。

艾米: 那是, 我现在就加入。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Every airline company has the frequent-flyer-miles program, as well as the Chinese airline companies. However, people in China may not fly frequently, so they neglect this fact. An international flight can accumulate a lot of miles on such programs. In the U.S., it takes ten thousand miles to get free tickets for a domestic round trip. In China, it takes only ten thousand kilometers.

每个航空公司都有常飞旅客俱乐部,中国的航空公司也有,可是,在中国,人们不一定常坐飞机,所以他们忽略了这件事。一次国际飞行能积累很多常飞里程数,在美国,要积累一万英里才能得到一张国内免费往返机票,在中国,飞一万公里就能得到一张国内免费往返机票。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① LA: 洛杉矶的简称
- ② tickets: 票
- ③ frequent-flyer-miles: 常飞旅客里程数
- ④ frequent-flyer-program: 常飞旅客俱乐部
- ⑤ piece of cake: 很容易,易如反掌
- ⑥ free tickets: 免费票
- ⑦ sign up: 加入
- ⑧ get on the case: 调查某件事
- ⑨ Epcot Center: 爱颇考特中心
- ⑩ MGM Studio: MGM 制片场
- ⑪ Magic Kingdom: 魔幻王国
- ⑫ the Animals Kingdom: 动物王国
- ⑬ continental U.S.: 指美国大陆内的部分,不包括阿拉斯加和夏威夷

Patterns

句型

◆ Get on the case of ...



◆ 调查 的问题。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Get on the case of Mr. Li.
- ◆ Get on the case of the lost computer.
- ◆ Get on the case of salary adjustment.
- ◆ Get on the case of using company resources for personal matters.



- ◆ 调查李先生的问题。
- ◆ 调查丢失计算机的事件。
- ◆ 研究调整工资的问题。
- ◆ 调查利用公司资源干私事儿的问题。

Scene 2

场景 2

Amy and Brian flew to Orlando, rented a car, and drove to their hotel. The next day, they got up early and drove to the Disney World.

艾米和布莱恩飞到奥兰多,租了个车,开到酒店。第二天,他们早早起来开往迪斯尼世界。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Amy: I heard the tickets were expensive.

Brian: I already got them from the local Disney Club.

Amy: You did? How much did you pay?

Brian: It's \$80 per person for three days. And you can go to any park within the three days.

Amy: Wow. You saved big bucks for us. It's over \$100 if we buy here for the same tickets.

Brian: Knew it.

Amy: You are so smart. Why didn't you tell me?

Brian: I didn't want you to worry about such trivial things like the tickets.

Amy: You are so sweet.

Brian: Thank you. Which park do you want to go first?

Amy: MGM Studio. I wanted to be here since my childhood. My dreams finally come true.



艾米: 我听说门票很贵。

布莱恩: 我早就在当地的迪斯尼俱乐部买了。

艾米: 你买了? 你花了多少钱?

布莱恩: 三天的票, 80 元, 你可以去任何公园。

艾米: 哇, 你给我们省了好多钱。同样的票在这里要 100 多。

布莱恩: 早就知道了。

艾米: 你太聪明了, 怎么没告诉我啊?

布莱恩: 我不想让你为这种买票之类的小事儿操心。

艾米: 你对人真好。

布莱恩: 谢谢你, 你想先去哪个公园?

艾米: MGM 制片场, 我从小儿就想去那儿, 我的梦想终于实现了。

Brian: Glad to be part of your dreams.

布莱恩:很高兴能成为你梦想的一部分。

Amy: Get out of here!

艾米: 去你的!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Many kids have such dreams to come to the Disney World. Disney created so many cartoon characters that are deep in children's hearts: Mickey Mouse, Cinderella, Dumbo, Donald Duck, and Pooh Bear ...

很多孩子都有到迪斯尼世界的梦想。迪斯尼创造了这么多深深刻入孩子们心目中的卡通人物:米老鼠、灰姑娘、大耳像、唐老鸭、普熊

Related Words and Phrases

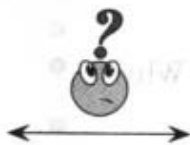
相关词语

- ① Disney Club: 迪斯尼俱乐部
- ② Knew it.: 早就知道, 猜到了
- ③ buck: 一美元
- ④ trivial: 细小的
- ⑤ so sweet: 人真好, 真讨人喜欢

Patterns

句型

◆ Glad to ...



◆ 很高兴

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Glad to be able to help.
- ◆ Glad to be your friend.
- ◆ Glad to have a job.
- ◆ Glad to see you.



- ◆ 很高兴能帮忙。
- ◆ 很高兴能做你的朋友。
- ◆ 很高兴能有个工作。
- ◆ 很高兴见到你。

Topic 7 Hawaii

第七题 夏威夷

Hawaii is probably the best place for vacation. Hawaii is actually a few islands in Pacific Ocean, far from the mainland of U.S.A. There is a large population of Japanese on the islands. The major island is Honolulu, the capital of Hawaii. But it is not the largest island in Hawaii. There are inter-island flights for traffic between the islands. The temperature in Hawaii is around 20 degrees Celsius all year round. There is very little rain during the day, mostly during the night. Some of the hotels are right on the beach, with shows going on day and night. There are also plenty of swimming pools if you don't like to swim in the seawater.

夏威夷可能是度假的最佳地点。夏威夷实际上是太平洋中的几个岛屿,离美国本土甚远。在岛上有很多日本人居住,主要的岛屿是火奴鲁鲁,也是夏威夷的首府,但它不是夏威夷最大的岛屿。在各岛之间的交通有飞机航班。夏威夷的温度总是20摄氏度左右,常年不变,白天很少下雨,下雨经常是在晚间。有些酒店就在海滩上,白天晚上都有表演进行,如果你不愿意在海水里游泳,还有很多游泳池。

Scene

场景

Janet and John went to Hawaii for their honeymoon. They stayed in the Hawaii Hilton in Waikiki.

珍妮特和约翰到夏威夷度蜜月,他们住在威凯凯夏威夷希尔顿饭店

Dialogue

对话

John: It took us so long to fly here.



约翰: 飞到这里花了这么久时间。

Janet: That's what you had to pay to get such a nice place.



珍妮特: 那是你要到达这样漂亮的地方所付出的代价。

John: Look at this hotel, right on the beach. Isn't it nice?

Janet: So nice that I can live here forever.

John: If you can afford it.

Janet: I saw a breakfast stand on the beach. Should we go and get something to eat?

John: Sure. Let's go.

Janet: Wow, so many kinds of fruits and pantry. Yummy.

John: Let's sit down and enjoy.

Janet: I heard the food here were expensive.

John: So be it. How many times can we be in Hawaii in our lifetime?

Janet: What's your plan for this week?

John: We need to take the cruise first. Have lunch on the ship with live performance. In the evening, let's tour the downtown Waikiki. Tomorrow, we'll go to the Pearl Harbor. There are also some other scenic areas that we can go.

Janet: Sounds like a good plan. And let's decide what to do for the last few days as we go along.

John: Good idea.

约翰: 你看这个酒店, 就在海滩上, 多好啊。

珍妮特: 太好了, 我可以在这儿住一辈子。

约翰: 如果你能住得起的话。

珍妮特: 我看见一个海滩上的早餐摊子, 我们去吃点儿好吗?

约翰: 当然, 我们去吧。

珍妮特: 哇, 这么多水果和糕点, 好吃。

约翰: 我们坐下来享用吧。

珍妮特: 听说这里吃的很贵。

约翰: 那又怎么样。我们一生能来几次夏威夷?

珍妮特: 这周有什么计划?

约翰: 我们首先要坐一次豪华游艇转转, 在船上吃午饭, 还有演出可看。晚上, 我们去威凯凯市中心逛一逛。明天, 我们去珍珠港, 还有很多其他风景区可以去。

珍妮特: 听起来很不错, 我们边玩儿边决定以后几天干什么。

约翰: 好主意。



Chapter Eleven

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Around the beach, there are constant shows: dancing, water ballet and others. Hawaii is a very relaxing recreation site.

在海滩附近,有连续的表演节目:舞蹈、水上芭蕾和其他节目,夏威夷真是让人放松的休养胜地。

Related Words and Phrases

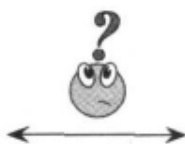
相关词语

- ① cruise: 乘游艇出游
- ② live performance: 现场表演
- ③ Pearl Harbor: 珍珠港
- ④ Honolulu: 火奴鲁鲁
- ⑤ Waikiki: 威凯凯市,是火奴鲁鲁岛的主要城市

Patterns

句型

- ◆ It took only ...
- ◆ I saw ...
- ◆ Sounds like ...

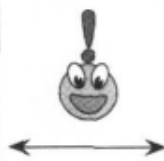


- ◆ 只需要
- ◆ 我看见
- ◆ 听起来像是

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It took only a few minutes to get there.
- ◆ It took only a few tries to get it to work.
- ◆ It took only one more step to solve the mystery.
- ◆ It took only one swing for him to knock down the tree.



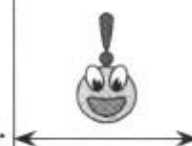
- ◆ 到那里只需要几分钟。
- ◆ 只试了几次就好使了。
- ◆ 再往前走一步,谜就破开了。
- ◆ 他只一击就把树打倒了。

- ◆ I saw a deer down the road.
- ◆ I saw a kid running around.
- ◆ I saw a black bear.
- ◆ I saw some guys working on a truck.



- ◆ 我在下面路上看见一只鹿。
- ◆ 我看见个小孩在跑来跑去。
- ◆ 我看见个黑熊。
- ◆ 我看见有些人在修卡车。

- ◆ Sounds like fun.
- ◆ Sounds like not easy.
- ◆ Sounds like a piece of cake.
- ◆ Sounds like we got a problem.



- ◆ 听起来很有趣。
- ◆ 听起来不容易。
- ◆ 听起来易如反掌。
- ◆ 听起来我们遇到麻烦了。

Chapter Twelve Disagreements and Problems

第十二章 闹意见和问题



There are not only good things in life. We can encounter differences, problems and even lawsuits. How do we handle this kind of situation? What are the proper words that we should use? We try to help you with these situations in this chapter.

生活中不是只有好事儿,我们会遭遇不同意见、问题、甚至状诉公堂。我们怎么处理这种情形呢?用哪些适当的词句呢?在这章里,我们来帮助你面对这些状况。

交往

Topic 1 Disagreement with Professors

第一题 与教授意见相左

的地道口语

The very first person you have to deal with in the school is your professor. You may have a major adviser, and you have several professors for different subjects. People have various feelings when they meet someone new. After a while, these feelings may change. America has laws against racism, but it does not mean racism does not exist. No matter what the situation it may be, you can have disagreements with your professors.

在学校里,你要面对的第一个人是你的导师,你可能有一个主要导师,还有几个教不同课程的教授。人们在乍见到一个人的时候,会有不同的感觉和印象,过一段时间以后,这种印象可能会改变。美国有防止种族歧视的法律,但并不等于种族歧视不发生,无论情形如何,你可能会和你的教授发生分歧。

Scene 1

场景 1

Dan felt one of the professors in the Department, Professor Smith, did not like him. He worked very hard on his subject, and thought he did well on the homework, the tests, and the reports. However, at the end of the semester, he got only a "B". He did not believe it was fair. Actually he was quite upset. He went to his own Advisor, Professor George Brown, for advice.

丹感觉到系里的一个教授,史密斯教授,不太喜欢他。学史密斯教的课,他很努力,作业、实验、报告,他样样都做得很好。可是在期末,他得了个"B",他认为这不公平,也很生气。他去找他的导师,乔治·布朗教授,请他帮忙出个主意。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Dan: Hi, George.

George: Hi, Dan. You don't look too happy.



丹: 您好,乔治。

乔治: 你好,丹,你看起来不高兴。

Chapter Twelve

Dan: Right. I just got my grade for Dr. Smith's class.

George: How did you do?

Dan: I got a "B".

George: That's not too bad.

Dan: You know. I rarely get a "B". Plus I worked really hard and did very well on this subject.

George: What were your scores for your tests?

Dan: 90 for the Mid-Term and 95 for the Final.

George: I think you should talk to Professor Brown. You talk to him first.

Dan: Okay. How should I talk to him?

George: Tell him your question and the facts. Don't argue. And ask him to reconsider. If he does not want to reconsider, let me know.

Dan: Okay. Thanks George.

丹: 是啊,我得到史密斯博士课程的分了。

乔治: 怎么样?

丹: 我得了个"B"。

乔治: 那也不错啊。

丹: 您知道,我很少得"B",再说我对这门课很努力,也做得很好。

乔治: 你考试的成绩怎么样?

丹: 期中是90分,期末是95分。

乔治: 我认为你应该和史密斯教授谈一谈,你先和他谈。

丹: 好的,我应该怎么和他谈呢?

乔治: 和他提出你的问题,摆出事实,不要争吵,请他重新考虑。如果他拒绝重新考虑,你再告诉我。

丹: 好的。谢谢你,乔治。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Professor George Brown did not want to talk to Professor Smith first because if he did, it showed that Dan talked to Professor Brown behind Professor Smith's back. Americans like to speak openly and frankly. Talking about somebody behind his back is deemed very bad. Most Chinese students don't want to talk to Professors for grades. It does not hurt to go through the facts if you think it is really unfair. But do not argue and get your feelings involved.

乔治·布朗教授不想先和史密斯教授谈,因为如果这样,就表明丹在背后告史密斯教授的状。美国人喜欢开诚布公,背后议论人是很不好的。大多数中国学生不和教授争分数,可是如果认为不公平,摆一摆事实也没坏处,但是不要意气用事,不要争吵。

往

的地道口语

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① grade: 成绩
- ② score: 分数
- ③ Mid-Term: 期中考试
- ④ Final: 期末总考

Patterns

句型

◆ Tell him ...



◆ 告诉他

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Tell him you couldn't do it.
- ◆ Tell him how hard you worked for him.
- ◆ Tell him you would do your best.
- ◆ Tell him it is unfair.



- ◆ 告诉他你干不了。
- ◆ 告诉他你多么为他卖命。
- ◆ 告诉他你会尽你最大努力。
- ◆ 告诉他这不公平。

Scene 2

场景 2

Dan came to Professor Smith's office. Professor Smith is in. Dan knocked on the door, and Professor Smith waved him in.

丹来到史密斯教授的办公室,史密斯教授正好在,丹敲了门,史密斯教授招呼他进去。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Prof. Smith: What's up?

Dan: I got my grade for your class.

Prof. Smith: You did not too bad. If I remember correctly, you got a "B". But you were really close to an "A".

Dan: I thought I did very well on the tests.

Prof. Smith: Yes, you did. But I thought your report was not quite up there.

Dan: I got an "A" for my report.

Prof. Smith: Did you? Let me look it over again. Maybe I made a mistake.

Dan: Could you go through it again? Thanks a lot for this.

Prof. Smith: No problem. I'll let you know as soon as I find out.

Dan: Great! Thank you.

史密斯教授：有什么事吗？

丹：我得到了您的课程的成绩。

史密斯教授：你做得不错，要是我没记错的话，你得了个“B”，但是你和“A”很接近。

丹：我以为我考试都很好。

史密斯教授：是，你都挺好，可是你的报告好像不太好。

丹：我的报告也是“A”。

史密斯教授：是吗？让我再看一看，也许我搞错了。

丹：您能重新看看吗？非常感谢。

史密斯教授：没问题，我会尽快告诉你结果。

丹：太好了！谢谢。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It could be that Professor Smith made a mistake. Maybe it was just Dan who felt that Professor Smith did not like him. It could be just a big

misunderstanding. Let's keep the fingers crossed for Dan.

也许史密斯教授搞错了,也许只是丹自己感觉史密斯教授不喜欢他,可能只是一个大误会,让我们祝丹好运。

Related Words and Phrases

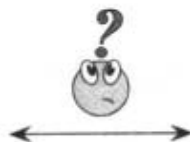
相关词语

- ① wave ... in: 招呼 进去
- ② up there: 很高, 很好
- ③ keep the fingers crossed: 祝好运

Patterns

句型

- ◆ You did ...
- ◆ I'll let you ...

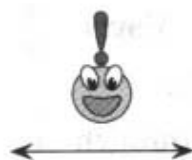


- ◆ 你做得
- ◆ 我会让你

Substitute Exercise

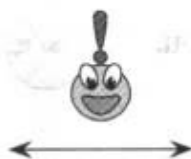
替换练习

- ◆ You did pretty good.
- ◆ You did very well.
- ◆ You did great.
- ◆ You did pretty bad.



- ◆ 你做得挺好。
- ◆ 你做得很好。
- ◆ 你做得非常好。
- ◆ 你做得很糟。

- ◆ I'll let you go home after you finish your homework.
- ◆ I'll let you find your favorite color.
- ◆ I'll let you talk to your mom.
- ◆ I'll let you finish it on your own.



- ◆ 你做完作业我就让你回家。
- ◆ 我让你自己挑你喜欢的颜色。
- ◆ 我让你自己和你妈妈说。
- ◆ 我让你独立完成这件工作。

Topic 2 Disagreement with Classmates

第二题 和同学意见不同

The group of people you are with very often may be your classmates. You take classes with them, and you may share an office with them if you are a graduate student. It is inevitable that you may have some differences with them.

你最常接触的群体可能是你的同学。你和他们一起上课,你如果是研究生,也可能和他们共用一个办公室。不可避免地,你会和他们产生不同意见。

Scene 1

场景 1

Brian was sitting in the Graduate Student Office of the Mechanical Engineering Department. He heard that some of his classmates were chatting, but he did not pay any attention to it. Later, Lamar asked him why he did not say anything.

布来恩坐在机械系的研究生办公室,他听到有些同学在聊天,但是他没有在意。后来,乐玛问他为什么不说点儿什么。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Lamar: Brian, didn't you hear that
Joe was insulting Chinese?

Brian: No. What did he say?

Lamar: He said that he saw a few
"Chinks" in the supermarket.

Brian: Really? I did not hear it.

Lamar: You should've told him he's
a white trash.

Brian: I don't argue with people
like that.



乐玛: 布来恩,你没听到乔在侮辱中国人吗?

布来恩: 没有啊,他说什么了?

乐玛: 他说他在超市里看见了几个“青克”。

布来恩: 是吗? 我没听见。

乐玛: 你应该告诉他,他是个“白垃圾”。

布来恩: 我不和别人那样吵架。

Lamar: I know. But you at least
should've said something.

Brian: I'll talk to him.

乐玛: 我知道,但是你至少应该
说点儿什么。

布莱恩: 我会找他谈的。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

"Chinks" is an offensive word for Chinese, just like calling black people "Negroes". In this kind of situation, you should not argue with the person, but you should point out that was not polite. If you are on the street, you need to use your judgment, not getting into a fight.

“青克”是一个对中国人的侮辱性称呼,就像叫黑人“尼哥肉”。在这类情形下,不要和人争吵,但是要指出这是不礼貌的。如果你是在街头,要视情况而定,不要因此发生冲突。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① Chinks: 对中国人的侮辱性称呼
- ② Negroes: 对黑人的侮辱性称呼
- ③ White Trash: 对白人的侮辱性称呼

Patterns

句型

- ◆ He said that he ...
- ◆ You should've ...



- ◆ 他说他
- ◆ 你应该

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

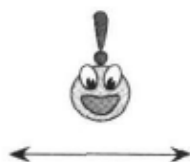
- ◆ He said that he would be back soon.
- ◆ He said that he was going to school.
- ◆ He said that he wouldn't comment on this.
- ◆ He said that he had everything under control.



- ◆ 他说他会很快回来。
- ◆ 他说他去学校了。
- ◆ 他说他不会对此加以评论。
- ◆ 他说他控制住局面了。

Chapter Twelve

- ◆ You should've told him the truth.
- ◆ You should've come to me in the first place.
- ◆ You should've given him a chance.
- ◆ You should've asked for permission.



- ◇ 你应该告诉他真相。
- ◇ 你应该一开始就来找我。
- ◇ 你应该给他一个机会。
- ◇ 你应该请求批准。

Scene 2

场景 2

Brian went to talk to Joe about the incident. He met Joe in the hallway.

布莱恩去找乔谈那件事，他在走廊里碰见了乔。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Brian: Hello, Joe.

Joe: Hi, Brian.

Brian: Do you have a second? I'd like to talk to you about something.

Joe: Sure. What's up?

Brian: You probably didn't intend to do this. And I'm sure you didn't refer it to me. I heard that you called Chinese "Chinks". Was that true?

Joe: Oh. I might've done it, but certainly not on purpose.

Brian: I knew you wouldn't do that on purpose. You know, as a Chinese American, this kind of thing hurts my

布莱恩：你好，乔。

乔：你好，布莱恩。

布莱恩：你有点儿时间吗？我想和你说点儿事儿。

乔：当然，什么事儿？

布莱恩：你可能并不是故意的，我也知道你不是指我，我听说你称呼中国人“青克”，是真的吗？

乔：哦，我也可能说过，但是肯定不是故意的。

布莱恩：我知道你不是故意的，你知道，作为一个华裔美国人，这种称呼会伤我的感情的。

American Interpersonal

English

feelings.
Joe: I know. And I swear I
won't do it again.
Brian: Okay. No hard feelings.
Friends?
Joe: Sure. Thank you for
reminding me.
Brian: You're welcome.

乔: 我知道,我发誓我不会再
这样做了。
布莱恩: 好的,不要有什么隔阂,
还是朋友?
乔: 当然,谢谢你提醒我。
布莱恩: 不客气。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Brian did not say that Lamar told him that Joe said "Chinks" because he did not want to drag Lamar into this. It could also complicate things.

布莱恩没提乐玛告诉他的乔说“青克”,因为不想把乐玛拉到这里,那样可能会把事情闹复杂化。

It is a crime to be a racist in the U.S.. On the campus, most people won't admit they have racial preferences. However, it does happen. You don't want to be insulted. At the same time, you don't want to spend all your time on this issue.

在美国,种族歧视是犯法的,在校园里,大多数人不会承认他们有种族主义倾向。但是,这种事情确实发生过,你不想被侮辱,同时你也不想在这些问题上花费你的所有精力。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① hallway: 走廊
- ② on purpose: 故意地
- ③ hard feelings: 隔阂,成见
- ④ racial preference: 种族主义倾向

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I knew you wouldn't ...
- ◆ I swear I ...



- ◆ 我知道你不会
- ◆ 我发誓

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I knew you wouldn't do it for me.
- ◆ I knew you wouldn't have done it.
- ◆ I knew you wouldn't go anywhere without me.
- ◆ I knew you wouldn't hurt your friends.



- ◆ 我知道你不会为我做这件事。
- ◆ 我知道你不会这样做。
- ◆ 我知道你不会不带我去任何地方。
- ◆ 我知道你不会伤害你的朋友。

- ◆ I swear I locked the door.
- ◆ I swear I wouldn't do something like that.
- ◆ I swear I didn't do it.
- ◆ I swear I got them all right.



- ◆ 我发誓我锁门了。
- ◆ 我发誓我不会做那种事儿。
- ◆ 我发誓我没干。
- ◆ 我发誓我都做对了。

交

往

的地道口语

Topic 3 Problems with Roommates

第三题 和室友闹矛盾

Roommates are also very important to your life. They live with you every day. Nothing is worse than an annoying roommate. You would be very lucky if you have no problem with your roommate.

室友在你的生活中也很重要,他们每天都和你生活在一起,没有比有个讨厌的室友更烦人的了。要是你和室友一点儿没矛盾,那你就真够幸运的了。

Scene

场景

Ming Li, Gary Cheng, and Ting Wang shared one three-bedroom apartment. They were okay for a while at the beginning. After a month, some problems arise. They cook together. Some may have done more work than the others, and some might be cleaner and neater than others. They realize it cannot go on like this forever, so they got together for a little roommate meeting.

李明,程盖瑞和王廷合住一个三室的公寓,他们刚开始处得还好,过了一个月,就出现矛盾了。他们在一起做饭,有的人干得比别人多,有的人更爱干净,他们意识到不能总这样下去,他们到一起开了一个室友会。

Dialogue

对话

Ming: Can we make some rules for our apartment?

Gary: Sure.

Ting: Rules are better than no rules.

Ming: I suggest that we have one person cook for dinner for two days, and the three of



明: 我们能不能给公寓做一些规定?

盖瑞: 当然可以。

廷: 有规定比没规定强。

明: 我建议我们每个人做两天饭, 三个人轮六天, 每个星期

Chapter Twelve

天大家一起做,怎么样?

us would be six days. So every Sunday we do it all together. How is that?

Gary: Sounds good to me. Whoever cooks will also clean the dishes.

Ting: That's probably too much for one person.

Gary: Well, the other two can enjoy.

Ming: Okay. If it's your turn, you will be doing all the work.

Ting: Fine. It's only two days anyway. Then you enjoy other four days in the week.

Gary: Also, whoever buys stuff for the apartment puts them down on the notebook, and we get it settled at the end of the month.

Ming: That's fine.

Ting: Okay. The same time to settle for the utility bills.

Ming: Good.

Ting: Then we are all set.

盖瑞:我赞成,做饭的人也洗碗。

廷:那都让一个人干可能太多了。

盖瑞:可是另外两个人可以享受了。

明:好吧,要是轮到你,你就全包了。

廷:好吧,只不过两天而已,以后每周剩下的四天你都可以享受。

盖瑞:还有,无论谁给公寓买东西,都要记到笔记本上,一个月结算一次。

明:那没问题。

廷:好吧,同时我们也分摊公寓的杂费。

明:很好。

廷:那我们都搞定了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The utilities include water, electricity, gas and telephone bills. It is very important to settle these expenses fairly. These small things may cause problems with roommates. People always have differences. Sometimes, you need to tolerate others to get along.

杂费包括水、电、煤气和电话费,公平地分摊这些费用很重要,这些小事儿也可能使室友之间产生矛盾。每个人都有个性,要互相忍耐才能和睦相处。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交往

- ① neat: 整洁
- ② settle: 结账
- ③ utilities: 杂费
- ④ bills: 账单

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

◆ Whoever ...



◆ 无论谁

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Whoever gets to school early needs to wipe the blackboard.
- ◆ Whoever needs help can come to me.
- ◆ Whoever pays no respect to teachers will be punished.
- ◆ Whoever falls in love with her will get hurt.



- ◆ 无论谁早到学校都要擦黑板。
- ◆ 无论谁需要帮助都可以来找我。
- ◆ 无论谁不尊敬老师都要受到处罚。
- ◆ 无论谁爱上她都会受伤。

Topic 4 Disagreement with Boss

第四题 和老板观点不同

This is a tough situation. You may not agree with your boss all the time, but you need to listen to your boss. Theoretically, you could suggest something else, but it may not be accepted positively depending on what kind of boss you have.

这是一个棘手的情形,你可能会和老板有不同意见,但是你要听老板的。理论上,你可以提别的建议,但是这取决于你老板的个性,你的意见也可能不会被正面采纳。

Scene

场景

Dan and his team are discussing product design options at a meeting. His boss Gerry is also present. Dan liked one of the concepts, but Gerry liked another.

丹和他的小组在开会讨论产品设计方案,他的老板格瑞也在。丹看好其中一个方案,可是格瑞喜欢另一个。

Dialogue

对话

Dan: I like option No.1. It's very simple and cost effective.



丹: 我喜欢第一方案,简单并且造价低廉。

Gerry: You think so? I like Option No. 3 better.

格瑞: 你这样认为吗? 我更喜欢第三方案。

Dan: Why?

丹: 为什么?

Gerry: It looks more stylish.

格瑞: 看起来更有风格。

Dan: Okay. Now we need to refer to our product definition. Which one is more important, cost or styling?

丹: 好的,现在我们要参考一下我们的产品定义,哪一项指标更重要,造价还是风格?

2024.10.10

Gerry: Yes. If you are not sure about what the customer wants, talk to them. Make sure that we meet the customer's expectations.

Dan: Okay. We will.

格瑞: 对, 如果你们不清楚客户想要什么就和他们谈谈。要确实满足客户的期望。

丹: 好的, 我们会的。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In this case, Gerry is very reasonable. He agrees that they need to meet the customer's expectations based on product definition. In general, for technical issues, you can express your views, and people would agree with you if you are right, even your boss.

在这个情况下, 格瑞很讲道理, 他同意要按照产品定义满足客户的期望。通常对技术问题, 你可以发表自己的意见, 如果你是对的, 别人会同意你的观点, 即使是你的老板也会。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① options: 方案
- ② cost effective: 低成本
- ③ stylish: 有风格
- ④ expectations: 期望

Patterns

句型

◆ It looks ...



◆ 看起来

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It looks okay.
- ◆ It looks awkward.
- ◆ It looks complicated.
- ◆ It looks great.



- ◆ 看起来可以。
- ◆ 看起来怪怪的。
- ◆ 看起来挺复杂。
- ◆ 看起来好极了。

Topic 5 Problems with Colleague

第五题 和同事闹别扭

There could be all kinds of problems with your colleagues. Responsibilities, jealousy, trust etc. can all become problems. The good thing in the U.S. is the salary is confidential. People don't know each other's salary, and most of them don't want to know other's salary. It does not do one any good to know other people's salary. There are always those who make more than you do, and you would feel bad if you find out.

和同事可能会有各种各样的问题。责任、嫉妒、信任等等都可能成为问题。在美国有一点好处就是工资是保密的，人们不知道别人的工资，大多数人也不想知道。知道别人的工资对自己没有好处，总有人工资比你高，你知道了会影响你的情绪。

Scene

场景

Robert and Gary were assigned to the same project. Robert was involved in the project earlier than Gary. Gary is more senior than Robert. It was not defined who is the project leader between the two. There were a few times when Robert was taking vacation, and Gary covered his job for him. Gary thought it was okay, but Robert thought Gary was taking away his role in the project. The situation became uneasy.

罗伯特和盖瑞被分配做同一个项目，罗伯特比盖瑞早参加这个项目，盖瑞比罗伯特工作年限更长一些。上级并没有确定这两个人中，谁是这个项目的负责人。有几次罗伯特休假，盖瑞帮他做了工作，盖瑞以为没什么，但是罗伯特认为盖瑞在取代他在项目里的地位，因此事情发展成不愉快的情形。

Dialogue

对话

Robert: What's going on, Gary?

Gary: What?

Robert: You sent out emails to



罗伯特：怎么回事儿，盖瑞？

盖瑞：什么？

罗伯特：你发送了伊妹儿组织会

- organize the meetings. I was supposed to do so.
- Gary: Oh. You were not in, so I thought I would cover for you.
- Robert: I don't appreciate that. You should've let me know first.
- Gary: I apologize for not asking for your permission. But I thought I was helping you.
- Robert: I don't think so. Are you trying to take over the project?
- Gary: Wait a minute. Is that what you were thinking? I had no intention of taking over your job at all. I have plenty of other things to do.
- Robert: Okay. Next time if you want to help, please let me know first.
- Gary: Okay. I will.
- 议,那应该是我做的事。
- 盖瑞: 哦,你没来上班,所以我替你做了。
- 罗伯特: 我不喜欢这样,你应该事先告诉我。
- 盖瑞: 我没有事先得到你同意,很抱歉,但是我以为我是在帮你忙。
- 罗伯特: 我不认为如此,你是不是要独占这个项目啊?
- 盖瑞: 慢着点儿,你是这样认为的吗?我可没有抢你工作的意思,我自己有很多别的事情要做。
- 罗伯特: 那好,下次你要帮忙时,请先和我说一下。
- 盖瑞: 好的,我会的。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

In the U.S., job security is a big thing. Robert got mad at Gary because he sensed some insecurity about his job. Don't try to do other people's job. Some people need help, some hate help. Always make sure that you are doing the right thing for your colleagues and for yourself.

在美国,工作的稳定性是件大事,罗伯特对盖瑞不满,因为他感到他的饭碗受到了威胁。不要试图做别人的工作,有些人需要帮助,有些人讨厌别人帮助他,要注意做事情应该对同事和对自己都有利。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① appreciate: 欣赏
- ② take over: 取代
- ③ job security: 工作的稳定性

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I apologize for ...
- ◆ Are you trying to ...

- ◆ 我为 道歉
- ◆ 你是否在试图

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I apologize for my behavior.
- ◆ I apologize for being rude to you.
- ◆ I apologize for being late.
- ◆ I apologize for offending you.



- ◆ 我为我的行为道歉。
- ◆ 我为我对你的粗鲁行为道歉。
- ◆ 我迟到了,很抱歉。
- ◆ 我很抱歉冒犯了你。

- ◆ Are you trying to slow me down?
- ◆ Are you trying to catch up?
- ◆ Are you trying to get into graduate school?
- ◆ Are you trying to fix the car?



- ◆ 你是否在试图拖我的后腿?
- ◆ 你是否在试图赶上我?
- ◆ 你是不是在努力要考上研究生?
- ◆ 你是不是想试着要把车修好?

交往

的地道口语

Topic 6 Present Yourself in the Court

第六题 出庭

The most possible reason for you to appear in the court is traffic violations. It is so easy to violate traffic laws, and people drive so much in the U.S.. Let's look at this kind of case.

最有可能上法庭的原因就是交通违规,人们很容易会违反交通规则。特别是在美国,开车的时间非常多。让我们来看一个这样的例子。

Scene 1

场景 1

Brian got a speeding ticket from the police. He wanted to go to court to try his luck.

布莱恩吃了一张交警超速罚单,他想要上法庭试试运气。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

Amy: Brian, are you going to pay your ticket?

Brian: I want to try the court.

Amy: What're you going to say?

Brian: I was following the traffic.

Anyway, I heard I could at least take some points off if I go to the court.

Amy: Points?

Brian: You'll get points when you get a ticket except parking tickets.

Amy: Oh, I see. The insurance company increases your premiums based on points,



艾米: 布莱恩,你会交罚金吗?

布莱恩: 我想试试出庭。

艾米: 你怎么说呢?

布莱恩: 我在随大流。不管怎么样,听说出庭至少可以减点数。

艾米: 什么点数?

布莱恩: 除了停车罚单以外,罚单都有点数的。

艾米: 啊,我知道了,保险公司加钱是根据点数的;对吗?

Chapter Twelve

right?

Brian: You got it. That's why I wanted to appeal.



布来恩：说对了，所以我要出庭。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It takes time to go to court. You have to make a good judgment to see if it is worth of going. If the court is far from your home, you can write a letter to explain your situation.

上法庭要花时间，值不值得去要考虑清楚，要是法庭离家很远，你可以写一封信去解释情况。

Related Words and Phrases

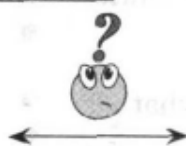
相关词语

- ① ticket: 罚单
- ② court: 法庭
- ③ points: 罚点
- ④ appeal: 上诉、申辩

Patterns

句型

◆ That's why I want to ...



◆ 这就是为什么我想要

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ That's why I want to go to graduate school.
- ◆ That's why I want to get this done early.
- ◆ That's why I want to go to DC.
- ◆ That's why I want to find an example.



- ◆ 这就是为什么我想要读研究生的原因。
- ◆ 这就是为什么我想要早点儿干完的原因。
- ◆ 这就是为什么我想要去华盛顿的原因。
- ◆ 这就是为什么我想要找个例子的原因。

Scene 2

场景 2

交

Brian did go to the court. There are certain time durations when you can show up at the court, get registered, and wait for your appearance.

布莱恩真的去法庭了。法庭有固定的时间,你可以在其间到法庭,登记一下,等着传唤。

往

的地道口语

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Police Officer: All rise! Judge Tony
Brown!

Police Officer: Have a seat!

Judge: Brian Zhao.

Brian: Yes.

Judge: Come forward, and
raise your right hand.
What you're going to
tell the court is the
truth, all truth,
nothing but the truth.

Brian: Yes.

Judge: Tell me what
happened.

Brian: I got a speeding
ticket, ticket number
98163.

Judge: Were you speeding?

Brian: It was down the hill.
I was following the
traffic. I did not
intend to speed.



警察: 全体起立! 托尼·布朗
法官到!

警察: 请坐!

法官: 赵布莱恩。

布莱恩: 在。

法官: 上前来, 举起右手宣
誓, 你要说的是事实,
全是事实, 没有一点儿
虚假。

布莱恩: 是。

法官: 告诉我是怎么回事。

布莱恩: 我得了一个罚单, 号码
98163。

法官: 你超速了吗?

布莱恩: 当时正在下坡, 我在随
大流, 我不是有意超速
的。

Chapter Twelve

Judge: Is this your first ticket?

Brian: Yes, Your Honor.

Judge: You can pay for the ticket today if you want. I'll reduce your points from three to two.

Brian: Thank you.

法官：这是你的第一张罚单？

布莱恩：是，法官先生。

法官：要是愿意的话，你可以今天付罚单，我把你的点数从三点降到两点。

布莱恩：谢谢。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Usually the Judge looks for facts, and makes his judgement based on facts. So if you have any proof of the case, you should keep them and bring them with you.

通常法官在法庭上需要证据，根据证据来作判决，你要是有证据，一定随身带着。

Related Words and Phrases

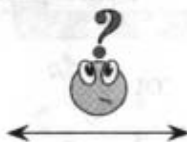
相关词语

- ① Your Honor: 在法庭对法官的称呼
- ② case: 案件

Patterns

句型

◆ Tell me about your ...



◆ 和我讲一讲你的 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Tell me about yourself.
- ◆ Tell me about your school.
- ◆ Tell me about your interests.
- ◆ Tell me about your hobby.



- ◆ 和我讲一讲你自己。
- ◆ 和我讲一讲你们学校。
- ◆ 和我讲一讲你的兴趣。
- ◆ 和我讲一讲你的爱好。

Topic 7 Road Rage

第七题 路怒

Road rage is probably a new word for most of Chinese. However, it is a serious problem in the U.S.. People can get really mad because of fighting for the road, and accidents happen as a result. Actually, in the cities of China, this also happens every day. Handling road rage carefully may save your life.

路怒对大多数中国人来说,可能是个新名词,但是,这在美国是很严重的问题,有些人会因为争路很气愤,进而引起交通事故。实际上,在中国的城市里,这种事情每天都在发生,小心控制路怒可能会让你免于非命。

Scene

场景

John and his wife Janet were driving from Detroit to Chicago. On Turnpike 90, a car cut in recklessly. John was mad at the car, and he drove past the car and cut in front of that car as well. John did not know what he was getting into.

约翰和他的太太珍妮特从底特律开车到芝加哥,在90号收费高速公路上,一辆轿车不管不顾地抢到了他们前面,约翰对此很生气,所以他也超过前面那辆车,抢到它的前面,约翰还不知道他惹上了麻烦。

Dialogue

对话

Janet: Look out! Another car got in front of you, and it's slowing down.

John: I think this car is with the car we just passed by.

Janet: What are they trying to do?

John: They are forcing me to slow down.



珍妮特: 小心! 另一辆车抢到你前面了,它在减速。

约翰: 我感觉这辆车是和我们超过的那辆车一伙儿的。

珍妮特: 他们想干什么?

约翰: 他们逼着我慢下来。

Chapter Twelve

(Suddenly they heard a big bang on their front window. 突然,他们听到前车窗上一声砰然巨响。)

Janet: Oh, my god. What happened?

John: They threw a water bottle on our window.

Janet: They are crazy. What should we do?

John: Get their license plate number and call 911.

Janet: Okay. There's an exit right ahead. Do you want to take it?

John: Let's do it. Call 911 right now.

Janet: Okay.

珍妮特: 噢,我的上帝,怎么回事儿?

约翰: 他们把一个水瓶子砸在我们车窗上了。

珍妮特: 他们疯了。我们怎么办?

约翰: 把他们的车牌号儿记下来,打911。

珍妮特: 好的,前面有个出口,你要出去吗?

约翰: 我们出去吧,现在就打911。

珍妮特: 好。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

When you get mad with somebody on the road, the best thing to do is to control yourself. You don't know who he is, and you don't want to get into a situation like John did. The other driver may be crazy or he may have a gun with him. Control yourself, and don't let the road rage control you.

当你在路上和谁争路生气,最好是控制你自己,你不知道对方是谁,也不想搞成像约翰的那种遭遇。另外的那个驾车人也许是疯了,也可能手里有枪,要控制你自己,不要让路怒控制你。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① turnpike: 收费高速公路
- ② exit: 出口
- ③ 911: 是美国的紧急报警电话
- ④ nametag: 胸卡

Patterns

句型

◆ Get his ...



◆ 拿到他的 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

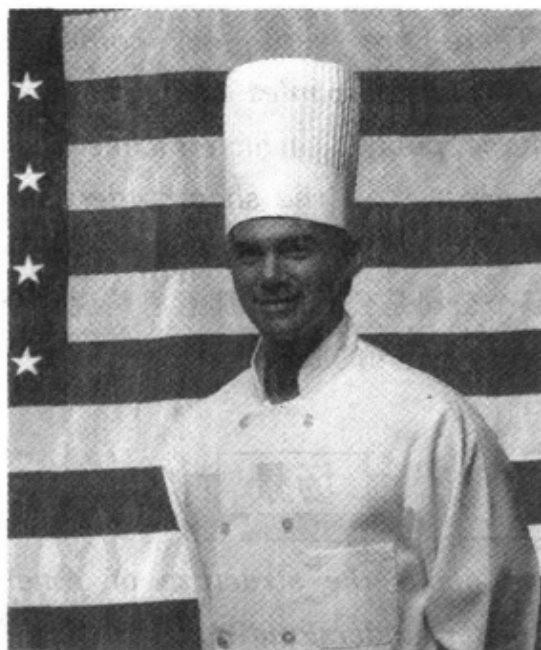
- ◆ Get his driver's license and insurance information.
- ◆ Get his lunch tickets please.
- ◆ Get his nametag to him.
- ◆ Get his file for me please.



- ◆ 抄下他的驾照和保险资料。
- ◆ 请收一下他的午餐卷。
- ◆ 给他拿他的胸卡。
- ◆ 把他的档案给我拿过来。

Chapter Thirteen Working in the U.S.A.

第十三章 在美国工作



After graduation, it is a good experience to work for a while in a U.S. company. It also provides you financial benefits. You worked hard to get a degree in the university, and it is time to pay back after graduation. The work experience will go a long way in your career. With more and more overseas Chinese returning to China (so called overseas returnees), it makes a lot of difference to have some work experience in a foreign company.

毕业以后,在美国公司里工作一段时间会获得很好的工作经验,除此以外,也会对经济上有所帮助。你在大学里为学位奋斗过,毕业后是获得回报的时候了。工作经验会对你今后的事业有深远的影响,现在从海外归来的中国人越来越多(所谓的海归派),有在外国公司工作的经验就会不同凡响。

Topic 1 Structures of American Companies

第一题 美国公司结构

The structures of American companies are quite different from the ones in China. There are very few companies belonging to the government. Most of the companies are private. Sometimes, you may hear that a company is public, which means the company offers their stocks in the stock market. All the shareholders own the company.

美国的公司结构和中国大不相同,很少有国有的公司,大多数公司是私人的。有时,你可能会听说哪个公司是公共的,那意思是说这个公司的股票是上市发行的,所有的持股人都拥有这个公司的股权。

Scene

场景

Brian is curious about the structure of American companies. He asked John to get a better understanding.

布来恩对美国公司的组织结构很感兴趣,他向约翰请教,来更多地了解情况。

Dialogue

对话

Brian: John, do you know anything about the structures of American companies?

布来恩: 约翰,你了解美国公司的组织结构吗?

John: I know some. What do you want to know?

约翰: 了解一些,你想知道什么?

Brian: Who is higher, the President or the Chairman?

布来恩: 谁位置更高,总裁还是董事长?

John: The Chairman. He calls for the Board Meeting, which makes all the important decisions for the company.

约翰: 董事长,他召集董事会,董事会为公司所有的重大事情做决定。

Brian: Does the Board decide who

布来恩: 董事会决定总裁的人选

Chapter Thirteen

is the President?

John: Yes.

Brian: What does the President do?

John: He runs the company. He would pick the Vice Presidents.

Brian: How many Vice Presidents does a company have?

John: That depends on the size of the company. Big companies like Ford may have hundreds of Vice Presidents.

Brian: Wow. That's a lot. What do they do?

John: Who knows? A joke said that you might need a Vice President for Parking.

Brian: Ha-ha. It's funny. The directors are under the Vice President?

John: Yes, unless he is in the Board of Directors.

Brian: Directors have managers reporting to them?

John: Right. You already know a lot.

Brian: Just a little.

吗?

约翰: 是。

布莱恩: 总裁做什么?

约翰: 他管理公司,也决定副总裁的人选。

布莱恩: 一个公司有多少个副总裁?

约翰: 那取决于公司的大小,像福特那样的大公司可能有几百个副总裁。

布莱恩: 哇,那可不少,他们都干什么?

约翰: 谁知道啊? 有个笑话说停车场也需要一个副总裁。

布莱恩: 哈哈,有意思,总监在副总裁下面?

约翰: 是,除非他是董事会的董事。

布莱恩: 总监下面是经理?

约翰: 对,你知道的不少啊。

布莱恩: 知道一点儿。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

American companies are divided into three categories: individual, partnership, and corporation. The individual and partnership can also register to separate personal interests and company liability. There are also

a number of regulations on how the tax is calculated on the income. The corporations can be either private or public (offering stocks).

美国公司分为三大类:个人公司、合伙人公司和股份公司,个人公司和合伙人公司也可以注册时把个人利益和公司利益分开。还有很多规定,来区别所得税收怎样计算。股份公司可以是私人的也可以是公共的(发行股票)。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① president: 总裁
- ② vice President: 副总裁
- ③ CEO: 首席执行官
- ④ CFO: 首席财务官
- ⑤ COO: 首席运行官
- ⑥ chairman: 董事长
- ⑦ board: 董事会
- ⑧ director: 总监, 董事
- ⑨ manager: 经理
- ⑩ stock: 股票
- ⑪ shareholder: 持股人

Patterns

句型

◆ That depends on ...



◆ 那取决于

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ That depends on your decision
- ◆ That depends on the size of your class.
- ◆ That depends on your belief.
- ◆ That depends on your performance.



- ◆ 那取决于你的决定。
- ◆ 那取决于你们班级的人数。
- ◆ 那取决于你的信仰。
- ◆ 那取决于你的表现。

Topic 2 Human Resources Department

第二题 人力资源部

Human Resources Department is a very important department in company. In the American companies, Human Resources Department provides services most of the time.

人力资源部是一个公司中很重要的部门,在美国公司里,人力资源部大部分时间是做服务工作。

Scene

场景

Brian and John continued their discussion on the structures of American companies. This time the topic was Human Resources Department.

布来恩和约翰又谈起美国公司的结构,这次的话题是人力资源部。

Dialogue

对话

Brian: What does Human Resources Department do?



布来恩: 人力资源部做什么?

John: Hiring, firing, training, insurances, benefits, retirement plans, salary, vacation, and recreation.

约翰: 雇人、解雇人、培训、保险、福利、退休计划、工资、休假、和休养。

Brian: They take care of a lot of things.

布来恩: 他们管理很多事情。

John: Yes. But most of time, they provide assistances.

约翰: 是,但是他们大多数时间在提供帮助。

Brian: What do you mean?

布来恩: 什么意思?

John: Say if the Engineering Department wants to hire a person, they will request HR

约翰: 比如工程部门要雇一个人,他们会要求人力资源部寻找候选人。

American Interpersonal

English

to find candidates.

Brian: Yes?

John: The Engineering Manager and his team will interview the candidates. HR will also be involved with the interview, but basically arranging the schedule and explaining the benefits.

Brian: Okay.

John: Then the Engineering Manager will choose the candidate.

Brian: I see.

布莱恩：然后呢？

约翰：工程经理和他部门的人会和候选人面试，人力资源部也会参与面试，但是主要是安排日程和解释福利。

布莱恩：啊。

约翰：然后工程经理挑选一个候选人。

布莱恩：我明白了。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Human Resources Department also takes care of a number of issues specified by the laws, such as equal opportunity for employment, and prevention of harassment and discrimination at workplaces.

人力资源部还负责很多法律方面的问题，比如同等就业机会以及避免在工作场合的骚扰和歧视。

Related Words and Phrases

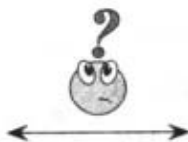
相关词语

- ① HR: Human Resources, 人力资源部。
- ② benefits: 福利
- ③ discrimination: 歧视

Patterns

句型

◆ What does ... do?



◆ 干什么的？

Chapter Thirteen

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ What does Amy do?
- ◆ What does a teacher do?
- ◆ What does a doctor do?
- ◆ What does a fireman do?



- ◆ 艾米是干什么工作的?
- ◆ 老师是干什么的?
- ◆ 医生是干什么的?
- ◆ 消防队员是干什么的?

Topic 3 Preparing for a Job Interview

第三题 为面试做准备

When you look for a job, it is very important to prepare yourself for an interview. You need to get information about the company you are going to interview with. You need to anticipate the possible questions. You can only be confident if you know what you are getting into.

当你找工作时,面试前做好准备工作非常之重要,你应该了解你要面试的公司情况,你要事先设想可能的问题,只有在你很了解情况时你才会有信心。

Scene

场景

Amy is about to graduate. She sent out a lot of application letters for jobs. Luckily she got a job interview. She consulted Brian for the preparation.

艾米要毕业了,她发了很多找工作的申请信,很幸运,她得到了一个面试的机会,她来找布莱恩请教怎样准备面试。

Dialogue

对话

Amy: Brian, a company called me for an interview.

Brian: That's great! You need to prepare for it.

Amy: How?

Brian: Get your hair done at a good hair saloon. Tell them you're going for a job interview.

Amy: Okay.

Brian: Buy an expensive suit.

艾米: 布莱恩,有公司让我去面试了。

布莱恩: 太好了! 你得准备一下。

艾米: 怎么准备?

布莱恩: 去个好发廊做一下头发,告诉他们你是要去找工作面试的。

艾米: 好的。

布莱恩: 买一套贵西装。

Chapter Thirteen

Amy: How expensive?

Brian: The more expensive, the better.

Amy: I can't afford something too expensive. Maybe \$300 to \$400?

Brian: That'll do it. The best is to find the dressing code of the company.

Amy: How?

Brian: If you know somebody at the company, ask him. If not, dark color would be fine.

Amy: Is white blouse okay?

Brian: Yeah, fine. And dressing shoes.

Amy: Black?

Brian: Black is good.

Amy: White pantyhose?

Brian: No. Dark or skin colored.

Amy: Jewelry?

Brian: Necklace, ring, and earrings are all fine. But don't wear too many pieces of jewelry.

Amy: How about make up??

Brian: Not much make up.

Amy: Perfume?

Brian: Be careful. People may have different taste. So try not to use perfume.

Amy: What should I take with me?

艾米: 多贵的?

布莱恩: 越贵越好。

艾米: 我买不起太贵的, 300 到 400 美元的怎么样?

布莱恩: 可以了, 要是能知道这个公司的穿戴规律就好了。

艾米: 那怎么能知道?

布莱恩: 要是认识什么人在那里工作, 可以问问。不然的话, 买深颜色的。

艾米: 白衬衣行吗?

布莱恩: 行, 穿皮鞋。

艾米: 黑的?

布莱恩: 黑的好。

艾米: 白连裤袜?

布莱恩: 不行, 深色或肉色的。

艾米: 戴首饰吗?

布莱恩: 项链、戒指、耳环都可以戴, 但不要戴太多。

艾米: 化妆吗?

布莱恩: 别化太浓。

艾米: 香水?

布莱恩: 小心点, 不同的人喜欢不同的味道, 最好不用。

艾米: 我带些什么?

Brian: Your resume, transcripts, diplomas and research papers, anything you want to show them.

布莱恩: 你的简历、成绩单、毕业证书、论文、还有你想给他们看的其他东西。

Amy: How do I get to the company from the airport?

艾米: 从机场怎么到公司去?

Brian: They might've reserved a car for you. Ask them.

布莱恩: 他们也许给你租车了, 问问他们。

Amy: I know that they reserved a hotel room for me.

艾米: 我知道他们给我订了旅馆。

Brian: When you get there, look at the local newspaper and find out the housing expenses. Figure out how much you plan to ask for salary.

布莱恩: 看一下当地的报纸, 看房地产有多贵, 算一算你想要多少工资。

Amy: It's hard to figure out. I'm afraid if I ask too much, they won't like it. If I ask too little, I'd be undersold.

艾米: 很难算, 要多了他们不乐意, 要少了我自己还不划算。

Brian: It's always hard to figure out the salary. Let them come up with the number first.

布莱恩: 是很难, 让他们先说工资数。

Amy: What if they want me to give a number?

艾米: 要是他们非让我说呢?

Brian: Give a range; say upper \$40's or low \$50's.

布莱恩: 给个范围, 比如将近五万或者四万多点儿。

Amy: That's a good idea.

艾米: 好主意。

Brian: Take a garment bag with you so you won't mess up your suit.

布莱恩: 带一个衣服袋, 别把西服弄皱了。

Amy: Thanks.

艾米: 谢谢。

Chapter Thirteen

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Because of different culture, interviews in the U.S. can be very different from in China. The differences range from dressing to talking about salary. Get prepared before the interview for possible discussions and questions.

因为文化背景不同,在美国和在中国的面试会很不一样,包括从打扮到怎样讲工资。面试前要想好可能的话题和问题。

Related Words and Phrases

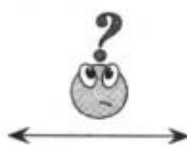
相关词语

- ① suit: 西装
- ② dressing shoes: 配西装的皮鞋
- ③ dressy: 打扮挺括
- ④ express mail: 特快专递
- ⑤ make up: 化妆
- ⑥ housing expenses: 住房消费
- ⑦ figure out: 弄清楚
- ⑧ garment bag: 装西服和衬衣的衣服袋

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Get your ...
- ◆ I can't afford ...

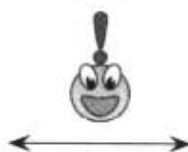


- ◆ 把你的
- ◆ 我 不起

Substitute Exercise

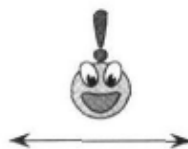
替换练习

- ◆ Get your laundry done at the coin laundry.
- ◆ Get your luggage picked up at the hotel.
- ◆ Get your grocery at the supermarket.
- ◆ Get your car back from the dealership.



- ◆ 把你的衣服拿到投币洗衣房去洗。
- ◆ 到旅馆取你的行李。
- ◆ 到超市去买蔬菜。
- ◆ 到车行把你的车取回来。

- ◆ I can't afford that car.
- ◆ I can't afford such a big house.
- ◆ I can't afford to lose my friends.
- ◆ I can't afford to let her go.



- ◆ 我买不起那辆车。
- ◆ 我买不起这么大房子。
- ◆ 我不能失去我的朋友。
- ◆ 我不能让她离开我。

Topic 4 Job Interview

第四题 面试

Interview is the critical phase to get your job. If you have several interviews, you want to go to interview last for the job you want most. By that time, you are a little experienced with job interviews. It is not easy for the interviewers to find out a lot about you in the short time, but it is long enough for them to decide if they like you.

面试是找工作的一個关键步骤,如果你有几个面试机会,你应该最后去面试你最想要的工作,到那时,你已经有点儿面试的经验了。在面试的短暂时间里,聘用者很难全面了解你,但是那点儿时间足以让他们判断是否喜欢你。

Scene

场景

Amy did go on for the interview. She had flown to the city of the company she was interviewing with. And she went to the company the next morning.

艾米确实去面试了,她飞到公司所在的城市,第二天早晨,她来到了公司。

Dialogue

对话

Receptionist: Hello, may I help you?



接待小姐: 你好,能帮忙吗?

Amy: I'm here for a job interview. My name is Amy Zhao

艾米: 我是来面试的,我叫赵艾米。

Receptionist: Oh, yes. Could you sign in please? Have a seat. Susan Smith will be right

接待小姐: 噢,是的,请签一下到,坐一会儿,苏珊·史密斯一会儿就来见你。

交

住

的地道口语

- with you.
- Amy: Thank you.
- ...
- Susan: Hello, Amy? I'm Susan.
- Amy: Hi, Susan. Nice to meet you.
- Susan: Come with me. How was your flight?
- Amy: It was fine. The flight was on time.
- Susan: You were lucky. Did you have a chance to look around this area?
- Amy: Yes. It was still early when I got here yesterday. So I drove around.
- Susan: How do you like it?
- Amy: It's a nice small town.
- Susan: Do you like to live in a small town or a big city?
- Amy: I like small towns.
- Susan: Good. I'm the Human Resources manager of the company. I'd like you to meet Richard. He's the Engineering Manager. If you were hired, you'd be reporting to him.
- Amy: Nice to meet you, Richard.
- Richard: Hello, Amy. Have a seat please. I just pulled out your resume. You worked on the design of an engine
- 艾米: 谢谢。
- ...
- 苏珊: 你好, 艾米吧? 我是苏珊。
- 艾米: 你好苏珊, 很高兴认识你。
- 苏珊: 跟我来吧, 旅途中还好吗?
- 艾米: 很好, 飞机正点到达。
- 苏珊: 你运气挺好。有时间在这附近转一转了吗?
- 艾米: 有, 昨天到得早, 我开车在周围转了一圈儿。
- 苏珊: 你喜不喜欢这里?
- 艾米: 挺好的一个小城。
- 苏珊: 你喜欢住在小城还是大都市?
- 艾米: 我喜欢住小城。
- 苏珊: 那好, 我是人事部主任, 来认识一下理查德, 他是工程部主任, 我们要是雇用你了, 他就是你的老板。
- 艾米: 很高兴认识你, 理查德。
- 理查德: 你好, 艾米, 坐, 我刚刚把你的简历找出来, 你做过发动机部件的设计, 你能谈谈你的设计吗?

Chapter Thirteen

component. Could you talk about that?

Amy: This was a project sponsored by the Ford Motor Company. We redesigned the component to make it lightweight.

Richard: What material did you use?

Amy: We used aluminum alloy 6061.

Richard: Did it pass the design verification tests?

Amy: It did. We performed several tests.

Richard: Tell me about it.

... ..

Susan: Well, you've talked to several people in the company. How do you like the job?

Amy: I like the job very much. And the people I met today are very professional.

Susan: Thank you. We'll get together and have some feedback from the people you interviewed with. We'll let you know as soon as possible.

Amy: When should I expect to hear from you?

Susan: We still have a couple candidates to interview. So it's going to be about two weeks.

Amy: I look forward to hearing from you.

Susan: How much do you expect for

艾米: 这个项目是福特公司资助的, 我们重新设计了这个部件来减轻重量。

理查德: 你们用的什么材料?

艾米: 铝合金 6061。

理查德: 设计通过验证试验了吗?

艾米: 通过了, 我们做了几种试验。

理查德: 给我讲一讲。

... ..

苏珊: 怎么样, 和公司里几个人都谈过了, 喜欢这个职位吗?

艾米: 很喜欢, 这里的人也都很专业。

苏珊: 谢谢, 我们会碰个头, 通一下信息, 有了消息就告诉你。

艾米: 什么时候能知道消息?

苏珊: 还有两个候选人要面试, 可能要两个星期吧。

艾米: 我盼望着得到你的消息。

苏珊: 你想要多少工资?

- the salary?
- Amy: Do you have a range for this position?
- Susan: It can be anywhere from \$40,000 to \$60,000 a year depending on experience and qualifications.
- Amy: That sounds good for me.
- Susan: When could you start if we decided to extend the offer?
- Amy: In two weeks.
- Susan: Good. Here's the benefit package with this company, something you can read on the plane. Have a nice trip back home.
- Amy: Thank you for everything. Bye!
- Susan: Bye!
- 艾米: 这个职位有个工资范围吗?
- 苏珊: 四万到六万年薪, 取决于经验和能力。
- 艾米: 听起来不错。
- 苏珊: 要是我们雇你, 你什么时候能开始工作?
- 艾米: 两周内。
- 苏珊: 好, 这是公司的福利待遇, 你可以在飞机上研究, 祝旅途愉快。
- 艾米: 谢谢你的照顾安排, 再见。
- 苏珊: 再见!



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

The most important thing in an interview is to be confident. Be yourself. You don't have to pretend you know everything. With what you have experienced and learnt, there must be a position that is suitable for you. You should have a can-do attitude if being asked to do something you do not know.

面试时最主要的是自信, 表现自己的性格, 不必装成什么都知道, 天生我才必有用。如果问到你不知道的事, 要有敢于克服困难去做的态度。

Related Words and Phrases

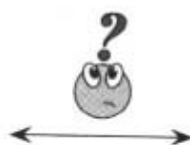
相关词语

- ① Look around: 到处转转看看。
- ② Extend the offer: 录用。
- ③ Lightweight: 轻型的。
- ④ Feedback: 反馈。

Patterns

句型

- ◆ When should I expect ...
- ◆ Have a nice ...



- ◆ 我何时能得到
- ◆ 祝 愉快!

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ When should I expect the news?
- ◆ When should I expect the report?
- ◆ When should I expect the prototype?
- ◆ When should I expect the first car off the line?



- ◆ 我何时能得到消息?
- ◆ 我何时能得到报告?
- ◆ 我何时能得到样件?
- ◆ 我何时能期待第一辆车下线?

- ◆ Have a nice day!
- ◆ Have a nice weekend!
- ◆ Have a nice trip!
- ◆ Have a nice holiday!



- ◆ 祝今天愉快!
- ◆ 祝周末愉快!
- ◆ 祝旅途愉快!
- ◆ 祝节日愉快!

Topic 5 Meeting in Company

第五题 在公司里开会

To be a leader in a company, it is essential to conduct meetings effectively. Nowadays, Chinese working in the American companies is not all satisfied as a regular engineer. Some of them did climb up the corporate ladder and became managers, directors, or even president or vice president.

在公司里当领导,能高效率地开会是很重要的,现在,美国公司里的中国人并不都满足于作一个普通的工程师,有些人也确实在公司的阶梯上攀升,成为经理、总监、甚至总裁或副总裁。

Scene

场景

In this case, two companies got together to bid a program. They are having the initial meeting for their cooperation.

在这个例子里,两家公司合作为一个项目竞标,他们为合作项目初次开会。

Dialogue

对话

Chairperson: OK. Let's get started.

This meeting is about
our proposal on the new
LX program. Scientific
Forming offered to help
us with the quote on
the recliners. Why don't
we go around the table
and introduce ourselves.
I'm Tony Adams, Program
Manager of the LX

会议主持人: 好啦, 我们开始
吧, 这次会是讨论
我们对新的 LX 项
目的提案, 科学压
加公司想帮助我
们投标转角器。我
们轮流自我介绍
一下吧, 我是托
尼·埃达姆, 约翰
逊 LLC 的 LX 项
目经理。

Chapter Thirteen

- program, Johnson LLC.
- Brian: I'm Brian Clark, Lead Design Engineer for LX program. Johnson LLC.
- Amy: I'm Amy Zhao, Director of Business Development, Johnson LLC.
- John: John Aspey, Application Engineer, Scientific Forming.
- Denise: My name is Denise Simon, Account Manager, Scientific Forming.
- Tony: OK. I'll start with some background information on this program.
-
- Tony: Sounds like we got a nice plan going forward. The proposal is due in four weeks. We want to have the design from Scientific Forming in two weeks. Any problem?
- Denise: That's fine. We are confident that we can get the design done in two weeks.
- Brian: We should schedule another meeting one week from now, and check on any issues we might have by then.
- 布来恩: 我是布来恩·克拉克, 约翰逊 LLC 的 LX 项目主管设计工程师。
- 艾米: 我是赵艾米, 约翰逊 LLC 的市场开发主任。
- 约翰: 约翰·埃司培, 科学压加公司的应用工程师。
- 丹尼斯: 我叫丹尼斯·西门, 科学压加公司的客户经理。
- 托尼: 好, 我来介绍一下这个项目的背景。
-
- 托尼: 我们的计划好像不错, 投标还有四周, 科学压加公司要在两周内给我们设计, 有问题吗?
- 丹尼斯: 没问题, 我们有信心两周内完成设计。
- 布来恩: 我们一周后再碰一次头, 看看有没有问题。

Tony: Good idea. How about
Thursday, March 31?

Brian: Good for me.

Denise: Could I confirm with you
this afternoon?

Tony: Sure. Once it's confirmed,
I'll send out an invitation
so you can put it on your
calendar.

Brian: Great.

Tony: Thanks for your help.

托尼: 好主意, 三月三十一号,
星期四, 怎么样?

布莱恩: 我可以。

丹尼斯: 我今天下午跟你定下来,
可以吗?

托尼: 好, 定下来之后, 我送一
个会议通知, 你们可以放
在日程表上。

布莱恩: 好极了。

托尼: 谢谢大家帮忙。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Meeting in a company is formal, especially when meeting with people from another company. Formal introduction and exchange of business cards are usually at the beginning of the meeting. The organizer would keep the pace of the meeting, and make the meeting as efficient as possible.

公司里的会议比较正式, 特别是有外公司的人员参加的时候。正式介绍和交换名片通常是在会议开始的时候。主持人会掌握会议的进程, 使会议尽可能高效率。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① quote: quotation, 报价
- ② proposal: 竞标方案, 建议书
- ③ LLC: Limited Liability Company, 有限责任公司
- ④ Co.: Company, 公司
- ⑤ Corp.: Corporation, 股份公司
- ⑥ Inc.: Incorporated, 股份公司

Chapter Thirteen

Patterns

句型

- ◆ We are confident that ...
- ◆ Could I confirm ...



- ◆ 我们有信心
- ◆ 我可以确认一下 吗?

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ We are confident that we will finish the design on time.
- ◆ We are confident that we will meet your requirements.
- ◆ We are confident that you will be happy with our proposal.
- ◆ We are confident that you will be satisfied with our work.



- ◆ 我们有信心能够按时完成设计任务。
- ◆ 我们有信心能够满足你的要求。
- ◆ 我们相信你会对我们的方案很满意。
- ◆ 我们相信你们会很满意我们的工作。

- ◆ Could I confirm my flight on next Tuesday?
- ◆ Could I confirm our appointment tomorrow?
- ◆ Could I confirm my reservation next Monday?
- ◆ Could I confirm our meeting at 2 o'clock?



- ◆ 我可以确认一下我下周二的机票吗?
- ◆ 我可以确认一下我们明天的约见时间吗?
- ◆ 我可以确认一下我下周一的订位吗?
- ◆ 我可以确认一下我们两点钟的会议吗?

Chapter Fourteen Working in China

第十四章 在中国工作



The economy is getting more and more global. So many foreign companies are setting up their operations in China. Only a few years ago, China was using mostly foreign designed and technologized cars. China is now developing its own designed and technologized. In the near future, China is going to be not only a huge market for the western world, but also a major designer, manufacturer, and supplier of many consumer goods. More and more foreigners are working in China. In this chapter, we will touch on a few subjects for working in China that are of interest to both Chinese and foreigners.

经济正在日益向全球化发展,所以很多外国公司在中国建立了分公司。仅仅几年以前,中国还大多是用外国的设计和技术制造轿车,现在中国在开发自己的设计和技术,在不远的将来,中国不仅会成为西方世界的巨大市场,也会成为许多消费品的主要的设计、制造和供应基地。越来越多的外国人在中国工作。在这章里,我们来初步探讨几个对中国人和外国人都感兴趣的话题。

Topic 1 Being Sent to China as an Expatriate

第一题 派到中国工作

In the past, sending someone to work in China has been very difficult because of the hardship in China. But recently this has changed. Some cities like Beijing and Shanghai have become very international. You can see foreigners everywhere: on the buses, in the subways, in the restaurants and bars. The quality of life has been greatly improved as well. For smaller and more remote cities, the environment is still much worse than the western world. Now there are more people willing to work in China.

过去,派人到中国工作很困难,因为中国生活水平比较低。但是最近情况变了,有些城市,像北京和上海,已经很国际化了,你可以到处见到外国人:公共汽车上、地铁里、饭店和酒吧;生活质量也大大提高了。小一些的边远的城市,环境还是比西方世界差得多。现在愿意在中国工作的人比以前多了。

Scene

场景

Mike Smith works in an automotive company in the U.S.. His wife is a Chinese from Shanghai. His company was opening up an office in Shanghai. Mike's boss Steven talked to him about an opportunity to work in Shanghai.

迈克·史密斯在美国的一个汽车制造公司工作,他的太太是中国上海人。他们公司将在上海开设一个办事处,迈克的老板史蒂文和他谈起一个在上海的工作机会。

Dialogue

对话

Steven: Hi, Mike.

Mike: Hi, Steven.

Steven: Do you have a minute?

Mike: Sure.

Steven: Could you come to my



史蒂文: 你好,迈克。

迈克: 你好,史蒂文。

史蒂文: 你有空吗?

迈克: 当然。

史蒂文: 你能到我办公

office? There's something
I want to talk to you.

Mike: Okay.

Steven: Sit down please. You may
have heard that we are
opening up an office in
Shanghai.

Mike: Yes. I talked about that
with my wife.

Steven: How do you like to work
in Shanghai?

Mike: Well, it would be good for
my wife. What kind of
position is this?

Steven: We are setting up a Tech
Center in Shanghai, and
this position is the manager
of the Tech Center.

Mike: Sounds very interesting.
Do you have the details of
the package?

Steven: Yes. You will keep your
current salary. In addition,
we will provide you housing
allowances in Shanghai.
You will have a company
car in China. If your kids
want to go to school
there, we will pay for the
tuition. You will also be
able to come back to visit
U.S. twice a year. The
company will pay all your
moving expenses.

Mike: Let me talk to my wife. I

室来一趟吗? 有点事儿我
要和你谈谈。

迈克: 好的。

史蒂文: 请坐。你可能听说了, 我
们正在上海开设一个办
事处。

迈克: 听说了, 我还和我太太谈
起过这件事。

史蒂文: 你喜不喜欢到上海去工
作?

迈克: 哦, 那对我太太倒是
不错, 什么样的职位?

史蒂文: 我们要在上海建一个技
术中心, 这个职位是技术
中心的经理。

迈克: 听起来很有吸引力, 你知
道这个职位待遇的细节
吗?

史蒂文: 知道, 你会保留你现在的
工资水平, 另外我们提供
在上海的住房补助, 公司
给你在中国配车。如果你
的孩子在中国上学, 我们
付学费。你也可以每年回
美国度假两次。所有的搬
家费公司全包。

迈克: 让我和我太太商量一下,

Chapter Fourteen

我想她会愿意去,但是在我答应之前,我要和她商量一下。

think she would go for it, but I still want to discuss it with her before I say yes.

Steven: I understand. This is a big move for you. When do you think you can let me know?

Mike: Tomorrow.

Steven: Great! I'll talk to you tomorrow.

史蒂文: 我很理解,这是一个大的变动,你什么时候能给我回复?

迈克: 明天。

史蒂文: 太好了! 我明天再和你谈。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

There would be many difficulties for Americans to live in China, more difficulties than Chinese living in the U.S.. One of the reasons is the language barrier. Many Chinese speak fairly good English, but very few Americans speak Chinese. However, Americans are open minded, which helps for them to adapt to a foreign culture.

美国人生活在中国有很多困难,比中国人生活在美国还困难,原因之一是语言障碍。很多中国人英语说得不错,但是很少有美国人会说汉语。可是,美国人心胸开阔,对他们适应外国文化很有帮助。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① opportunity: 机会
- ② hardship: 生活困难
- ③ allowances: 补助
- ④ Tech Center: Technical Center, 技术中心
- ⑤ go over: 详细讨论
- ⑥ record sales: 创纪录的销售额
- ⑦ come around: 想通
- ⑧ layoff: 解雇

Patterns

句型

- ◆ There's something that I want to ...
- ◆ You may have heard ...
- ◆ I think she would ...



- ◆ 有点事儿我要
- ◆ 你可能听说了
- ◆ 我想她会

Substitute Exercise

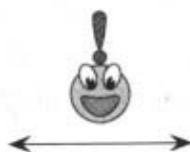
替换练习

- ◆ There's something that I want to share with you.
- ◆ There's something that I want to ask for your opinion.
- ◆ There's something that I want to go over with you.
- ◆ There's something that I want to confirm with you.



- ◆ 有点事儿我要让你了解。
- ◆ 有点事儿我要问问你的意见。
- ◆ 有点事儿我要和你详细讨论一下。
- ◆ 有点事儿我要和你确认一下。

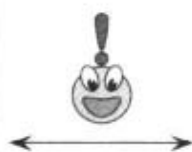
- ◆ You may have heard about Brent.
- ◆ You may have heard that we are setting up a new Tech Center.
- ◆ You may have heard that our company had record sales this year.
- ◆ You may have heard that our competitors are not doing well.



- ◆ 你可能听说伯兰特的事了。
- ◆ 你可能听说了我们正在开设一个技术中心。
- ◆ 你可能听说了我们公司今年销售额创记录了。
- ◆ 你可能听说了我们的竞争对手境况不太好。

Chapter Fourteen

- ◆ I think she would take the offer.
- ◆ I think she would not like this.
- ◆ I think she would be affected by the layoff.
- ◆ I think she would come around



- ◆ 我想她会接受聘用的条件的。
- ◆ 我想她不会喜欢这件事。
- ◆ 我想这次解雇会影响到她。
- ◆ 我想她会想通的。

交往

Topic 2 Negotiations between Chinese and Americans

第二题 中美谈判

的地道口语

As more and more American companies are doing business in China, there are always negotiations. It could be for a joint venture, a manufacturing operation, a real estate deal, or simply for rent of an apartment. Because of the culture differences, each side would have a different attitude during the negotiation.

随着越来越多的美国公司在中国开展业务,总会有谈判发生。谈判可能是关于一个合资企业、一个生产工厂、一项房地产业务或者只是简单地租一个公寓。因为文化上的差异,在谈判中双方都会有不同的态度。

Scene

场景

Mike did take the opportunity to work in Shanghai, and moved all his family, his wife and two kids, to Shanghai. His wife does not work, so it was not too difficult for her to decide to come back to China. Now they are looking for an apartment to move in. Living in the hotel for too long is no fun at all. The company will pay for the apartment. But they would like to pay for the rent, the utilities, and the furniture as one bill. Mike started the negotiation with the landlord, Mr. Wang.

迈克接受了到上海工作的机会,带着他的全家,太太和两个孩子,搬到上海。他的太太不工作,所以决定回到上海对她来说并不困难。现在他们在找房子,住在旅馆里时间长了很不舒服。公司会付租房的费用,但是公司希望把房租、水电、和家具费用都一起付清。迈克开始和房主王先生谈判。

Dialogue

对话

Mike: Hello, my name is Mike.

Mr. Wang: Hi, my name is Wang.

迈克: 你好,我叫迈克。

王先生: 你好,我姓王,你可以叫

Chapter Fourteen

我老王。

You can call me Lao Wang.

Mike: Lao Wang. How much is the rent for your apartment?

Mr. Wang: Fifteen thousand RMB per month.

Mike: Could you include utilities such as electricity, gas, water, satellite television and Internet access?

Mr. Wang: That is hard to calculate.

Mike: Could you make an estimate?

Mr. Wang: Okay. Let me see, 500 for electricity, 100 for water, 300 for gas, 100 for Internet access, 1000 for administration fee, 500 for satellite TV, so the total is now seventeen thousand five hundred per month.

Mike: Does the rent include all the furniture?

Mr. Wang: Yes.

Mike: How long do you want the lease to be?

Mr. Wang: The longer the better, but at least one year.

Mike: Okay. Let's go with one year. How much is the security deposit?

Mr. Wang: Twenty thousand RMB.

迈克: 老王, 你的房子要租多少钱?

王先生: 月租一万五千人民币。

迈克: 你能把像电、煤气、水、卫星电视、上网费都包括在房租里吗?

王先生: 那不太好算。

迈克: 你能估计一下吗?

王先生: 好吧, 我来看看, 电费 500 元, 水费 100 元, 煤气 300 元, 上网费 100 元, 物业管理费 1000 元, 卫星电视 500 元, 那现在月租一共是一万七千五百元。

迈克: 租金包括所有的家具吗?

王先生: 包括。

迈克: 你想签多长时间租约?

王先生: 越长越好, 至少一年。

迈克: 好吧, 那我们就签一年, 押金要多少?

王先生: 两万人民币。

Mike: No. Our company only allows security deposit about one-month rent.

Mr. Wang: Well, I have a lot of stuff in this apartment.

Mike: You are signing the contract with our company, not with me. The company would be responsible if anything is missing.

Mr. Wang: Okay. It's fine to have security deposit equal to one-month rent, but you got to pay the rent for the entire year.

Mike: What? It's impossible. We can only pay every three months.

Mr. Wang: Well. What if you break the lease after three months?

Mike: We can set up a penalty in the contract for breaking the contract. It could be that we have to pay the balance for the whole year. But there is no way that we can pay the entire year right now.

Mr. Wang: How about every half year?

Mike: Well, I would like to pay you. But as I said, you are signing the contract with the company, and the company does not allow me to

迈克: 不行,我们公司只允许交相当于一个月房租的押金。

王先生: 哦,可是我在这间房里有很多东西呀。

迈克: 你是和我们公司签合同,不是和我,要是少了什么东西,公司会负责的。

王先生: 好吧,可以交相当于一个月房租的押金,但是全年的房租你要一次性付清。

迈克: 什么? 那是不可能的,我们只能季交。

王先生: 那样,你要是三个月后违约怎么办?

迈克: 我们可以在合同里设定一个违约的处罚条款,可以是必须补齐全年的房费,但是不可能全年的房租一次性付清。

王先生: 那半年交行不行?

迈克: 我倒是愿意交给你,可是我刚才说了,你是和我们公司签合同,公司不允许我这样做,我都没有和你讨价还价,你还是好好想

Chapter Fourteen

想再告诉我吧。

do so. We didn't even bargain with you on the rent. You got to think about this deal and let me know.

Mr. Wang: Okay. I will let you know tomorrow.



王先生：好吧，我明天给你信儿。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Americans pay more attention to legal documents and contracts than Chinese. But Chinese do not trust contracts that much. * Chinese think cash is much more assuring than a contract on paper.

美国人比中国人更重视法律文件和合同，中国人则不太相信合同，中国人认为现金比合同要保险得多。

Related Words and Phrases

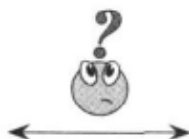
相关词语

- ① RMB: 人民币
- ② utilities: 杂费
- ③ lease: 租约
- ④ contract: 合同
- ⑤ security deposit: 押金
- ⑥ rent: 房租
- ⑦ balance: 余额
- ⑧ bargain: 讨价还价
- ⑨ dumb: 傻瓜

Patterns

句型

- ◆ It's fine to ...
- ◆ You got to ...



- ◆ 可以
- ◆ 你必须

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It's fine to be dumb.
- ◆ It's fine to wear this shirt.
- ◆ It's fine to go to bed late on weekends.
- ◆ It's fine to believe in Santa Claus.



- ◆ 当一次傻瓜也没什么。
- ◆ 穿这件衬衫也不错。
- ◆ 周末可以晚点儿睡觉。
- ◆ 信圣诞老人没什么不好。

- ◆ You got to go with me.
- ◆ You got to save him.
- ◆ You got to see this.
- ◆ You got to let him go.



- ◆ 你必须跟我走。
- ◆ 你必须救救他。
- ◆ 你一定要看看这个。
- ◆ 你必须放他走。

Topic 3 Joint Ventures and Market Development

第三题 合资企业和市场开发

The huge market of China attracted numerous foreign investors. However, not everyone makes money in China. In recent years, the Chinese automotive industry has really taken off. The sales have been increasing at the pace of more than 50% a year. At this rate, China will surpass most countries in the world in ten years.

中国的巨大市场吸引了众多的外国投资者。可是,并不是每个人都能在中国赚钱。最近几年,中国的汽车工业直线上升,每年的营业额以超过百分之五十的速率递增。以这种速度,在十年内中国会超过世界上大多数国家。

The joint ventures are usually formed under the agreement that the foreign companies supply their technologies and the Chinese partners provide the market.

合资公司通常是在这样的条件下达成协议的:外国公司提供技术,中方合作伙伴提供市场。

Scene

场景

American company Viron is forming a joint venture with a Chinese auto OEM. The joint venture will produce batteries for cars and minivans. Mike is the representative from Viron and he is in the process of negotiation with the Chinese representative Mr. Bai.

美国公司威意荣在和一家中国汽车制造商谈合资,合资后的企业为轿车和小面包车供应电池,迈克是威意荣公司的代表,他在和中方代表白先生谈判。

Dialogue

对话

Mike: Mr. Bai, we are very interested in the joint



迈克: 白先生,我们对合资很感兴趣。可是,在我们大量

venture. However, before we invest tons of money in the joint venture, we need to have a feasible business plan.

Mr. Bai: What do you mean by business plan?

Mike: We need to analyze the market, and see how much we can sell, what is the profit margin, and how many years it's going to take for us to get our money back.

Mr. Bai: Oh, we have done the market analysis. And here is the breakdown. The total investment would be fifty million dollars. The sale is projected as two hundred million dollars each year with profit margin of 10%. We will get our money back in three years.

Mike: Did you take into account of the interests and taxes?

Mr. Bai: Yes. The Chinese government has favorable tax policies for joint ventures. Without the interests we will get our money back in two and half years.

Mike: Are you sure about the market forecast?

投资之前,我们必须要有
一个可行的商务计划。

白先生:你说的商务计划是什么意思?

迈克:我们需要分析市场,看销售额能是多少,利润率是多少,要花多少年能把钱赚回来。

白先生:哦,我们已经做了市场分析,这里是详细的说明,总投资五千万美元,每年销售额预计两亿美元,利润百分之十,在三年内能收回投资。

迈克:你包括利息和税收了吗?

白先生:包括了,中国政府对合资公司有税收方面的优惠政策,如果不算利息的话,我们两年半就能收回投资。

迈克:你对这个市场预测有信心吗?

Chapter Fourteen

Mr. Bai: Yes. The joint venture will have all the current customers we have. Your company just needs to provide us the technologies and part of the capital.

Mike: Could you provide us the details of the market analysis? And please show us it's based on facts.

Mr. Bai: No problem.

白先生：有信心，合资公司会拥有我们现有所有的客户，你们公司只需要给我们提供技术和一部分资金。

迈克：你能提供给我们市场分析的详细资料吗？请证明这些分析是以事实为基础的。

白先生：没问题。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Foreign companies come to China to make money. To form a joint venture, they would have to see the bright future in China. Chinese partners need to provide adequate background information and convincing market analysis.

外国公司到中国来是要赚钱。要想成立合资公司，他们必须要看到在中国的光明前景，中方要提供充分的背景资料和有说服力的市场分析。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① OEM: 原造商
- ② feasible: 可行的
- ③ feasibility: 可行性
- ④ business plan: 商务计划
- ⑤ market analysis: 市场分析
- ⑥ profit margin: 利润率
- ⑦ projected sales: 预测销售额
- ⑧ market forecast: 市场预测
- ⑨ interests: 利息
- ⑩ taxes: 税
- ⑪ capital: 资本, 资金

Patterns

句型

- ◆ What do you mean by ...
- ◆ Did you take into account of ...
- ◆ Could you provide us ...



- ◆ 你说的……是什么意思?
- ◆ 你包括了(考虑到)……
- ◆ 你能给我们提供……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ What do you mean by Market Forecast?
- ◆ What do you mean by a free ride?
- ◆ What do you mean by junk food?
- ◆ What do you mean by a digital phone?



- ◆ 你说的市场预测是什么意思?
- ◆ 你说的搭便车是什么意思?
- ◆ 你说的垃圾食品是什么意思?
- ◆ 你说的数码电话是什么意思?

- ◆ Did you take into account of the extra expenses?
- ◆ Did you take into account of the additional members from Red Cross?
- ◆ Did you take into account of the lower labor rate?
- ◆ Did you take into account of unpredictable expenses?



- ◆ 你包括了额外的花费了吗?
- ◆ 你考虑到红十字会的额外成员了吗?
- ◆ 你考虑到较低的劳动力费用了吗?
- ◆ 你包括了不可预见的费用了吗?

- ◆ Could you provide us a map of the city?
- ◆ Could you provide us a full tank of gas?
- ◆ Could you provide us a direction?
- ◆ Could you provide us food and lodge?



- ◆ 你能给我们提供这个城市的地图吗?
- ◆ 你能给我们提供一箱汽油吗?
- ◆ 你能给我们指一下路吗?
- ◆ 你能给我们提供食宿吗?

Topic 4 Making Friends with Chinese

第四题 和中国人交朋友

There are many foreigners who are interested in the Chinese cultures, languages, life styles and history. They want to make friends with Chinese, both in China and overseas. However, because of the cultural differences, there could be misunderstandings. We will present a couple of cases to show the cultural differences.

有很多外国人对中国文化、语言、生活方式和历史感兴趣,他们想和中国人交朋友,无论是在中国还是在海外。可是,由于文化的差别,可能会产生误会,我们来看两个文化差别的例子。

Scene 1

场景 1

James is a college boy from the U.S.. He came to China to attend a summer school for Chinese. He is funny and makes jokes all the time. He has met a few Chinese fellows on campus: Ming Zhao, Dandan Song and Lily Wang.

詹姆斯是个美国大学生,他到中国来参加一个暑期中文班。他很风趣,经常开玩笑,在校园里,他认识了几个中国朋友:赵明、刘丹丹、王丽莉。

Dialogue 1

对话 1

James: Ming, how do you say, "I love you" in Chinese?



詹姆斯: 明,用中文怎么说“我爱你”?

Ming: Wo ai ni.

明: 我爱你。

James: Dandan, wo ai ni.

詹姆斯: 丹丹,我爱你。

(Dandan immediately blushed, and walked away. 丹丹脸一下子就红了,转身走掉了。)

James: What happened to Dandan?
Did I offend her?

詹姆斯: 丹丹怎么了? 我冒犯她了吗?

Ming: Yes. You shouldn't have said "wo ai ni" just like that.

James: Why?

Ming: Did you really mean it?

James: Well, I was joking.

Ming: See. Chinese take this kind of expressions very seriously. Dandan felt insulted that you were making such jokes with her.

James: I'm sorry. I didn't know that.

明: 是,你不该随便就说“我爱你”。

詹姆斯: 为什么?

明: 你真心爱她吗?

詹姆斯: 噢,我就是开个玩笑。

明: 你看,中国人对这类表示是很在乎的,你和她这样开玩笑,丹丹感到受了侮辱。

詹姆斯: 对不起,我不知道。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It may not be a big deal for James to make a joke like that. But most girls are not used to this kind of jokes in China. Also, some Americans and Europeans are used to hugging and kissing. These are not custom in China. Even friends of opposite sex may not hug, kiss or touch each other.

对詹姆斯来说,这种玩笑不算什么,但是在中国大多数女孩儿不习惯于这类笑话。有些美国人和欧洲人还习惯拥抱和亲吻,这些都不是中国的风俗习惯,即使是朋友,异性之间也一般不会拥抱亲吻对方。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① summer school: 暑期学校
- ② blush: 脸红
- ③ offend: 冒犯
- ④ kiss: 亲吻
- ⑤ hug: 拥抱
- ⑥ expressions: 表示,表达,表情

Patterns

句型

◆ Did you really ...



◇ 你真的 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Did you really go to Japan?
- ◆ Did you really want to race?
- ◆ Did you really hurt the dog?
- ◆ Did you really want me to go?



- ◇ 你真的去日本了吗?
- ◇ 你真的要赛跑吗?
- ◇ 你真的伤了那条狗吗?
- ◇ 你真的要我离开吗?

Scene 2

场景 2

James apologized to Dandan and they became friends again. The other day, Dandan and James were chatting again.

詹姆斯向丹丹道了歉,他们又成为朋友了。又有一天,他们在一起聊天。

Dialogue 2

对话 2

Dandan: Jim, what kind of sports do you like?

James: I do basketball, volleyball, tennis, golf, and swimming.

Dandan: Wow, quite a bit. Which one are you good at?

James: I'm good at all of them. I can teach you any of them if you like.



丹丹: 吉姆,你喜欢什么运动?

詹姆斯: 我打篮球、排球、网球、高尔夫球,还游泳。

丹丹: 哇,挺多的吗,哪一项你比较拿手?

詹姆斯: 我全拿手,你要是愿意的话,我可以教你任何一项。

(Dandan did not say anything, but was smiling. 丹丹什么也没说,但是在微笑。)

交

James: I'm serious. You don't believe me?

Dandan: No.

James: So you DON'T believe me.

Dandan: I believe you.

James: But you were smiling at me, and when I asked if you believed me or not, you said "No."

Dandan: I don't understand what you are talking about.

James: If you are smiling at somebody, it means you don't think he is serious.

Dandan: I didn't know that.

James: And I asked you if you believed me. If you do, you should've said "Yes."

Dandan: I see. A big misunderstanding.

James: Okay. Now I feel much better.

詹姆斯: 我是说真格的, 你不相信我吗?

丹丹: 不。

詹姆斯: 你真的不相信我。

丹丹: 我相信你。

詹姆斯: 可是你在笑我, 我问你相不相信我的时候, 你说“不”。

丹丹: 我听不懂你在说什么。

詹姆斯: 如果你对哪一个人笑的话, 那表示你不相信他是认真的。

丹丹: 我不知道这一点。

詹姆斯: 还有我问你相不相信我, 如果你相信我, 你应该说“是”。

丹丹: 我明白了, 一个大误会。

詹姆斯: 好吧, 我现在感觉好多了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

You can see how easy the conversation could go wrong. Chinese usually smile when talking to somebody to show a friendly face. But foreigners may take that as unbelieving, not serious, or even laughing at them. So remember that you don't have to smile when talking to foreigners. Also, in English, "Yes" does not mean agreement or disagreement with what the other person said. It indicates the opposite when you answer a rhetorical question.

你能理解对话中引起误会是多么容易。中国人和别人谈话时, 通常都会微笑,

Chapter Fourteen

以表示友好。可是外国人会认为那是不信任,不认真,甚至是笑话他们,所以记住,你和外国人谈话时,不必微笑。另外,在英语里,“Yes”不表示你同不同意对方讲的话,在反问句的时候,它恰恰表示相反的意思。

Related Words and Phrases

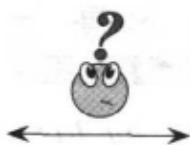
相关词语

- ① believe: 相信
- ② believe in: 信仰
- ③ serious: 认真的
- ④ laugh at: 笑话
- ⑤ raise: 涨工资

Patterns

句型

◆ I don't understand ...



◆ 我不明白

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I don't understand your question.
- ◆ I don't understand your problem.
- ◆ I don't understand why you felt that way.
- ◆ I don't understand why I can't have a raise.



- ◆ 我没听懂你的问题。
- ◆ 我不明白你的麻烦所在。
- ◆ 我不知道你为什么会有那样的感觉。
- ◆ 我不能理解我为什么不能涨工资。

交

往

的地道口语

Topic 5 Working in an American-Chinese Joint Venture

第五题 在中美合资企业工作

There are so many American-Chinese joint ventures in China. In different positions, the feelings would be different working in those joint ventures. In this topic, let's see how the employees feel working in this kind of companies.

在中国有这么多中美合资公司,在这些公司里,在不同的岗位上工作,会有不同的感受。在这个话题里,让我们来看看合资公司的员工都有什么样的感受。

Scene

场景

Mike is an American sent by his company to work as a Program Manager in a joint venture in China. He has been in China for two years, and had enough Chinese experience. Amy is a native Chinese working in the same company as an accountant. She met Mike one day.

迈克是美国公司派过来,在中国的合资公司里做项目经理的他已经在中国呆两年了,有了足够的中国经验。艾米是土生土长的中国人,在同一个公司做财务,有一天她碰见了迈克。

Dialogue

对话

Amy: Hello, Mike.

Mike: Hi, Amy. How's it going?

Amy: Not too bad. We are trying to catch up with all the forms for this quarter.

Mike: Oh yeah, a lot of work.

Amy: I know. Seems like ever since we formed the joint

艾米: 你好,迈克。

迈克: 你好,艾米,近况如何?

艾米: 还不错,我们正在赶着做这个季度的所有报表。

迈克: 哦,当然了,活儿很多。

艾米: 可不是吗,好像自从我们合资公司成立,我们的报表就

Chapter Fourteen

比以前多了。

venture, we had more forms to fill.

Mike: We ought to follow our business procedures to get things done right.

Amy: I know. But sometimes we don't know who should be doing what.

Mike: Then you need training on our business system.

Amy: I have a feeling that you are frustrated sometimes.

Mike: Yes, sometimes. For example, some procedures I think are very straightforward. But I need to repeat a thousand times to get it done.

Amy: You need to have a lot of patience. We have thousands of employees. They are new to this business system.

Mike: I know. I also have problems with motivating people.

Amy: It's a tough job to motivate people. Everybody knows the salary of others. And people look at the ones who make more money and see how much they do.

Mike: Money is not everything, but I understand they have to

迈克: 为了干好工作,我们必须按业务程序办事。

艾米: 我知道,但是有时候我们不知道谁应该做什么。

迈克: 那你们需要业务系统的培训。

艾米: 我能感觉到有时候你也挺烦心的。

迈克: 我有时候是,比如说,有些程序我认为很简单明了,但是我要重复一千遍,别人才能做对。

艾米: 你需要很多耐心。我们有几千雇员,他们对这个业务系统都不熟悉。

迈克: 我知道,我还不知道怎么调动员工的积极性。

艾米: 调动员工的积极性很难,每个人都知道别人的工资,大家就盯着那些比他们挣钱多的人,看他们干多少。

迈克: 干工作不光是为了钱,但是我理解他们必须有生活保

make a living. In the U.S., the salary information is confidential, so we don't have this problem.

Amy: It's different in China.

Mike: Have you ever heard, "sing like nobody is listening; dance like nobody is watching; work like you don't need the money."

Amy: No. That sounds wonderful. In any case, most joint ventures have better working environment, so people still like to work here.

Mike: I'm glad to hear that.

障,在美国,工资都是保密的,所以我们没有这个问题。

艾米:在中国不一样。

迈克:你听说过吗:放声歌唱就像没有人在听,奔放狂舞就像没有人在看,拼命工作就像不是为了赚钱。

艾米:没有,不过这格言真不错。不管怎么样,大多数合资公司工作环境比较好,所以大家还是愿意在这里工作。

迈克:我很愿意听这个。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

It is not easy for Americans to live and work in China. Mostly of the time, they have to rely on the translators to communicate. Trying to make the joint ventures to adapt to the American management system is a huge task for everyone in the company.

在中国,美国人生活和工作都很不容易,多数场合,他们必须依靠翻译来交流。努力让合资公司按美国管理系统来运行,对公司的每个人来说,都是一个艰巨的任务。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① program manager: 项目经理
- ② accountant: 会计
- ③ business system: 业务系统
- ④ get something done right: 做对某件事
- ⑤ straightforward: 简单明了
- ⑥ motivate: 调动积极性
- ⑦ confidential: 保密的,秘密的

Patterns

句型

◆ They are new to ...



◆ 他们不熟悉 ……

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ They are new to this procedure.
- ◆ They are new to this group.
- ◆ They are new to the traffic laws in the U.S.
- ◆ They are new to this area.



- ◆ 他们不熟悉这个程序。
- ◆ 他们新到这个组。
- ◆ 他们不熟悉美国的交通法规。
- ◆ 他们初来乍到,人生地不熟。

Chapter Fifteen Presentations, Seminars and Conferences

第十五章 讲演, 专题报告, 专业会议



One of the aspects of communications is to give presentations and attend conferences. When you become an expert in some field, you may give a presentation or a seminar. There are some special rules for participating these activities. We will get you familiar with those rules in this chapter.

人际交流的一个方面是作讲演和参加专业会议。当你在某个领域里成为专家时,你可能会宣讲论文或者作专题报告,在这些活动中,有一些专门的规则,我们在这章里让您对这些规则有所了解。

Topic 1 Submitting a Paper to an International Conference

第一题 向国际会议递交论文

To submit a paper to an international conference, you need to find out the schedule of the conference for submitting an abstract and accepting a paper. Those are published in so called "Call for Papers." It is always a good idea to start early. For international attendees, they may need invitation letters and application for visas, which takes a lot of time.

要向国际会议提交论文,你要知道递交摘要和接受论文的时间,这些信息发布在所谓的“征文启事”里,最好是提前做准备,如果要出国参加会议,还需要邀请信和申请签证,这些都很花时间。

Scene

场景

Lingling is a graduate student in Qinghua University. She worked on a project, and produced some research results that she thought worth of publishing. There was just an international conference in her field scheduled in nine months. She wanted to present a paper in this conference, so she went to talk to her professor, Dr. Huang.

玲玲是清华大学的一名研究生,她做了一个项目,取得了一些她认为值得发表的成果。恰好有一个在她研究领域里的国际会议要在九个月以后召开,她想到会议上发表论文,所以她找到她的导师黄教授谈一谈。

Dialogue

对话

Lingling: Dr. Huang, did you see the Call for Papers?



玲玲: 黄博士,您看见这个征文启事了么?

Dr. Huang: Yes, I did. I was thinking that your work

黄博士: 我看见了,我正在想你的工作恰好是在这个领域

was exactly in this field.

Lingling: I know. Is there any chance that I can go to this conference?

Dr. Huang: It's in the United States. We need to apply for some travel funds.

Lingling: What should I do now?

Dr. Huang: Write an abstract according to their requirements, and send it to the Conference Committee.

Lingling: Okay. How do we apply for travel funds?

Dr. Huang: If the abstract is accepted, let's apply for the funds from our school.

Lingling: Okay. After acceptance, we need to write the paper, right?

Dr. Huang: Not only the paper, you would also need to prepare a presentation with Power Point.

Lingling: I would need to apply for a visa as well.

Dr. Huang: Processing passport and visa will take you one to two months. So get on it right after your abstract is accepted.

Lingling: Thank you so much, Dr. Huang.

里。

玲玲: 是啊,您说我能有机会去参加这个会议吗?

黄博士: 会议是在美国召开,我们得申请差旅费用。

玲玲: 我现在该做些什么?

黄博士: 按他们的要求写一个摘要,送到会议组委会那里。

玲玲: 好的,那我们怎么申请差旅费用呢?

黄博士: 如果摘要被接受了,我们向学校申请这些费用。

玲玲: 好的,摘要接受以后,我们要写论文,对吗?

黄博士: 不仅仅是论文,还要用 Power Point 准备讲演稿。

玲玲: 我还要申请签证。

黄博士: 申请护照和签证要花一两个月时间,所以摘要接受以后,马上办理这些手续。

玲玲: 太谢谢你了,黄博士。



Most of international conferences are held in the U.S.A.. American professional societies are like the international societies. It is easy for Americans to attend these conferences organized by the societies but not for people outside North America. Europeans have to travel across the Atlantic and Asians have to get across the Pacific. Citizens of some countries are not required a visa to enter the U.S.. Unfortunately China is not one of the countries.

大多数国际会议在美国举行，美国专业学会就像国际学会一样。对美国人来说，参加这些会议很容易，但对北美以外的人来说，就不那么容易了。欧洲人要飞越大西洋，亚洲人要横渡太平洋，某些国家的公民可以不必办美国签证，不幸的是中国不是这些国家之一。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① call for Papers: 征文启示
- ② conferences: 专业会议
- ③ travel funds: 差旅费用
- ④ abstract: 摘要
- ⑤ conference Committee: 会议组委会
- ⑥ acceptance: 接受, 采用
- ⑦ application for visa: 申请签证
- ⑧ Power Point: 微软做幻灯片的办公软件

Patterns

句型

◆ Get on it ...



◆ 开始办这件事。

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ Get on it right now.
- ◆ Get on it ASAP.
- ◆ Get on it with all your resources.
- ◆ Get on it! You!



- ◆ 马上开始办这件事。
- ◆ 尽快开始办这件事。
- ◆ 利用你的所有资源开始办这件事。
- ◆ 你! 快开始干这个!

Topic 2 Prepare for a Presentation

第二题 准备讲演

Presentations are very important. A good presentation to the customers can bring you new businesses. A bad presentation can ruin the future of your company. Business presentations and academic presentations are also different in terms of the contents. But the skills to make a good presentation are the same.

讲演很重要。给客户做一个成功的讲演可能会带给你新的业务,可是一个失败的讲演可能毁了你的公司的前途。生意上的讲演和学术上的讲演在内容上也很不一样,可是做讲演的技巧都是相同的。

Scene

场景

Lingling's abstract got accepted by the conference committee. Other than applying for passport, visa, and travel funds, she has also started to prepare for her presentation under the help of Dr. Huang.

玲玲的摘要被会议组委会接受了。除了忙着申请护照、签证和差旅费用以外,她也开始在黄博士的帮助下准备讲演。

Dialogue

对话

Lingling: Dr. Huang, have you heard the news? Our abstract got accepted!

Dr. Huang: Yes, I did. Good things also travel fast.

Lingling: Now I need to prepare a presentation. How should I approach this?

Dr. Huang: First, you need to list

玲玲: 黄博士,您听说了吗? 我们的摘要被采用了!

黄博士: 我听说了, 好事也传千里。

玲玲: 现在我要准备讲演了, 怎样进行好呢?

黄博士: 首先, 你要罗列你取得的

Chapter Fifteen

好成果。

the good results you obtained.

Lingling: Okay.

Dr. Huang: Then summarize them and draw a few very important conclusions.

Lingling: I'll see if I can.

Dr. Huang: With that, you follow the path of telling a story.

Lingling: A story?

Dr. Huang: Yes. Why did you want to do this work? What did you do? What did you find? And what do they mean?

Lingling: Oh. I see. You want me to catch the attention of the audience at every step.

Dr. Huang: Right. It also flows better that way. Use more pictures than text. A picture is worth a thousand words.

Lingling: Yes. I understand.

Dr. Huang: Make the font large enough so the audience can see the text. For each slide, apply the six by six rule.

Lingling: What is six by six?

Dr. Huang: Each slide should have maximum six words in

玲玲: 好的。

黄博士: 然后总结出几条重要的结论。

玲玲: 我会试试看。

黄博士: 有了这些,你走一条讲故事的路线。

玲玲: 讲故事?

黄博士: 是的,你为什么要做这项工作?你都做了什么?发现了什么?这些发现意味着什么?

玲玲: 哦,我明白了,你想让我每一步都抓住听众的注意力。

黄博士: 对,这样讲起来也比较流畅,多用画面,少用文字,一个画面顶一千个文字。

玲玲: 嗯,我知道了。

黄博士: 用大字,观众好能看见,每一个幻灯片都要符合六乘六的原则。

玲玲: 什么是六乘六啊?

黄博士: 每个幻灯片的文字都要一行最多不超过六个词,

one line, and six lines
of text.

一共不超过六行。

Lingling: Okay. That's interesting.
I sure learnt a lot by
talking to you.

玲玲: 噢,很有意思,通过和您
请教我真是学到不少东
西。

Dr. Huang: What's a professor for?

黄博士: 教授是干什么的?



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

Preparing a presentation is making the visual aids of the presentation. It should be pleasing to the eyes of the audience. To be effective, pictures and large size fonts should be used. Power Point is a good software package to make a presentation.

准备讲演的过程就是做视觉辅助工具的过程,讲演应该让人看了舒服。要想取得预期的效果,应该多用画面和大字,Power Point 是做讲演的一个很好的软件。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① presentation: 讲演, 展示
- ② summarize: 总结
- ③ draw conclusions: 做结论
- ④ tell stories: 讲故事
- ⑤ catch attention: 抓住注意力
- ⑥ apply rules: 应用原则
- ⑦ font: 字体

Patterns

句型

◆ It also ... better that way.



◆ 那样也会更好

Chapter Fifteen

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ It also sounds better that way.
- ◆ It also looks better that way.
- ◆ It also runs better that way.
- ◆ It also feels better that way.



- ◆ 那样也会更好听。
- ◆ 那样也会更好看。
- ◆ 那样也会运行得更好。
- ◆ 那样也会感觉更好。

Topic 3 Prepare a Paper to Be Published

第三题 撰写论文

There is a special format for each professional magazine or technical conference to publish a paper. Chinese technical papers also have format requirements. We just need to learn some of the English terms for format.

每一个专业杂志或者专业会议都有自己对论文的要求的特殊格式，中文的论文也有格式要求，我们只需要学会一些格式方面的英文术语。

Scene

场景

After done with the presentation, it's time for Lingling to write the technical paper for publication. Again, Dr. Huang is the best resource to help.

做好讲演之后，玲玲要开始写论文了，黄博士依然是最好的帮助。

Dialogue

对话

Lingling: How do you like my presentations?



玲玲：您认为我的讲演怎么样？

Dr. Huang: It's pretty good. It would be better if you could add an outline slide after the title.

黄博士：挺好的，要是能在标题幻灯片后面再加一张提纲幻灯片就更好了。

Lingling: To list the contents of the presentation?

玲玲：列出讲演的主要内容？

Dr. Huang: Exactly.

黄博士：就是。

Lingling: Okay. I'll do that. How about the paper?

玲玲：好的，我会把它加进去。论文怎么办呢？

Chapter Fifteen

- Dr. Huang: The paper should follow the same path as the presentation.
- Lingling: First would be the title and the abstract.
- Dr. Huang: Yes. But there are special requirements for format and fonts for each section.
- Lingling: I'll make sure to use the right format and fonts.
- Dr. Huang: Then introduction, experimental procedures, results, discussion and conclusions.
- Lingling: Do we also put references at the end?
- Dr. Huang: Yes. There are some templates that came with the mail. You should use the templates when printing the final version of the paper.
- Lingling: Okay. I'll ask you to review it after I'm done with the paper.
- Dr. Huang: Sure. Keep up the good work!
- Lingling: Thanks.
- 黄博士: 论文应该和讲演走一样的途径。
- 玲玲: 首先是标题和摘要。
- 黄博士: 是的,但是每一个部分都有特殊的格式及字体要求。
- 玲玲: 我会注意使用正确的格式和字体。
- 黄博士: 然后是简介、实验步骤、结果、讨论和结论。
- 玲玲: 后面还要加参考文献吗?
- 黄博士: 要的,随邮件寄来过一些格式样板,你最后打印论文时应该使用这些样板。
- 玲玲: 好的,我写完以后会请您审阅。
- 黄博士: 好的,再接再厉!
- 玲玲: 谢谢。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

A paper is published with your name. You need to make sure there is no error in the paper. It could result in mistakes if you are not careful when writing a technical paper, which hurts your professional reputation.

论文发表是署了你的名字的,你要确认文章准确无误。在写专业论文时,如果不小心,可能会出错,那将影响你的专业声誉。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

交

① section: 部分

② template: 格式样板

③ review: 审阅

往

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

◆ I'll make sure ...

◆ I'll ask you to ...



◆ 我会确保

◆ 我会请您

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

◆ I'll make sure he is on time.

◆ I'll make sure there are some spare parts.

◆ I'll make sure that we do it right.

◆ I'll make sure he doesn't say anything wrong.



◆ 我会保证让他准时到。

◆ 我会确保备有配件。

◆ 我会保证把这件事情作好。

◆ 我会确保他不说错话。

◆ I'll ask you to serve as our Chairman of the Conference.

◆ I'll ask you to send Brian home.

◆ I'll ask you to find the right textbooks for us.

◆ I'll ask you to get this project started.



◆ 我会请您作大会的主席。

◆ 我会请您把布莱恩送回家。

◆ 我会请您给我们找到正确的课本。

◆ 我会请您启动这个项目。

Topic 4 Attending an International Conference

第四题 参加国际会议

Attending an international conference is a big event, especially for a graduate student. There are a number of things to take care when attending. We will try to highlight some of the items for attending conferences.

参加国际会议是件大事,特别是对研究生来说。参加会议时,有许多需要注意的事情,我们来尽量说明参加会议的一些事项。

Scene

场景

Lingling was lucky enough to get the travel funds approved by the school. She also got her visa to go to the America. Before she left, she consulted to Dr. Huang for the last time on how to attend the conference.

玲玲很幸运,她申请的差旅费得到了学校的批准,她的签证也签下来了。在她出国之前,又最后向黄博士请教了参加会议的一些注意事项。

Dialogue

对话

Lingling: Dr. Huang, I think I'm ready to go to the conference.



玲玲: 黄博士,我觉得我做好去开会的准备了。

Dr. Huang: Got your tickets?

黄博士: 票买好了吗?

Lingling: Yes. I'm leaving tomorrow morning.

玲玲: 买好了,明天早晨走。

Dr. Huang: Don't forget the presentation. Put it on a floppy disk and

黄博士: 别忘了带讲演稿。拷到软盘上一份,

write a CD. And also make a set of overheads in case the computer doesn't work.

拷到光盘上一份，再做一份投影胶片，万一计算机出现故障。

Lingling: Okay. Anything I need to be careful when attending the conference?

玲玲：好的，参加会议时我要注意什么吗？

Dr. Huang: You need to register. The registration fee is a few hundred dollars. The best thing is to register the day before the conference. The first day of conference is very crowded, and you need to wait for long time to get registered.

黄博士：你需要注册，注册费通常几百美元，最好是在会议前一天注册，会议第一天人很多，你要等很久才能注上册。

Lingling: Okay.

玲玲：知道了。

Dr. Huang: Bring your society membership card for discount on registration.

黄博士：带上你的学会会员卡，注册费能优惠。

Lingling: I'll remember to bring it.

玲玲：我一定记住带上。

Dr. Huang: On the day of your presentation, go to the Author's Coffee on time and introduce yourself to the Session Chairman.

黄博士：在你讲演那天，按时参加作者咖啡会，把自己介绍给会议阶段主持人。

Lingling: Okay.

玲玲：好的。

Dr. Huang: Before the time of your presentation, provide your floppy disk to the Assistant for preparation.

黄博士：在做讲演之前，把你的软盘交给助理人员做准备。

Lingling: I'm a kind of nervous about

玲玲：在这么多人面前讲

Chapter Fifteen

speaking in front of so many people.

Dr. Huang: Don't. There's nothing to be nervous for. You're presenting your work. You should be proud of yourself.

Lingling: I can't help it.

Dr. Huang: Remember that everyone in the audience wants you to be successful. And once you concentrate on your contents, you forget to be nervous.

Lingling: Thanks.

话,我有点儿紧张。

黄博士: 不要紧张,你没有理由紧张,你是在讲自己的工作,你应该为自己骄傲。

玲玲: 我没办法不紧张。

黄博士: 记住听众都想让你讲好,再说你一旦集中精力在你的讲演内容上,你就忘了紧张了。



玲玲: 谢谢。

American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

When attending an international conference, you are attending as a scholar or a businessman. Confidence is everything. To be confident, you should prepare well.

在参加一个国际会议时,你是作为一位学者或者是企业家来参加的。要想有成功的表现就要有信心;要想有信心,就要做好充分的准备。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① floppy disk: 计算机软盘
- ② overhead: 投影胶片
- ③ registration: 注册, 登记
- ④ membership card: 会员卡
- ⑤ Author's Coffee: 作者咖啡会, 为讲演的人举办的, 有咖啡、橙汁、点心, 是免费的
- ⑥ session Chairman: 会议阶段主持人, 一天的会议通常分为四个阶段
- ⑦ assistant: 辅助人员

交往

的地道口语

Patterns

句型

- ◆ Anything I need to ...
- ◆ Remember to ...
- ◆ There's nothing to ...



- ◆ 需要我 任何事情吗?
- ◆ 记住
- ◆ 没什么要

Substitute Exercise

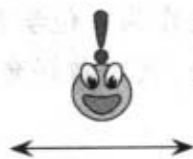
替换练习

- ◆ Anything I need to get for you?
- ◆ Anything I need to remember?
- ◆ Anything I need to take care?
- ◆ Anything I need to jump on?



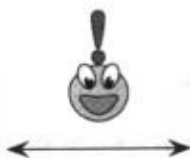
- ◆ 我需要给你带点儿东西吗?
- ◆ 我需要记住任何事情吗?
- ◆ 我需要做什么事儿吗?
- ◆ 我需要马上做点儿什么吗?

- ◆ Remember to bring me a pizza.
- ◆ Remember to take the book with you.
- ◆ Remember to tell John about the party.
- ◆ Remember to give him a ride home.



- ◆ 记住给我买个比萨饼。
- ◆ 别忘了带书。
- ◆ 记住告诉约翰派对的事。
- ◆ 记住要把他带回家。

- ◆ There's nothing to lose.
- ◆ There's nothing to cover up.
- ◆ There's nothing to do.
- ◆ There's nothing to investigate.



- ◆ 也不会失去什么。
- ◆ 没什么要掩盖的。
- ◆ 没什么事情可做。
- ◆ 没什么需要调查的。

Topic 5 Presentation

第五题 讲演

Presentation is a skill that did not receive much attention in the Chinese universities. In the U.S., almost every department of Humanities in the universities offers Public Speaking class. Most people need to be trained for this skill.

讲演在中国大学里没有得到足够重视。在美国,每个大学的人文系都会开设公众讲演课,对大多数人来说,讲演都是需要有个培训的过程。

Scene

场景

Lingling was actually prepared for the presentation. A week ago before she left for the conference, she practiced presentation skills with Dr. Huang. After several dry runs, she was much more confident than before.

玲玲实际上为讲演作好了准备,在出国一周前,她就和黄博士一起演练过讲演技能。在几次练习之后,她比一开始有信心多了。

Dialogue

对话

Lingling: Dr. Huang, could you help me with my presentation?



玲玲: 黄博士,您能给我的讲演帮帮忙吗?

Dr. Huang: What's wrong?

黄博士: 怎么啦?

Lingling: I don't feel it's going very smoothly.

玲玲: 我感觉不很流畅。

Dr. Huang: Okay. Do it in front of me, and I'll help you to improve.

黄博士: 好,给我讲一遍,我帮你改进。

Lingling: Okay. "My name is Lingling Zhao, and the

玲玲: 好吧,“我叫赵玲玲,我讲演的题目是……”

title of my presentation
is ..."

Dr. Huang: Wait. Remember the word
VEG: Voice, Eye contact
and Gesture. You want
to be natural when you
present. You don't have
to say your name and
the title of the
presentation because the
Chairman would have
already introduced to
them.

Lingling: What should I say?

Dr. Huang: Do it like this. "Good
morning! Thanks for the
introduction. Let me first
tell you our conclusions
and then I'll let you
know how we got there."

Lingling: That's much better.

Dr. Huang: You want to have
something that attracts
the attention of the
audience immediately.

Lingling: I got a feel how I should
start.

Dr. Huang: Take your time and don't
hurry.

Lingling: When everybody looks at
me, it's like they want
to draw something
out of me, so I start to
speak very fast.

Dr. Huang: Take control of the pace.

黄博士: 等一等, 要记住 VEG: 音
调、目视交流和手势。在
讲演时要自然。你不必提
你的名字和讲演题目, 因
为主持人会事先介绍过
这些。

玲玲: 那我该说什么呢?

黄博士: 这样说: "早晨好! 谢谢您
的介绍。让我先告诉你们
我们得到的结论, 再讲解
我们怎么得出的结论。"

玲玲: 这样好多了。

黄博士: 你要说点儿什么来一下
子抓住听众。

玲玲: 我对需要怎样已经开始
有感觉了。

黄博士: 稳住, 不要着急。

玲玲: 当每个人都看着你的时
候, 就好像他们要逼着你
说出点儿什么, 我就会说
得很快。

黄博士: 掌握好节奏, 不要让听众

Chapter Fifteen

控制你,还要按时结束。

Don't let the audience
control you. And
finish it on time.

Lingling: I'll remember all this.
Thanks so much.

玲玲: 我会记住这些,太感谢您
了。



American Culture and Custom

美国文化和习惯

When you first come to the stage for presentation, take a deep breath, and start talking when you are ready. Do not be scared by the eyes of the audience. Make eye contacts with them. Use your gesture and high and low tones of voice. Make sure the microphone works before you start talking. If you can hear your voice quite loud, you feel you have power and control of the presentation, which makes you confident. Don't be afraid that you repeated something. To get your ideas across, there are at least three things that you repeat three times in a presentation.

在上台演讲时,先深吸一口气,准备好了再开口。不要害怕听众的眼光,和他们进行目光交流,运用手势和声调的高低。讲话前要确认麦克风好使,如果你能听到自己的声音很响,你会感觉到自己的力度和控制力,这样会使你感到自信。不要怕重复,要想让听众理解你的思想,在一个讲演中,你至少会对三件事重复三次。

One of the microphones often used in presentation is clipped on your tie, with a small controller on your belt or in your pocket and a long cable. Walk carefully so you don't stumble on the cable.

有一种在讲演时常用的麦克风,是夹在领带上的,有一个小控制器夹在皮带上或者放在衣袋里,还有一条长电线。来回走的时候要小心,不要绊到电线上。

Related Words and Phrases

相关词语

- ① public speaking: 公众讲演
- ② dry run: 预讲,练习
- ③ attract attention: 吸引注意力
- ④ microphone: 麦克风
- ⑤ clip: 卡子,夹住
- ⑥ stumble: 绊,绊倒

Patterns

句型

- ◆ I got a feel how I should ...
- ◆ Take control of the ...



- ◆ 我知到需要怎么
- ◆ 控制好

Substitute Exercise

替换练习

- ◆ I got a feel how I should get along with him.
- ◆ I got a feel how I should convince him.
- ◆ I got a feel how I should start this project.
- ◆ I got a feel how I should approach him for additional manpower.



- ◆ 我知到需要怎样和他相处了。
- ◆ 我知到需要怎样说服他了。
- ◆ 我知到需要怎样开始这个项目了。
- ◆ 我知到需要怎样向他寻求更多的人力资源了。

- ◆ Take control of the project.
- ◆ Take control of the stage.
- ◆ Take control of the audience.
- ◆ Take control of the project.



- ◆ 控制好这个项目。
- ◆ 控制住舞台(讲台)。
- ◆ 控制好听众。
- ◆ 控制好这个项目。

Appendix: Vocabulary and Expressions

附录: 词汇和短语

911: 是美国的紧急报警电话

AAA: The American Automobile Association, 美国汽车协会

absolutely: 绝对地

abstract: 摘要

accent: 口音

acceptance: 接受, 采用

accountant: 会计

Admission Letter: 录取通知书

advisor: 导师, 顾问

age discrimination: 年龄歧视。在美国找工作, 法律上规定不能有年龄, 性别, 残疾和人种等方面的歧视

aisle: 走道, 过道

allowances: 补助

almond Chicken: 杏仁鸡片

altar: 典礼台

aluminum foil: 铝箔纸

ambulance: 救护车

amusement park: 游乐场

apartment: 公寓。欧洲人称之为 flat

appeal: 上诉, 申辩

application for visa: 申请签证

apply rules: 应用原则

appreciate: 领情, 欣赏

Approval: 批准, 名词

approve: 批准, 动词

Are you serious? 是真的吗? 你不是开玩笑吧

assistant: 辅助人员

Atlantic City: 大西洋赌城

交往的地道口语

attract attention: 吸引注意力

attractions: 景点

authentic: 正宗的

Author's Coffee: 作者咖啡会, 为讲演的人举办的, 有咖啡、橙汁、点心, 是免费的

bachelor: 单身汉; 学士

backstroke: 仰泳

badge: 公司的身份卡, 一般佩带在胸前

balance: 余额

ball: 投球手投出的坏球, 偏球

bar tender: 酒吧调酒师, 酒保

barbecue: 烧烤

bargain: 讨价还价

base: 垒。棒球也叫垒球

basement: 地下室

bat: 球棒

bathing suit: 等于 swimming suit, 游泳衣

batter: 击球手

be right with you: 马上就到。在中国大多时听到服务员说的是: “请稍等。”好像不如“马上就到”更积极主动

beat: 赢, 击败

believe in: 信仰

believe: 相信

benefits: 待遇, 利益, 福利

best man: 伴郎

bet: 猜对啦, 说对了, 猜想, 打赌, 赌

big deal: 重要的事

biking: 骑自行车, 也可以叫 Cycling。Biking 在美国用得较多, Cycling 在加拿大用得较多

bills: 账单

bingo: 一种拼词的游戏。每人有一个盘, 上面有不同的字母。主持人念字母, 你手里的盘能对上就赢了

bless: 保佑

Blockbuster: “伯劳克巴斯特”, 一家美国很大的录像带连锁店

Blues: 蓝调音乐

blush: 脸红



- BMW: 宝马车
- board: 董事会
- Bob Evan's: 鲍波·艾文思, 一个中档餐馆连锁店
- bowl: 打保龄球
- brandy: 白兰地
- breakfast: 早饭
- bride: 新娘
- bright: 聪明
- Broadway: 百老汇
- brunch: 早中饭
- bucks: 美元, dollar 的俚语叫法
- Bud ice: 百威冰啤酒
- buddy: 哥们儿
- buffet: 自助餐
- bun: 圆面包
- business card: 名片
- business plan: 商务计划
- business system: 业务系统
- butter fly: 蝶泳
- CAA: The Canadian Automobile Association 加拿大汽车协会
- cafeteria: 食堂
- call back: 回电话
- Call for Papers: 征文启事
- Cambridge: 剑桥, 是哈佛大学和麻省理工学院的所在地, 波士顿的一个地区
- canal: 运河
- Can't be better.: 再好不过了
- capital: 资本, 资金
- car pool: 大家合伙乘车
- card: 卡片, 饭卡
- case: 案件
- casino: 赌场
- catch attention: 抓住注意力
- catch cold: 着凉, 感冒
- Catch you later.: 再见, 一会儿见
- Catch: 明白, 听懂

caught up:赶上进度

CEO:首席执行官

CFO:首席财务官

Chairman Mao:毛主席,是过去中国共产党的主席

chairman:董事长

changing room:更衣室

Charles River:查尔斯河

chat:聊天

Check Point:检查站

chef:主厨

Cher:雪儿,好莱坞的明星,近来拍的电影不多了

Chicago Bulls:芝加哥公牛队,迈克尔·乔丹曾多年在该队服役,带领该队多次夺得
NBA 冠军

chicken fingers:炸鸡肉条

Chicken Pot Pie:罐鸡。是把鸡肉块儿和土豆块儿炖在一个深碗里,表面上放一个
饼把碗口封住。吃的时候把饼捣碎和下面的菜一起吃

Chinatown:中国城,唐人街

Chinese Salad:中式凉菜,中国东北的一种凉拌菜。里面有黄瓜丝,凉粉或粉丝,加
其它配料

Chinks:对中国人的侮辱性称呼

Chunky Cheese:大块奶酪,是一个为小孩子服务的市内游戏场。同时也用餐,主要
有比萨饼,沙拉等食物。主办生日派对,还有歌舞表演

Cinderella:灰姑娘

classic music:古典音乐

clip:卡子,夹住

close call:很危险的,差点儿出事的决定或行动

club:高尔夫球杆

Co.:company,公司

cocktail sauce 鸡尾酒酱,通常是吃佐海鲜用的

come along:一起去

come around:想通,思想转弯,想法变过来了

come down:下去

come up:上来

commercial:名词:广告,尤指电视广告;形容词:商业的

compliment:称赞,赞美

- composer: 作曲家
- concept: 主意, 概念
- concert: 音乐会
- condo; condominium 的简称
- condolences: 悼念, 安慰
- condominium: 住户购买的公寓
- conductor: 指挥
- Conference Committee: 会议组委会
- conference room: 会议室
- conferences: 专业会议
- confidential: 保密的, 秘密的
- Confucius: 孔子, 孔教
- Continental U.S.: 指美国大陆内的部分, 不包括阿拉斯加和夏威夷
- contract: 合同
- COO: 首席运行官
- cooler: 冷藏箱
- Coors Light: 库耳淡爽啤酒
- Corp.; Corporation, 股份公司
- cost effective: 低成本
- count somebody in: 算某人一个
- country music: 乡村音乐
- courier: 快取快递公司
- court: 法庭
- cover charges: 门票
- crazy about: 非常喜欢
- crazy: 疯狂, 不可思议
- cruise: 乘游艇出游
- cubical: 隔成方格子的办公室
- cue-ball: 白球
- cue: 球杆
- data acquisition: 数据采集
- date rape: 约会中出现的强暴
- date: 日期, 约会
- date: 约会的对像
- dating: 约会

daughter-in-law: 儿媳妇

DC: District of Columbia, 哥伦比亚特区。一般指华盛顿, 用来区别于华盛顿州

deal: 说好了, 定了

decline: 婉言谢绝

defense: 防守

deposit: 押金

Detroit Piston: 底特律活塞队

did a good job: 做得挺好

dinner: 晚饭

director: 总监, 董事

discrimination: 歧视

Disney Club: 迪斯尼俱乐部

do laundry: 洗衣服

dorm: Dormitory, 学生宿舍

draw conclusions: 做结论

dress up: 正式的穿戴打扮

dressing shoes: 配西装的皮鞋

dressy: 打扮挺括

driving range: 高尔夫球练习场

Drop Box: 信箱, 回收箱

drugs: 毒品

drunk-driving: 酒醉驾车

dry run: 预讲, 练习

DUI: Drive under influence. 喝酒或吸毒后驾车

dumb: 傻瓜

Easter eggs: 复活节彩蛋

Easter: 复活节

egg drop: 蛋花汤

Empire State Building: 帝国大厦

end of the tunnel: 看见曙光了, 困难快到头了

entree: 主菜

Epcot Center: 爱颇考特中心

ever-bright city: 不夜城

everything: 意思是加三明治的所有东西, 包括奶酪、西红柿片、生菜片、洋葱丝、酸黄瓜片和三明治酱

- exit: 出口
- expectations: 期望
- express mail: 特快专递
- expressions: 表示, 表达, 表情
- extend the offer: 录用
- factory outlet: 工厂外销店
- falls: 瀑布
- family restaurant: 家庭餐馆
- family show: 适合于家庭的表演
- Family Video: “家庭录像”, 一家美国较小的录像带连锁店
- farewell party: 送别聚会
- fast food: 快餐
- fat free Ranch: 脱脂阮奇
- feasibility: 可行性
- feasible: 可行的
- feedback: 反馈
- Figure out: 弄清楚
- fill out the form: 填表
- final: 期末总考
- finals: 期末总考
- fix: 修理, 修好
- flip coin: 抛硬币, 双方约定谁要硬币的哪一面, 由落下硬币的结果决定输赢
- floppy disk: 计算机软盘
- flower girl: 花童
- flyers: 传单式广告
- font: 字体
- free country: 自由国家
- free tickets: 免费票
- Frequent-Flyer miles: 常飞旅客里程数
- Frequent-Flyer program: 常飞旅客俱乐部
- freshman: 高中或大学一年级学生
- fried rice: 炒饭
- Fries; French fries: 炸薯条
- frog: 蛙泳
- front crawl: 自由式, 也叫 free style

front desk: 前台, 接待台, 酒店前台

funny: 幽默, 逗

gamble: 赌博

garment bag: 装西服和衬衣的衣服袋

gay: 男同性恋

generous: 慷慨, 大方

get a wash: 受洗

get lost: 滚开

get on the case: 调查某件事

get out of here! 去你的! 滚蛋!

get over: 过去, 淡忘, 不再想它

get something done right: 做对某件事

get something straight: 弄明白某事, 把某事做对

gifted: 有天赋的

girl friend: 女朋友

give it a shot: 试一下, 做一做试试

go Dutch: AA 制

go out: 出去吃饭, 约会

go over: 详细讨论

go steady: 建立稳定的男女朋友关系

go with the flow: 随大流, 跟着走, 随波逐流, 见机行事

go: 冲。观众助威时的呐喊

Gong Pao: 宫保。可以有宫保鸡丁(Gong Pao Chicken)、宫保虾

good idea: 好主意

gorgeous: 美丽, 漂亮

gourmet: 美食家

grab: 抓, 抓住

grade: 学习成绩

graduate school: 研究生院, 美国英语里叫 postgraduate school

Great Lakes: 五大湖; Lake Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, and Superior. 五

大湖的字头组成 HOMES

Green: 高尔夫球场, 尤指球洞附近

grill: 烧烤

grilled Salmon: 三文鱼, 即大马哈鱼

Groom: 新郎。

guys: 伙计们, 同伴们

hallway: 走廊

hammer strike: 一种砸锤子的游戏, 看砸下后有多大力度

hard feelings: 隔阂, 成见

hard time: 困难时期

hardship: 生活困难

Harry Potter: 哈利·波特, 是杰·凯·柔玲所著书中的主人公, 孩子们心目中的英雄

Harvard: 哈佛大学

have plans: 有安排

hay ride: 在马车或拖拉机上摆满干草捆, 人们可以坐在上面兜风

headcount: 人头数

Health Club: 健身俱乐部

heaven: 天堂, 天国

Heineken: 喜力啤酒

Hi, there. 你好

Highway 95: 95 号高速公路

hit back: 还击

hit the road: 上路, 去旅行。“Hit ...”这个句型要用于特定的、小的目标。不能用这个句型说: “I’m going to hit China.” “我要去中国。”中国太大了

Hollywood: 好莱坞

home run: 本垒打

homo: 同性恋, 名词简称

homosexual: 同性恋, 形容词

homosexuality: 同性恋, 名词

Honey Chicken: 蜂蜜鸡块

Honolulu: 火奴鲁鲁

hooters: (女性的) 胸

Hot and Sour: 酸辣汤

hot dog bun: 热狗面包

Housing expenses: 住房消费

How about Chinese? 在“How about Chinese?”这句话里, “Chinese”的意义依情形而定。要是在商量去哪里吃饭, 它代表中餐。如果在说语言, 它代表中文。倘若是在谈论各国人, 它表示中国人

How it works?: 怎样运行?

HR: Human Resources, 人力资源部

hug: 拥抱

hurt feelings: 伤害感情

I don't care. 我不在乎

I don't know. 我不知道,我不敢苟同。我不想去,我不想干

I don't want to talk about it. 我不想谈这个

I got it: 我明白了

Iced Tea: 冰茶

ID: Identification, 身份证

illegal immigrants: 非法移民

In your dreams.: 做你的梦吧

Inc.: incorporated, 股份公司

income tax return: 年终结算和上报所得税

inning: 棒球中的一局, 一个回合

interests: 利息

internship: 实习生工作

iron: 四号以上的球杆

Italian Oven: “意大利炉灶”, 美国宾夕法尼亚州的一家意大利连锁餐馆

Jazz: 爵士乐

Jln: 琴酒

JIT: Just In Time: 即时装配(没有过多存货)

job security: 工作的稳定性

John Hancock (Signature): 约翰·韩考克, 是签署独立宣言的领导人之一。所以

“约翰·韩考克”在美国英语里也有签名的意思

junior: 高中或大学三年级学生

junk food: 垃圾食物, 快餐

keep one on his toes: 让某人小心翼翼

keep somebody posted: 让某人保持了解事情的进展

keep the fingers crossed: 祝好运

Kennedy: 肯尼迪, 美国的一个著名总统

Ketch-up: 西红柿酱

kick somebody's ass: 教训某人

kid around: 总是开玩笑

kidding: 开玩笑。举例: “Are you kidding?” “你在开玩笑吧?” “You must be kidding.” “你一定是在开玩笑。”

kiss: 亲吻

- knew it: 早就知道, 猜到了
- LA: 洛杉矶的简称
- Lab: Laboratory 的缩写, 实验室
- laid off: lay off 的过去式和过去分词
- Lake Ontario: 安大略湖
- lane: 球道
- last day: 最后一天上班
- laugh at: 笑话
- lay off: 解雇人
- lease: 租约
- legend: 传奇, 传奇式的人物
- legendary: 传奇式的
- lesbian: 女同性恋
- lightweight: 轻型的
- limousine: 加长轿车
- live entertainment: 现场演艺。entertainment 不局限于唱歌和演奏音乐
- live performance: 现场表演
- LLC: Limited Liability Company, 有限责任公司
- long weekend: 长周末
- look after: 照顾
- look around: 到处转转看看
- LOVE: 比分 0, 是网球中独特的记分方式
- lunch time: 中午时分
- MacDonald's: 麦当劳
- made it: 办到了, 能来, 做到了
- Magic Kingdom: 魔幻王国
- maid of honor: 伴娘
- make a pitch: 投球, 讲演
- make connections: 联络感情, 寻找共同点
- make sense: 有道理
- make up: 化妆
- mall: 购物中心
- Mam: 夫人
- manager: 经理
- maniac: 疯子, 狂人

Marble Head: 理石头, 波士顿附近的一个小旅游城市

market analysis: 市场分析

market Economy: 市场经济

market forecast: 市场预测

Martini: 马爹利, 一种鸡尾酒

mask: 面罩, 面具

mean: 凶恶, 坏

meat balls: 肉丸子

medium rare: 中等偏鲜。烤制的一种程度。从熟到生(鲜)的等级是: well done:

熟, medium well: 中等偏熟, medium: 中等, medium rare: 中等

偏鲜, rare: 鲜

membership card: 会员卡

MGM Studio: MGM 制片场

microphone: 麦克风

middle of nowhere: 在荒野之中

Middle East: 中东

Mid-Term: 期中考试

Miller Draft: 米勒扎啤

mission: 使命, 任务

MIT: 麻省理工学院

mixed feelings: 感觉复杂, 比如既高兴又遗憾, 既有喜事又有悲伤

mom: 妈妈。小孩子叫妈妈的用语

morning: 等于 good morning

mortgage: 购房贷款, 一般是 15 年和 30 年期的

motivate: 调动积极性

move in: 搬入

move out: 搬出

moving expenses: 搬家费用

moving-in condition: 可以马上入住

Mr. Right: 白马王子

mustard: 芥末

nametag: 胸卡

NBA: National Basketball Association, 美国篮球协会组织的篮球联赛

Neat: 整洁

negroes: 对黑人的侮辱性称呼



- nerd: 神经兮兮的人
- net: 擦网球
- New York Steak: 纽约式牛排。是一大块牛肉, 两面在铁板上烤熟的
- nice: 好, 善良。 举例: "Henry is nice." "亨利人很好。" "His house is very nice." "他家的房子很漂亮。"
- non (non-smoking): 不吸烟
- nope: 等于 no
- not bad: 好, 不错。 举例: "The air quality is not bad." "空气质量不错。"
- occasion: 时刻, 时节
- OEM: 原造商
- offend: 冒犯
- offense: 进攻
- Olympic Games: 奥运会
- omelet: 把搅好的鸡蛋和菜、香肠、火腿等一起下锅做成的蛋卷。可以选不同的配料
- on me: 我来付账
- on purpose: 故意地
- on the side: 摆在旁边
- one thing at a time: 一步一步来
- only second to: 仅次于
- Ontario: 安大略省
- opportunity: 机会
- options: 方案
- orange: 橙汁
- orchestra: 交响乐团
- orientation: 公司为新雇员作的公司介绍, 包括公司概况、目标、使命、待遇、保险、税收和各种政策
- out of woods: 脱离险境
- overhead: 投影胶片
- overnight: 连夜
- over-stressed: 过分强调
- oyster: 生蚝
- pack: 打包
- paid vacation: 带薪假
- par: 标准杆数。每一个洞有规定的标准杆数。高尔夫球的成绩就是用比标准杆数高还是低来衡量的。

交

往

的地道口语

parking meter: 停车表

partner: 伴, 伙伴

party animals: 派对兽, 对派对疯狂的人

Pasta: 意大利面条

pastor: 牧师

pay back: 还钱, 偿还债务

pearl Harbor: 珍珠港

perfectly right: 完全正确

perfectly: 完全, 非常

Phil: 菲尔, Philip 的爱称

Philadelphia: 费城

pick up the tab: 付账

pick up: (开车)接

picnic table: 野餐桌

picnic: 野餐

piece of cake: 很容易, 易如反掌

pin: 保龄球棒

Ping Pong: 乒乓球

pitcher: 投球手

Pizza: 比萨饼, 一种意大利食品, 必胜客就卖这种食物

plan: 计划, 项目

play by ear: 看情形行事

pleasure: 高兴, 愉快

points: 罚点

poke holes: 扎眼儿, 捅窟窿

policy: 政策

pony ride: 骑小马, 通常是给孩子们玩儿的

Pot Luck: 自带聚餐

Power Point: 微软做幻灯片的办公软件

pray: 祈祷

presentation: 讲演, 展示

president: 总裁

pretty good: 挺好。举例: "I'm doing pretty good." "我挺好的。"

pretty: 副词: 很; 形容词: 漂亮

priest: 牧师

- profit margin: 利润率
- program manager: 项目经理
- projected sales: 预测销售额
- proposal: 竞标方案, 建议书
- pro's: 高水平的, 职业的
- Public Speaking: 公众讲演
- putt: 最后把球打进洞的动作和所用的球杆
- quarterback: 四分卫。在比赛中担任掷球的重要角色
- Quincy Market: 昆西市场, 是波士顿的一个著名购物广场, 有很漂亮的街灯
- quite a bit: 很多, 很经常
- quote: quotation, 报价
- racial preference: 种族主义倾向
- racket: 球拍
- raincoat: 雨衣
- raise: 涨工资
- rating: 分级
- Raviolis: 意大利饺子, 里面的馅儿主要是奶酪
- realtor: 房产经纪人, 代理人
- record sales: 创记录的销售额
- Red Light District: 红灯区, 妓女出没的地区
- Red Lobster: 红龙虾, 是美国一家较高档的连锁餐馆
- registration: 注册, 登记
- relax: 放松, 别紧张
- relocation: 搬家(到别的城市)。在美国搬到五十英里以外才算符合税收和公司优惠条件的搬家
- rent: 房租, 租金
- retired diplomat: 退休的外交官
- return the ball: 回球
- review: 审阅
- revolving: 旋转
- ring barrier: 戒指人
- RMB: 人民币
- rock-n-roll: 摇摆舞, 摇滚乐
- rum: 朗姆酒
- saint: 教徒, 教民

salad dress: 沙拉油, 一般有法国的(French)、阮奇(Ranch)、千岛(Thousand Island)、酒醋的(Wine and Vinegar)等等种类

salad: 沙拉。一般有生菜、西红柿、黄瓜、芥兰、蘑菇、菜花、葡萄干、瓜子等

scared: 吓坏了

scary: 吓人, 恐怖

score: 分数

Scotch: 苏格兰威士忌(Whiskey)

scrambled: 炒鸡蛋, 油很少

Screw Driver: 螺丝刀, 一种鸡尾酒

seafood Pasta: 意大利海鲜面

section: 部分

security deposit: 押金

semester: 学期

senior: 高中或大学四年级学生

serious: 认真的

serve: 发球

server: 服务员

service: 到教堂做礼拜

session chairman: 会议阶段主持人, 一天的会议通常分为四个阶段

settle: 结账

share: 共享, 合用, 合租

shareholder: 持股人

show: 表演

sign in: 进门登记

Sign out: 出门登记

sign up: 加入

signature: 签字

sink: 洗手池

Sino-American Friendship Association: 中美友好协会

Sir: 先生, 一种尊称, 多用于对警官, 上级军官, 顾客等的称呼

skim milk: 无脂(全脱脂)牛奶

skip: 跳过, 免掉, 不做

slice: 球打偏了

slim: 苗条

slot machine: 吃角子老虎机, 赌博机

smart: 聪明

smoothies: 和冰一起搅碎的果肉汁

snack: 零食, 小吃

so sweet: 人真好, 真讨人喜欢

Social Security Number: 社会安全号; 也可以简写为 SS。相当于中国的身份证号。

因为美国没有户口, 所以社会安全号就更重要。个人的重要信息、报税、银行账号、水电账号、受雇等等, 都要用到社会安全号

soda: 汽水

soft drinks: 没有酒精的饮料, 通常亦指汽水

some sort of: 某种

sophomore: 高中或大学二年级学生

sorrows: 悲哀

sour cream: 酸奶油

spare: 补中

speeding: 超速

spicy: 辣的, 有别于 hot, hot 是热

split: 分隔, 分离

staring at: 盯着看

STD: Sexually transmitted disease, 性病

stock: 股票

stop and smell the roses: 停下来闻一闻玫瑰。形容不要总是忙, 要享受一下生活

straightforward: 简单明了

strike: 保龄球: 全倒。棒球: 正球。投球手投出的好球, 但是击球手没打, 或者不管是什么样的投球, 击球手挥棒但没打中

striking: 动人的, 感人的

strip dance: 脱衣舞

strip: 脱

stumble: 绊, 绊倒

stylish: 有风格

suffer: 遭罪, 受苦

suit: 西装

summarize: 总结

summer job: 暑期打工的工作

summer school: 暑期学校。

- summer vacation: 夏天休假
- Sunday School: 周日查经班
- sunny-side-up: 煎荷包蛋
- Sunset Boulevard: 落日大道
- symphony: 交响乐
- take ... off: 在 ... 时间休假
- take a break: 休息一下
- take a shower: 淋浴
- take advantage of: 占人便宜, 欺负人
- take care of: 照顾, 保管, 看护
- take off: 走, 离开, 起飞
- take over: 取代
- take this round: 为这一轮酒付费
- talented: 天才的
- taxes: 税
- team: 工作小组, 团队
- Tech Center: Technical Center, 技术中心
- tee off: 开始打球
- tee time: 打高尔夫球的时间
- tee: 打第一杆时支撑球的小木棍
- Tell me about it: 我知道的很清楚, 是啊
- tell stories: 讲故事
- template: 格式样板
- temptation: 诱惑
- tent: 帐篷
- terrible: 淘气, 糟糕
- Thanksgiving: 感恩节
- the 8th ball: 黑球
- the Animals Kingdom: 动物王国
- the Bible: 圣经
- the Big Bang: 大爆炸学说
- the Capital: 美国国会
- the Cultural Revolution: 文化大革命
- the Evolution: 进化论
- the Father: 圣父

- the God: 上帝
- the Holy Spirit: 圣灵
- the Son: 圣子
- the Statue of Liberty: 自由女神像
- ticket: 罚单
- tickets: 票
- tip: 小费
- Titanic: 坦泰尼克号
- toast: 烤面包片, 通常涂上奶油
- toilet: 马桶
- Top 50: 前五十名
- touchdown: 底线得分。需要带球跑到球场终点, 或者在球场终点接到球
- traffic: 交通
- travel funds: 差旅费用
- trivial: 细小的
- trout: 鳟鱼
- turkey: 火鸡
- turn around the corner: 走出困境
- turnpike: 收费高速公路
- tuxedo: 燕尾服
- UC: University of California, 加州大学
- underage: 不够年龄的孩子, 对不同的事情有不同的规定。比如 13 岁以下必须有大人照看, 17 岁以下不能有性行为, 21 岁以下不能喝酒等等
- United Nations Headquarters: 联合国总部
- up there: 很高, 很好
- used car: 二手车
- used house: 旧房子
- utilities: 杂费
- Vegas: 维加斯, 拉斯维加斯的简称
- Vegetarian Delight: 清炒素菜(菜名儿)
- vegetarian: 素食者
- veggies: 蔬菜
- vice President: 副总裁
- vision: 前景
- Vodka: 伏特加

volley: 网前截击

wagon: 一种大轿车, 行李箱是在后座后面敞开的, 行李箱的上盖儿和顶棚一样高

Waikiki: 威凯凯市, 是火奴鲁鲁岛的主要城市

walk somebody home: 送某人回家

Wall Street: 华尔街

wave ... in: 招呼 ... 进去

What for? 干什么用?

What's wrong?: 怎么了? 也可以说 What went wrong? 这种问话也有责备的意思, 见下面的替换练习, 应用时要小心

wheat: 全粉面包

White House: 白宫, 美国总统生活和办公的地方

white rice: 白饭

White Trash: 对白人的侮辱性称呼

wonton soup: 馄饨汤

wood: 第一号到第三号球杆

work: 行, 能成, 好使, 成功

workshop: 学习班, 讲座

World Trade Center: 世贸中心

WPI: Worcester Polytechnic Institute (伍斯特理工学院) 的简称

XXX Rated Movie: XXX 级电影

Yao Ming: 姚明, 在 NBA 打球的中国球员

yard: 码, 三英尺

yell: 叫喊, 训斥

YMCA: Youth Man Christian Association, 男青年基督教协会

yogurt: 酸奶

your Honor: 在法庭对法官的称呼

YWCA: Youth Woman Christian Association, 女青年基督教协会